



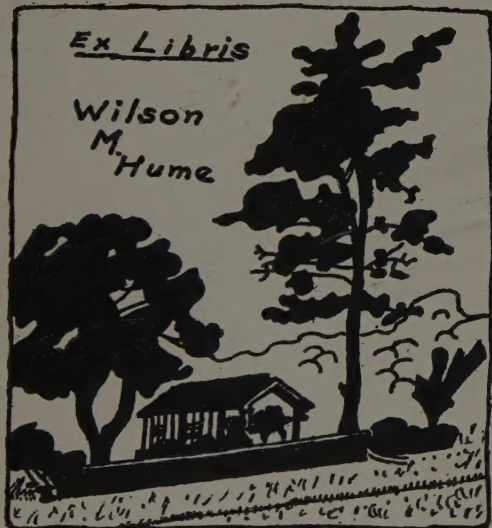
Theology Library

SCHOOL OF THEOLOGY
AT CLAREMONT
California

From the library of
Wilson M. Hume

Ex Libris

Wilson
M.
Hume



A GRAMMAR
OF THE
HINDŪSTĀNĪ OR URDŪ LANGUAGE.

PK
1986
P5
1909

A

GRAMMAR
"

Part 2.

OF THE

HINDŪSTĀNĪ

OR

URDŪ LANGUAGE

BY

JOHN T. PLATTS

LATE AN INSPECTOR OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION IN THE CENTRAL PROVINCES OF INDIA

FIFTH IMPRESSION



LONDON

CROSBY LOCKWOOD AND SON

7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL

1909

25-25504

LONDON :

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

PREFACE.

THE Grammar now offered to the public was begun in India many years ago; but its progress was so retarded by illness, press of official work, and other causes, that on my return to England about eighteen months ago, scarcely a third of it was in a form ready for the press.

It owes its origin to certain Indian friends, whose arguments, backed by the results of my own reading and observation, led me to conclude—(1) that, much as had been achieved in the field of Urdū Grammar by Europeans (and especially by Englishmen), that field had not been so thoroughly worked but that a great deal more might be won from it; (2) that no small portion of the work which had been done was of a kind that afforded room for improvement.

In justification of the first of these opinions, I would refer my readers to the large quantity of what is believed to be absolutely new matter that is to be found in almost every part of this work, and especially in the sections which treat of—(1) gender; (2) numerals; (3) Persian and Arabic constructions; (4) causal verbs; (5) compound verbs; (6) particles; (7) derivation of words; and in almost every chapter of the Syntax. In support of the second, I would point to the sections which treat of the construction—(1) of verbs and adjectives in connection with the broken plurals of the Arabic; (2) of nominal and frequentative verbs; (3) of the accusative

case ; (4) of predicative adjectives in construction with factitive verbs ; (5) of the participles ; and also to the sections which notice the different uses of the fragmentary verbs *hai* and *thā*, and the tenses of the subjunctive mood. In respect of some of these, the views propounded are so directly opposed to those maintained by preceding grammarians, that I have felt constrained to support them by foot-notes, remarks, citations from native grammars, and the opinions of native scholars ; and thus the work has to some extent assumed a polemical character, for which I consider that some apology is due. This I offer the more readily, as I am conscious of being actuated by no motive beyond the simple desire to establish what, supported by the best native authorities, I hold to be correct views of the constructions in question.

Besides the additions and changes referred to above, I may also, I believe, claim to have succeeded in reducing to rule some constructions which have hitherto been regarded as arbitrary. And here I may be permitted to observe that there is little in the structure of Urdū of the loose and arbitrary character which some recent writers on the grammar of the language impute to it. It may be difficult to discover the rules for certain constructions ; and, in many instances, native scholars, no doubt, are unable to assign a satisfactory reason for the forms they use ; but it is surely inconsequent to conclude from these facts that rules in such cases cannot be discovered, and that native scholars cannot be trusted to compose correctly in their own tongue. That “writers are guided by usage rather than by rule, and test the accuracy of a passage by

the ear rather than by any recognized law," is, in the main, true. But this practice is by no means confined to Urdū writers; nor are they a whit more liable to err in following the guidance of usage and the ear than the many excellent speakers and writers in other living tongues who follow the same guides. Indeed, as far as constructions which constitute the marked peculiarities of the language are concerned, it may be safely affirmed that Urdū writers of even ordinary ability are scarcely likely to make a slip. When therefore a form or expression occurs in one or more standard authors which appears to violate some well-known rule, a foreigner would do well to pause ere he condemns it as a "transgression"; for it is infinitely more probable that he has not understood the construction, than that the authors have committed a palpable solecism.

One of the features peculiar to this Grammar which I would notice here are the remarks and notes that touch upon the derivation and origin of words, and the formation of the cases and tenses—a subject upon which so much light has been thrown of late years by the study of comparative grammar. Students of Urdū and Hindī in the schools of India especially will, I trust, find this portion of the work both interesting and instructive;—and not only students, but those also who speak and write Urdū with perfect facility and accuracy. For it is notorious that Urdū scholars (and especially Moḥammadans) are grossly ignorant of the origin of such words and inflexions in their language as are not derived from the Persian and Arabic. And the general restriction of their studies to these languages alone puts it out of their power to acquire a knowledge of the

linguistic discoveries of modern philologists in fields lying apart from them.

The arrangement and nomenclature of the work differ somewhat from those of preceding grammars. The declensions have been reduced to *two*; the numerals are noticed immediately after the attributive adjective; and the sections on Persian and Arabic constructions, treating as they do of substantives, adjectives, and numerals, it has been judged advisable to introduce immediately after the Urdū (Hindī) numerals, with the view of keeping the same parts of speech as much as possible together. These sections are, as has been already hinted, fuller and more complete than any notice of Persian and Arabic inflexions that has hitherto appeared in a grammar of Hindūstānī. Full as they are however, it would be presumptuous to say that they comprise all the constructions that occur in the language. But I trust I may say that they contain few that do *not* occur. The student will find it to his advantage to read these sections through—without dwelling on them at first; but more carefully on a second perusal, after he has made some acquaintance with Urdū literature; for Persian and Arabic, although not the back-bone, so to speak, form very important members of Urdū, and hence a knowledge of some of the principal facts of their inflexion is indispensable to a correct understanding and use of the language.

The examples under the more important rules of the Syntax are numerous and varied. In their selection I have not confined myself to the Bāg o Bahār and a few other works compiled about the same comparatively remote period—works which, however excellent they

may be, can hardly be supposed to furnish examples of all the constructions and idioms current even in their day, much less of those now in use; and which may certainly be supposed to contain not a little that is now obsolete or rare—but have also drawn from more modern works, such as the Fasāna'ē 'Ajā'ib, the Urdū Reader (a work published under the authority of the Government of the N.W. Provinces of India), etc., and also from some of the best native newspapers; *e.g.* the Shō'la'ē Tūr of Kānhpūr, and the 'Alīgarh Institute Gazette.' Should the examples under some of the rules be regarded as too copious, I would urge the importance of the rules themselves in such cases, or the misconception that has hitherto prevailed respecting the constructions exemplified; and also that, while the copiousness of the examples is calculated to impress the rules on the student's mind, their generally varied character and full propositional form will have the advantage of introducing him to diversities both of idiom and style.

In the preparation of the work I have made free, but not, I trust, unfair, use of the Grammars of my predecessors, and especially of those published in recent years by native scholars: *e.g.* the Urdū Grammar of M. Imām Bakhsh of the Dehlī College; the Kawā'idu'l-mubtadī of M. Karīmu'd-dīn; the Kawā'idē Urdū (a work published under the authority of the Government of the North-West Provinces of India). I have also obtained much assistance from the following works: (1) the Prākṛita-Prakāśa of Professor Cowell; (2) the Sindhī Grammar of Dr. Trumpp (a work to which I am greatly indebted for direct help as well as numerous hints touching the derivation of Hindī words); (3) the Gram-

matica Linguae Persicae of Dr. Vullers; (4) the Arabic Grammar of Professor Wright. And, lastly, I have at various times obtained much valuable information from several native scholars in India, and especially from Maulavīs Shaikh ‘Abdullāh of Kānhpūr, Moḥammad Rizā of Ilāhābād, ‘Alī Aṣgar of Ajmer, and Ṣafdar ‘Alī of Jabalpūr, to whom I take this opportunity of offering my grateful thanks for the aid they were always so ready to afford me in my Oriental studies.

In spite of the greatest possible care in preparing the MS. and correcting the press, some omissions and errors have been discovered in the work, and it is probable that others of a not very serious character (as, for example, the omission of dots and vowel marks) have escaped detection. It must not be imagined, however, that every instance of omission of a long vowel mark is an oversight. The Persian numeral *dū*, for example, is generally written *du*, because the vowel is pronounced short; and the long vowel of the Arabic words *fī*, *zū*, etc., being always shortened in pronunciation before the conjunctive *alif*, is of course not marked long. A list of such errors as have been discovered is given further on, and the reader is requested to correct them in the text before perusing it.

JOHN T. PLATTS.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
CHAP. I. THE LETTERS AS CONSONANTS	1
THE LETTERS, PRONUNCIATION OF	4
THE VOWELS AND OTHER ORTHOGRAPHIC SIGNS	9
Short Vowels	9
Tanwīn or Nunation.	10
Jazm	10
Tashdid	11
Long Vowels and Diphthongs	11
Hamza	13
Wasl	16
Madd	17
DIVISION OF A WORD INTO SYLLABLES	17
NUMERICAL VALUE OF THE LETTERS	2, 3, 18
SPECIAL NUMERICAL FIGURES	19
EXERCISE IN READING	19
CHAP. II. THE PARTS OF SPEECH	21
I. THE ARTICLE	22
II. THE NOUN-SUBSTANTIVE	23
1. Gender.	23
Masculine by Form	24
Feminine by Form	27
Feminines formed from Masculines	30
2. Number	33
Plural of Masculine Nouns	33
Plural of Feminine Nouns	34
3. Declension	36
Postpositions used in forming the Cases	37
The Formative	38
The First Declension	39
The Second Declension	42
CONSTRUCTION OF THE GENITIVE CASE	43
III. THE ADJECTIVE	44
Declension.	44
Comparison	46
Intensive Forms	47
Adjective of Similitude	48
IV. NUMERALS	49
Cardinals	50
Ordinals	55
Collective Numerals	55
Distributives and Multiplicatives.	57
Numeral Adverbs	57
Fractional Numbers	58
Raḳam	60

	PAGE
[PERSIAN CONSTRUCTIONS	61
GENDER AND DECLENSION OF NOUNS	61
Construction of the Genitive Case	61
Compounds formed by Inverting this Construction	62
Construction of the Vocative Case	63
Formation of the Plural	63
CONSTRUCTION OF AN ADJECTIVE	64
Compounds formed by Inverting this Construction	64
Comparison of Adjectives	64
THE INFINITIVE AND ROOT	65
VERBAL ADJECTIVES	65
Past and Passive Participles	65
Active Participles, Nouns of Agency, etc.	66
SUFFIXES FORMING NOUNS OF AGENCY, ATTRIBUTIVES, ETC.	69
Possessive Adjectives	70
Negative Adjectives	73
Adjectives denoting Similitude	74
Adjectives denoting Fitness	75
Relative Adjectives	76
Adjectives denoting Colour	78
Adjectives denoting Companionship	78
Nouns of Place	79
Abstract Nouns	81
Diminutives	83
COMPOUNDS	83
Copulative Compounds	84
NUMERAL ADJECTIVES	85
Cardinals	85
Ordinals	86
Distributives	86
Multiplicatives, and Numeral Adverbs	87
ARABIC CONSTRUCTIONS	87
INFINITIVE OR VERBAL NOUNS OF THE GROUND FORM	88
VERBAL ADJECTIVES	89
VERBAL NOUNS OF THE DERIVED FORMS	92
VERBAL ADJECTIVES OF THE DERIVED FORMS	96
POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	98
RELATIVE ADJECTIVES	99
ABSTRACT NOUNS OF QUALITY	100
NOUNS OF PLACE AND TIME	101
DIMINUTIVES	102
GENDER AND NUMBER OF NOUNS	102
DECLENSION	103
Regular Plurals	103
Broken Plurals	105
NUMBERS, CARDINAL AND ORDINAL	112
Distributives, Multiplicatives, Fractions	113]
v. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS	113
Declension	115

CHAP. II. (*continued*)

	PAGE
VI. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	116
Declension	117
VII. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN	119
VIII. THE CORRELATIVE PRONOUN	120
IX. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN	120
X. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN	122
Emphatic Forms	122
Compound Forms	123
XI. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN	124
The Pronomen Reverentiæ	125
XII. RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.	126
XIII. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS	126
XIV. PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES	127

CHAP. III. THE VERB

THE INFINITIVE OR GERUND	129
THE NOUN OF AGENCY	130
THE IMPERFECT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES	131
Irregular Participles	132
Declension of the Participles	133
THE PAST CONJUNCTIVE PARTICIPLE	134
THE IMPERATIVE	135
THE PRECATIVE	136
THE SIMPLE TENSES	139
The Aorist	139
The Past Indefinite	141
The Past Conditional	142
THE COMPOUND TENSES	142
The Future	142
The Present Imperfect	143
The Past Imperfect	144
The Present Perfect	144
The Past Perfect	145
The Past Potential	145
CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE VOICE	146
The Verb <i>Likhnā</i> , 'to write'	147
The Verb <i>Chalnā</i> , 'to go'	150
The Verb <i>Honā</i> , 'to be'	153
Additional Tenses	156
CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE	157
DERIVATIVE VERBS	161
I. CAUSAL VERBS	161
II. DENOMINATIVE VERBS	167
III. COMPOUND VERBS AND FORMS	169
Nominals	169
Intensives	170
Potentials	171
Completives	172
Continuatives and Staticals	173
Frequentatives	175
Desideratives	176

DERIVATIVE VERBS (<i>continued</i>)	PAGE
Transitives formed with a Conj. Part.	177
Inceptives, Permissives, Acquisitives	178
Desideratives, Reiteratives	179
CHAP. IV. PARTICLES	
I. ADVERBS	181
Original Hindī Adverbs	181
Nouns in the Locative or Ablative Case	182
Pronominal Adverbs	183
Compound Adverbs	187
Persian Adverbs	188
Arabic Adverbs	189
II. PREPOSITIONS AND POSTPOSITIONS	191
Genuine Postpositions governing the Formative	192
Postpositions which govern the Genitive or the Formative	193
Postpositions, originally Hindī Nouns (masc.)	194
Postpositions, originally Persian Nouns	195
Postpositions, originally Arabic Nouns	196
Persian and Arabic Prepositions	199
III. CONJUNCTIONS	200
IV. INTERJECTIONS	201
CHAP. V. DERIVATION OF WORDS	203
I. ABSTRACT NOUNS	203
II. NOUNS OF AGENCY, ATTRIBUTIVES, ETC.	208
III. DIMINUTIVES	216
IV. COMPOUNDS	218
SYNTAX.	
CHAP. VI. I. THE PARTS OF A SENTENCE	223
II. THE ORDER OF THE WORDS IN A SENTENCE.	228
III. CONCORD OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE	236
CHAP. VII. a. THE ABSENCE OF THE ARTICLE	244
b. THE RELATION OF SUBSTANTIVES IN A SENTENCE	245
I. THE NOMINATIVE	246
II. THE AGENT	248
III. THE GENITIVE	250
IV. THE DATIVE	260
V. THE ACCUSATIVE	264
Cognate	268
Double	268
Factitive	269
VI. THE ABLATIVE	272
VII. THE LOCATIVE	281
VIII. THE VOCATIVE	289
CHAP. VIII. ADJECTIVES	
I. ATTRIBUTIVE	290
II. NUMERAL	294
CHAP. IX. PRONOUNS	
I. PERSONAL	298

CHAP. IX. PRONOUNS (*continued*)

II. DEMONSTRATIVE	302
III. RELATIVE	305
1. The Conjunctive Sentence	305
2. The Qualificative Sentence	311
IV. INTERROGATIVE	313
V. INDEFINITE	317
VI. REFLEXIVE	320

CHAP. X. THE VERB (ACTIVE VOICE)

VERBAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	324
I. THE INFINITIVE	324
II. THE NOUN OF AGENCY	329
III. THE PARTICIPLES	331
IMPERFECT AND PERFECT	331
PAST CONJUNCTIVE	341
TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD	343
I. THE AORIST	343
II. THE INDEFINITE FUTURE	348
III. THE PRESENT	349
IV. THE PAST IMPERFECT	352
V. THE PAST INDEFINITE	353
VI. THE PRESENT PERFECT	355
VII. THE PAST PERFECT	356
THE IMPERATIVE AND PRECATIVE	357
TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	361
I. THE AORIST	361
II. THE PRESENT POTENTIAL	366
III. THE PAST POTENTIAL	367
IV. THE PAST CONDITIONAL	368
THE PASSIVE VOICE	371
CAUSAL VERBS	373
COMPOUND VERBS	373
INTENSIVES, POTENTIALS, COMPLETIVES, CONTINU-	
ATIVES	374
FREQUENTATIVES, DESIDERATIVES	375
TRANSITIVES FORMED WITH CONJUNCTIVE PAR-	
TICIPLES	376
PHRASES	376
INCEPTIVES, PERMISSIVES, ETC.	377
NOMINALS	378

CHAP. XI. PARTICLES

ADVERBS	381
PREPOSITIONS AND POSTPOSITIONS	383
CONJUNCTIONS	386
COORDINATE COMBINATION	386
SUBORDINATE COMBINATION	390

CHAP. XII. THE DIRECT ORATION 395

APPENDIX

THE MOHAMMADAN CALENDAR	396
THE HINDŪ CALENDAR	398

HINDŪSTĀNĪ GRAMMAR.

PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I.

I. THE ALPHABET.

1. Urdū, or Hindūstānī, though a composite language, is derived mainly from the Hindī. The Persian and Arabic languages have contributed largely, but Hindī is the chief source. Like Persian and Arabic it is written and read from right to left, and books written in it begin at the page which, in an English book, would be the last. The letters (حُرُوفُ الشَّجَرِ *hurūfu 'ttahajjī*) are thirty-five in number, and are all consonants, though three of them are also used as vowels. When grouped into words, they are (with nine exceptions) connected with one another, and several of the letters assume somewhat different shapes according as they stand at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of a connected group. The following Table exhibits the several forms of the letters, along with their names and numerical values.

Name.	Power.	Uncon- nected Form.	Connected Form :			Exemplification of			Numeri- cal Value.
			Final.	Medial.	Initial.	Final.	Medial.	Initial.	
الف <i>alif</i>	.....	ا	ا	ا	ا	تا	بار	آب	1
ب <i>be</i>	<i>b</i>	ب	ب	ب	ب	جَب	خَیَر	بَد	2
پ <i>pe</i>	<i>p</i>	پ	پ	پ	پ	تَب	سَیَر	پَس	[2] ²
ت <i>te</i>	<i>t</i>	ت	ت	ت	ت	مَت	لَتَرَه	تَب	400
ت <i>te</i> , or ت <i>ta</i>	<i>t</i>	ت ¹	ت	ت	ت	هَت	مَتَر	تِیپ	[400]
ث <i>se</i>	<i>s</i>	ث	ث	ث	ث	بَحَث	کَثَر	ثَنّا	500
جیم <i>jim</i>	<i>j</i>	ج	ج	ج	ج	لَج	فَجَر	جَب	3
چ <i>che</i>	<i>ch</i>	چ	چ	چ	چ	سَچ	بَچَه	چُپ	[3]
ح <i>he</i>	<i>h</i>	ح	ح	ح	ح	صَح	بَحَث	حَرف	8
خ <i>khe</i>	<i>kh</i>	خ	خ	خ	خ	مِخ	بَخَش	خَال	600
دال <i>dāl</i>	<i>d</i>	د	د	د	د	بَد	فِدّا	دَسْتُ	4
ڈ <i>da</i>	<i>d</i>	ڈ	ڈ	ڈ	ڈ	مُنڈ	نِڈَر	ڈَال	[4]
ذال <i>zāl</i>	<i>z</i>	ذ	ذ	ذ	ذ	کَاغذ	نَذَر	ذَات	700
ر <i>re</i>	<i>r</i>	ر	ر	ر	ر	جَر	بَرَد	رَاں	200
ڑ <i>ra</i>	<i>r</i>	ڑ	ڑ	ڑ	ڑ	جَر	بَرّا	ڑوڑّا	[200]
ز <i>ze</i>	<i>z</i>	ز	ز	ز	ز	گَز	بَزَم	زَر	7
ژی <i>zhe</i>	<i>zh</i>	ژ	ژ	ژ	ژ	پُژ	مُژَدَه	ژَرف	[7]
سین <i>sēn</i>	<i>s</i>	س	س	س	س	بَس	نَسَب	سَر	60
شین <i>shēn</i>	<i>sh</i>	ش	ش	ش	ش	غَش	حَشَر	شَب	300

¹ Instead of ت, ژ, etc., the forms ط, ر, etc., are commonly used in books printed and lithographed in India. The form ت is peculiar to books printed in England.

² The brackets are intended to show that these letters had originally no value, but afterwards received the same value as the cognate Arabic letters

Name.	Power.	Unconnected Form.	Connected Form :			Exemplification of			Numerical Value.
			Final.	Medial.	Initial.	Final.	Medial.	Initial.	
صاد <i>ṣād</i>	<i>ṣ</i>	ص	ص	ص	ص	خلص	قصب	صاف	90
ضاد <i>ẓād</i>	<i>ẓ</i>	ض	ض	ض	ض	بعض	حضر	ضبر	800
طوي <i>ṭoe</i>	<i>ṭ</i>	ط	ط	ط	ط	خط	خطا	طاق	9
ظوي <i>ẓoe</i>	<i>ẓ</i>	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	حفظ	نظر	ظفر	900
عين <i>‘ain</i>	<i>‘a</i>	ع	ع	ع	ع	صنع	بعد	عسل	70
غين <i>gain</i>	<i>g</i>	غ	غ	غ	غ	تبع	بغل	غسل	1000
فے <i>fe</i>	<i>f</i>	ف	ف	ف	ف	سلف	سفر	فرح	80
کاف <i>kāf</i>	<i>k</i>	ق	ق	ق	ق	طبق	نقل	قمر	100
کاف <i>kāf</i>	<i>k</i>	ک	ک	ک	ک	نیک	بکر	کام	20
گاف <i>gāf</i>	<i>g</i>	گ	گ	گ	گ	الگ	مگس	گل	[20]
لام <i>lām</i>	<i>l</i>	ل	ل	ل	ل	حمل	طلب	لعل	30
میم <i>mīm</i>	<i>m</i>	م	م	م	م	قلم	{قمر قمر}	مال	40
نون <i>nūn</i>	<i>n</i>	ن	ن	ن	ن	من	منع	نعل	50
واو <i>wā'o</i>	<i>w</i>	و	و	و	و	بو	پور	وحد	6
هے <i>he</i>	<i>h</i>	ه	ه	ه	ه	نه	{کیا کہا}	هنر	5
یے <i>ye</i>	<i>y</i>	ی	{ی ے}	ی	ی	{بی ے}	بید	یاد	10

Rem. a. The form *ʾ* is used for the letters *b, p, t, ṭ, s, n, y*, before *j, چ ch, ح h, and خ kh*, as in the words *تخت takht*, *بچ bach*.

Rem. b. *ʾ* in connection with a preceding *ل* forms the figures لا, لا. This combination is generally reckoned a letter of the alphabet, and inserted before *ی*, to the perplexity of many grammarians, who, ignorant of the reason why it is placed there, erroneously call it *lām*.

alif, whereas it is nothing else than the name of the *alif* of prolongation (see § 11, *Rem. c.*) written at full length. It must not be confounded with the *consonant* ا (or the *hamzated alif*, or *hamza*, as it is commonly called), the first letter of the alphabet.

2. To the above letters should be added the aspirated letters of the Devanāgarī, or Alphabet of the Sanskrit, viz. भ *bha*, फ *pha*, थ *tha*, ठ *ṭha*, झ *jha*, छ *chha*, घ *dha*, ढ *ḍha*, ख *kha*, ग *gha*. The aspirate in these letters is said to be مَکْهُوٓتَ *makhhlūt*, or 'blended' (with the preceding letter). They are represented in Urdū by the combinations ہ, پ, ت, ٹ, چ, ڈ, دھ, ڈھ, گ, گھ, the 'butterfly- or spectacle-shaped' *h* (*du-chashmī he*) being conventionally used with all except د and ڈ, which letters are not (except, optionally, in the case of a final *h*, see *Rem. a*, § 3) connected with a following letter, and therefore take the initial form of the *h* after them.

Rem. a. The letters ا, ب, پ, ث, ج, ح, خ, د, ذ, ر, ز, س, ی, ه, و, ن, م, ل, ک, ق, ف, غ, ع, ظ, ط, ض, ص, ش are borrowed from the Arabic; پ, چ, گ and ژ from the Persian (they are called بائے فارسی *bā'ē Fārsī*, 'the Persian *b*,' etc.); and the remaining letters are conventionally used as the equivalents of certain Hindī letters.

Rem. b. The letters ث, ح, ص, ض, ط, ظ, ق, ع are peculiar to Arabic words. ص is to be met with in a few Persian words (*e.g.* صد *ṣad*, 'a hundred'), but in every such instance an original س *s* has been changed to ص *ṣ*. The letters خ, ذ, ز and غ are common to both Arabic and Persian words; but خ and غ occur in a few Hindī words in place of کھ and گھ. The letter ژ occurs in Persian words alone. پ, چ and گ may occur in Persian or Hindī words, but

never in those derived from the Arabic. ت, ث, ج, and the ten aspirated letters ب, پ, etc., can occur in Hindī words alone. The remaining letters are common to Hindī, Persian, and Arabic words.

3. The letters ا, د, ذ, ر, ز, and و are joined to a preceding letter, provided it be not one of their own number, but not generally to a following one. The letters ط and ظ are connected with both a preceding and a following letter, but their form remains unchanged.

Rem. The above rule is strictly true only of the printed character. In writing and in lithographed books these letters, with the exception of ا, are frequently joined to a following h, if it be final: e.g. دیدا dīda.

4. The correct pronunciation of some of the letters, as, for example, ح and ع, it is scarcely possible for a European to acquire. Most of them, however, are sufficiently represented by the corresponding English characters, as may be seen from the following remarks:

ا *alif*, or *hamza* (as it is commonly called, to distinguish it from the *alif* of prolongation), is the *spiritus lenis* of the Greeks. It may be compared with *h* in the English *hour*.

ب and پ are our *b* and *p*.

ت is much softer and more dental than the English *t*. In pronouncing it, the tip of the tongue should be placed against the edge or the back of the upper teeth.

ث has a heavier¹ sound than our *t*, but it represents it more closely than ت does. In pronouncing it the tip of the tongue is applied to the back part of the mouth.

¹ This *t* is termed تَائِي مُثَقَّلَةٌ *tā'ī muṣaḥḥala* 'the heavy *t*,' and the same epithet is applied to the letters ث and ج.

| ث, س, ص are all sounded alike, like our hard *s* in *sit*.¹

ج has the sound of *j* in the English *jail*.

چ is the English *ch*, as in *church*.

ح is a very sharp, but smooth guttural aspirate, stronger than *s*, but not rough like خ. Its sound approximates to that of our *h* in *huge*.

د is softer and more dental than our *d*. It is pronounced in the same way as our ث, by placing the tongue against the back of the upper teeth.

ذ has a sound resembling the English *d* in *dame*; but it is generally heavier. It is pronounced by applying the tip of the tongue to the back part of the roof of the mouth.

ز, ذ, ض and ظ have all one sound in Urdū, viz. that of our *z* in *zeal*.¹

ر is, in all positions, a distinctly uttered lingual *r*, as pronounced by the French and Germans.

ڑ is a heavy sounding *r*, uttered by turning the tip of the tongue towards the roof of the mouth, as in the case of ذ, with which letter it is interchangeable.

ژ has the sound of our *z* in *azure*.

ش is represented by our *sh*, as in *shut*.

ط is a strongly palatal *t*; but by all except, perhaps, the educated Musalmān, it is pronounced like ث.

ع has a strong guttural sound, pronounced by a smart compression of the upper part of the wind-pipe, and forcible emission of the breath. Its correct pronunciation is rarely heard in India, and is scarcely to be acquired by a European.

غ is a guttural *g*, accompanied by a grating or rattling sound as in

¹ In reading the Kōr'an, however, the true sound is given to these letters; *i.e.* ث is pronounced like our *th* in *thing*; س like *s* in *sit*; ص somewhat like *ss* in *hiss*; ذ like *th* in *this*; ز as the common English *z*; ض like a strongly articulated palatal *d*; and ظ, either like ض, or as a strongly articulated palatal *z*.

gargling, of which English affords no example. The Northumbrian *r*, and the French *r* in *grasseye*, are approximations to it.

ف is our *f*.

ق is a strongly articulated guttural *k*, of which we have no example in English. It closely resembles the sound uttered by a crow in its *caw*.

ك is our *k*.

گ has the sound of our *g* in *get*, *give*; never that of *g* in *gem*, *gaol*, *gibe*.

ل, م are exactly equivalent to the English *l*, *m*.

ن has three distinct sounds: it has the sound of the English *n* in *not*—1) When it occurs at the beginning of a word or syllable, as نام *nām*; 2) at the end of a word or syllable, when preceded by a short vowel, as بن *ban*; 3) in all Arabic words in which it is not immediately followed by ب *b*. It is *nasal* (غنة *gunna*), or *indistinct* (خفا *khafā*), like the French *n* in *bon*—1) When it is quiescent (*i.e.* not movent), and immediately preceded by a long vowel; *e.g.* درختان *dirakhtān*, برسوں *barson*, سائپ *sānp*, آندھی *āndhī*, اینٹ *īnt*, اُنت *ūnt*: (2) when it is quiescent, and is immediately followed by a quiescent letter; *e.g.* انتری *antrī*, پھنسنا *phaṇsnā*, منہ *munh*. It has the sound of *m* in all Persian and Arabic words in which it is immediately followed by ب *b* or پ *p*; and generally¹ in Hindī words also, if a short vowel precede it; *e.g.* امبود *amboḥ*, تنبیہ *tambīh*, عنبر *ambar*,

¹ There are numerous exceptions to the rule in the case of Hindī words; a good test, perhaps, is the method of writing: if a word can be written with either *n* or *m* (before *b* or *p*), the *n* invariably has the sound of *m*: *e.g.* لَمْبَا or لَمْبَا *lambā*; چَمْبَا *chambā*: if *n* cannot be replaced by *m* in writing, then it has a nasal or obscure sound; as چَنبیلی *chanbelī*. To say, as all the grammarians do, that “*n* immediately preceding *b* or *p* always has the sound of *m*,” is quite wrong; for if a long vowel precede the *n*, it almost invariably has a *nasal* sound: *e.g.* سَائپ *sānp*, تَانْبَا *tānbā*, کَانِبْنَا *kānpnā*, سَوْنِبْنَا *sauṇpnā*; and the instances of its having a nasal sound, even when preceded by a short vowel, are by no means few. The rule really applies to Persian and Arabic words alone.

letters which has an English equivalent is تھ, which is sounded like *th* in our *thick*. The sounds of *ph*, *th*, etc., are said by grammarians to resemble those of the same combinations in our words, *up-hill*, *hot-house*, etc.; but this is scarcely correct.

II. THE VOWELS AND OTHER ORTHOGRAPHIC SIGNS.

5. The following signs are used to indicate the short vowels:

1) َ (called فَتْحَة *fathā*, or زَبَر *zabar*).¹ It is written *above* the consonant after which it is sounded, and is invariably pronounced like our *a* in *cedar*, or our *u* in *bun*: e.g. بَن *ban*, ‘a forest.’

2) ِ (called كَسْرَة *kasra*, or زِير *zer*). It is written *beneath* the consonant after which it is pronounced, and has the sound of our *i* in *pin*: e.g. بِن *bin*, ‘without.’

3) ُ (called ضَمَّة *ẓamma*, or پِش *pesh*). It is written *over* the consonant to which it belongs, and has the sound of *u* in *pull*: e.g. پُل *pul*, ‘a bridge.’

Rem. a. The short vowels *kasra* and *ẓamma*, when immediately followed by *s*, or by the harsh gutturals ح and ع, are generally pronounced like obscure *e* and *o* respectively; as يَه *yēh*, ‘this,’ وَه *wōh*, ‘that,’ مَحْنَت *mēhnat*, ‘toil,’ ‘trouble,’ مُحَمَّد *Mōhammad*, فَعْل *fē’l*, ‘action.’ So also *ẓamma* preceded by the guttural ک (ق) has the sound of *ō*; as قُرْآن *kōr’ān*.

Rem. b. The three short vowels are collectively termed حَرَكَات *ḥaraḳāt*, ‘motions;’ and the letter which is accompanied by one of them is said to be مُتَحَرِّك *mutaḥarrik*, or ‘movent.’

¹ *Fathā*, *kasra*, *ẓamma*, are the Arabic names for the short vowels; *zabar*, *zer*, *pesh*, the Persian: both are commonly used by the native grammarians.

TANWĪN.

6. The marks of the short vowels when doubled are pronounced with the addition of the sound *n*, as ـَـ *an*, ـِـ *in*, ـُـ *un*. This is called تَنْوِين *tanwīn*, or 'nūnation' (from the name of the letter *nūn*), and takes place only at the end of an Arabic word: e.g. فَوْرًا *fauran*, 'instantly,' مَثَلًا *maṣalan*, 'for example,' $\text{دَفْعَةً$ *daf'atan*, 'all at once,' مُشَارًا إِلَيْهِ *mushārun ilaih*, 'the aforesaid.' The *tanwīn* of *futha* (ـَـ) takes an ا after all the consonants except س ; but the *tanwīn* should always be written over the letter preceding the *alif*, and not over the *alif* itself. This *alif* in no way affects the quantity of the vowel, which is always short.

Rem. a. If a word end in ا , the *tanwīn* with *hamza* (§ 13) is written after it; e.g. أَوَّلًا *ibtida'an*, 'firstly,' 'originally.'

Rem. b. The *tanwīn* of *zamma* rarely occurs in Urdū; that of *kasra* perhaps never.

JAZM OR SUKŪN.

7. When a consonant is not accompanied by one of the three short vowels *fatha*, *kasra*, and *zamma*, that is to say, when it occurs at the end of a shut syllable (and is therefore not مُتَحَرِّكٌ *mutaḥarrik*, or 'movent'), it is termed مَجْزُومٌ *majzūm*, 'amputated,' or سَاكِنٌ *sākin*, 'resting' or 'quiescent,'¹ and is then marked with the orthographic sign ـْـ , called جَزْم *jazm*, 'amputation,' or سُكُونٌ *sukūn*, 'rest,' which serves, when another syllable follows, to separate the two, e.g. مَارِنًا *mārṇā*, 'to beat,' مَسْجِدٌ *masjid*, 'a mosque.'

¹ The word *quiescent* is to be understood in its original signification of *not moving*, and not in the secondary sense of 'not sounded,' that it has in English grammar.

Rem. a. When two or more quiescent letters occur together in a word, the first alone is termed سَاكِن *sākin*, and the others are termed مَوْكُوف *maukūf*, 'supported,' or 'dependent on;' e.g. in the word دوست *dost*, 'friend,' the و is termed *sākin*, but the س and ت are said to be *maukūf*.

Rem. b. The *jazm* is not written over the last letter of a word, although that letter is, in all but a very few cases, quiescent.

Rem. c. A few words begin with two consonants, the first having no vowel; e.g. کیا *kyā*, 'what,' کیوں *kyon*, 'why,' برَاهْمَن *brāhman*, 'a Brāhman.' It is not customary to write *jazm* over the first letter in these words, since a quiescent consonant is not supposed to occur at the beginning of a word. When the second of the two letters is *r*, the first is not unfrequently pronounced with *kasra*, e.g. *birāhman*. Sometimes the *r* is elided, as in بَاهْمَن

TASHDĪD.

8. A consonant that is to be doubled, or 'strengthened,' (مُشَدَّد *mushaddad*) is written only once, but marked with the ّ, called تَشْدِيد *tashdīd*, 'strengthening,' e.g. تَتَّى *tattī*, 'a screen,' تَصَرَّف *taṣarruf*, 'use,' قُوَّت *kuwwat* (not *kūwat*), 'power.' The first of the double letters ends the preceding syllable, and the second begins the following, as *taṣar-ruf*; and each of them must be distinctly pronounced, and not slurred over as the double letters are in the English words *manner*, *mummy*.

Rem. The *tashdīd* is not generally used in the case of infinitives, the roots of which end in ن; e.g. جَانْنَا *jānnā*, 'to know,' سَنَّا *sunna*, 'to hear,' not حَانْنَا and سَنَّا.

LONG VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

9. The long vowels (*ā*, *ī*, *ū*) are indicated by placing the marks of the short vowels before the corresponding

letters ا, و, and ي respectively, as in the words بَار *bār*, نُر *nūr*, بَيْس *bīs*. Long *a* (*ā*) is pronounced like our *a* in *far*, never like *a* in *ball*; long *u* (*ū*) is sounded like our *u* in *rule*, or our *oo* in *fool*; long *i* (*ī*) has the sound of our *i* in the words *police*, *caprice*. But the sounds of the long vowels endure much longer in Urdū than in English, especially when they occur in the first part, or in the middle of words.

10. The combinations و[°] and ي[°] also often form sounds like our *o* in *mole*, and the French *e* in *fête* (or the English *a* in *fate*), e.g. مَوْل *mol*, 'price,' پَيْت *pet*, 'belly.' As these sounds are unknown to the Arabic, they are termed مَجْهُول *maj-hūl*, 'unknown,' in contradistinction to the sounds of *ū* and *ī*, which are termed مَعْرُوف *ma'rūf*, 'known.'

11. The short vowel *fatha* before ي and و forms the diphthongs *ai* and *au*, as exemplified in the English *aisle*, and the German *haus*, (or in the English *house*): e.g. حَيْف *haif*, 'pity,' حَوْض *hawz*, 'reservoir.'

Rem. a. ا, و, and ي, when they form vowels, are termed *letters of prolongation* (حُرُوفُ الْمَدِّ *hurūfu'l madd*), because they have the effect of lengthening the preceding short vowels; and حُرُوفُ الْأَشْبَاعِ *hurūfu'l ishbā'*, 'the letters added to give fullness of sound' (to the preceding homogeneous short vowels). They are merely sounds of prolongation after the short vowels, and cannot have a vowel (that is to say, are quiescent), wherefore they cannot commence a word or syllable. Thus they are distinguished from the consonants ا, و, ي. If و and ي be preceded by *kasra* and *ẓamma* respectively, they must have a vowel, and are therefore consonants, e.g. سَيَوَا *siwā*, 'more,' 'except,' مَيْسَر *mu-yassar*, 'attained.'

Rem. b. The letters of prolongation, though they are quiescent, are

not generally marked with *jāzm*; but in certain works printed in England, و and ي, when they have the *majhūl* sound, are marked with that sign—or rather with a complete circle, thus كُو *ko*, تِل *tel*; and when they form diphthongs (in which case they might be marked with *jāzm*), with the sign اُ: e.g. أُوْر *aur*, فُوْرًا *fauran*.

Rem. c. The *alif* of prolongation is, by some grammarians, regarded as a letter of the alphabet, and named لا *lā*, the ل with *fatḥa* being prefixed to it because it cannot be pronounced at the beginning of its own name, as every other letter can (see § 1, *Rem. b*).

12. The *alif* of prolongation is omitted in some Arabic words, but the omission is indicated by the preceding *fatḥa* being written perpendicularly: e.g. رَحْمٰن (for رَحْمَان) *rahmān*, ‘most merciful,’ هٰذَا (for هَازَا) *hāzā*, ‘that.’ The perpendicular *fatḥa* represents a small *alif*.

Rem. a. In a few Arabic words the perpendicular *fatḥa* is followed by و or ي; in such cases these letters are sounded like the *alif* of prolongation; e.g. صَلٰوة *ṣalāt*, ‘prayer,’ اَوْلَيْتَر (or اُولَيْتَر) *aulātār*, ‘better.’

Rem. b. ي at the end of a word after *fatḥa* is pronounced like ا, which is generally written over it, e.g. دَعَوٰى or دَعَوٰى *da‘wā*, ‘claim,’ عَقْبٰى *uqbā*, ‘the next world.’ This ي is termed اَلِفُ الْمَقْصُورَةِ *alifu’l maqṣūra*, ‘the abbreviated *alif*,’ in contradistinction to ‘the lengthened *alif*’ (§ 17). It is so named because, when it comes in contact with ‘the conjunctive *alif*’ (اَلِفُ الْوَصْلِ *alifu’l waṣl*, § 15), it is shortened in pronunciation before the following consonant. The Persians generally change this ي into ا.

THE HAMZATED ALIF, OR HAMZA.

13. *Alif*, when it is not a mere letter of prolongation, but a consonant, pronounced like the *spiritus lenis*, is distinguished by the mark ْ *hamza* (هَمْزَة), either expressed or implied, and is commonly called *hamza*. When it

occurs at the beginning of a word, the form assumed by the 'soft breathing' is ا alone (*hamza* being understood), e.g. أَب *ab*, إِس *is*, أُن *un*, إِيكْه *ikh*, إِيْرِي *erī*, أُون *ūn*, أُوت *ot*, أَي *ai*, أُور *aur*. At the beginning of a syllable not the first in a word, the soft breathing may be represented by ـَ alone, or by *alif* alone, or by و or ي accompanied by *hamza* (see § 14).

Rem. a. According to Arabic grammarians, a syllable cannot begin with a vowel; but every vowel must be preceded by a symbol indicating the movement of the vocal organ whereby the emission of the breath is produced. Now, in uttering what *we* regard as an initial vowel, there takes place (in the fauces), according to this theory, a sudden emission of the voice after a total suppression; and this is represented by the symbol أ or ـَ *hamza*, which signifies 'prick,' 'impulse.' This effort of utterance (which, not being a vowel, comes to be ranked as a consonant) the Greeks represented by the mark ('). In the pronunciation of an Arab the *hamza* is a very perceptible articulation, especially at the commencement of a syllable in the middle of a word, preceding a shut syllable; e.g. قُرْآن *kör'ān*, جُرْأت *jur'at* (not *kö-rān*, and *ju-rat*).

14. When *hamza* occurs at the beginning of a syllable not the first in a word, the following cases arise:

1). If it be pronounced with *fatha*, it generally appears in the form of *alif* with *hamza*: e.g. سُور *sū'ar*, 'pig,' جُرْأت *jur'at*, 'daring,' تَوَام *tau'am*, 'twin.'

2). If it be accompanied by *zamma*, and preceded by one of the letters of prolongation, it generally takes the form of *hamza* alone (ـُ): e.g. جَاوُن *jā'ūn*, 'shall, or should, I go?' پَاوُن *pā'on*, 'foot,' أَنْسُوْن *ānsū'on*, 'tears,' جِيُوْن *jī'ūn*, '(if) I live.' If it be moved by *kasra*, and followed by the *majhūl* ـِ , *hamza* alone may be written,

or **ئ** may be used, but the former is the more common :
e.g. پائی or پائے *pā'e*, 'foot,' ہوئی or ہوئے *hū'e*, 'been.'

3). If it is pronounced with *kasra*, and preceded by a letter of prolongation, or by *fatha*, it generally passes into **ئ** (in which case it is correct to omit the two points of the letter **ي**): e.g. جدائی *judā'i*, 'separation,' فائدہ *fā'idā*, 'advantage,' گنجائش *gunjā'ish*, 'capacity,' 'room,' ہوئی *hū'i*, 'been,' کوئی *ko'i*, 'some,' کئی *ka'i*, 'several.'

Rem. a. ا sometimes passes into و : e.g. مؤنث *mu'annaṣ*, 'feminine,' طاووس *tā'ūs*, 'peacock.' The first of these words calls for no comment, as the law by which its change is effected does not operate in Urdū : it is taken from the Arabic, as given above. As regards the second, it may be observed that it is a more correct, though less common, form than طائوس. Similarly جاوروں, پاوروں, though they never occur, are, strictly speaking, more correct than جاور, etc. But so far are the natives of India from being particular in such matters, that they commonly write the *hamza* over the letter of prolongation itself : e.g. جاور, طاووس, ہوئی.

Rem. b. *Hamza* is often found at the end of a syllable in Arabic words : e.g. مؤمن, تأثیر. In such cases the *hamza* is changed (in Urdū) into the letter of prolongation corresponding to the preceding short vowel : e.g. مؤمن *mūmin*, 'believer,' تأثیر *tāṣīr*, 'effect.'

Rem. c. The letters ا, و, and ي are termed حروفِ عِلّت *ḥurūf-e-illat*, 'weak letters,' on account of the changes to which they are subject among themselves.

Rem. d. *Hamza*, as its character indicates, is the abbreviation of ع, which is in fact but an aggravation of the *spiritus lenis*. This may guide the student to some extent in pronouncing the ع ; but as we have observed before, it is almost impossible for an Englishman to acquire the true pronunciation of this letter ; and it is quite impossible to explain the true sound in writing : it must be learned by the ear alone. A Hindū makes scarcely any distinction between the sounds عَب 'ab,

عِب 'ib, عُب 'ub, and those of أَب ab, إِب ib, أُب ub; but in the mouth of an educated Mohammadan they are very different sounds. When we have occasion to write Hindūstānī in the Roman character, *hamza* in the middle of a word will be represented by the Greek symbol ('), and ع by that symbol inverted: *e.g.* pā'on (پَاوَن), 'alam (عَلَم). *Hamza* at the beginning of a word will be omitted.

WASL.

15. The mark (≈), called وَصْل *waṣl*, 'union,' occurs in Urdū only over the consonant ا of the Arabic article ال, in phrases from the Arabic, *e.g.* أَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ *amīru 'l mūminīn*, 'Commander of the Faithful,' أَشْرَفُ الْأَشْرَافِ *ashrafu 'l ashraf*, 'the noblest of the noble,' بِالْكُلِّ *bi'lkull* (pronounced *bil-kull*), 'in the totality,' 'completely.' In such phrases the ا at the commencement of the article is absorbed by the final vowel of the preceding word and the mark ≈ written over the *alif* indicates the elision of the *spiritus lenis*. The و and ي of prolongation, as also 'the abbreviated *alif*' (*alif* makṣūra, —ي or —ى, § 12, Rem. b.), are shortened in pronunciation before an *alif* with *waṣl*: *e.g.* فِي الْفَوْرِ *fi 'l faur*, 'on the instant,' 'instantly,' بُوَ الْهَوَسِ *bu 'l hawas*, 'possessed of desire,' 'desirous,' دَعْوَى الْمُتَأَخِّرِينَ *da'wa 'l muta'akhkhirīn*, 'the claim, or assertion, of the moderns.' These words are invariably pronounced as though they were written فَلْفَوْر *filfaur*, بُلْهَوَس *bulhawas*, دَعْوَلْمُتَأَخِّرِينَ *da'walmuta'akhkhirīn*.

Rem. *Alif* with *waṣl* (اِ) is altogether omitted in the first word of the introductory formula بِسْمِ اللَّهِ (for بِاسْمِ اللَّهِ) *bismillāh*, 'in the name of God,' and also after the Arabic preposition لِي *li*, 'to': *e.g.* لِلْعَالَمِينَ *li'l'ālamīn* 'to the worlds.'

16. If the first letter of the word to which the Arabic article is prefixed be one of the following fourteen—ت, ث, د, ذ, ر, ز, س, ش, ص, ض, ط, ظ, ل, ن, the *l* of the article, though written, is for the sake of euphony passed over in pronunciation, and assimilated to the following consonant, which is then marked with *tashdīd*, and the *jazm* of the ل is omitted: e.g. دَارُ السَّلْطَنَةِ *dāru 'ssaltanat*, 'the abode of sovereignty,' 'the royal city,' إِخْوَانُ الصِّفَا *ikhwānu 'ṣṣafā*, 'the Brethren of Purity,' عَوَامُّ النَّاسِ *'awāmmu 'nnūs*, 'the mass of men,' 'the common people.'

Rem. The letters ت, ث, etc., mentioned above, are called حُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِ *hurūfu 'shshamsīya*, or 'the solar letters,' because the word شَمْس *shams*, 'sun,' happens to begin with one of them; and the other letters of the Arabic alphabet are termed حُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِ *hurūfu 'l qamarīya*, or 'the lunar letters,' because قَمَر *kamar*, 'moon,' commences with one of them.

MADD.

17. At the beginning of a word or syllable the sound of long *a* (*ā*) is represented by the *alif* of prolongation preceded by the inaudible consonant ʾ. The two *alifs* are commonly represented in writing by one with the sign of prolongation, ٓ, *madd* (مد i.e. *lengthening, extension*), placed over it: e.g. آج *āj*, 'to-day' (for أَآج), آب *āb*, 'water,' قُرْآن *kor'ān*. *Alif* with *madd* can only occur at the beginning of a syllable.

Rem. آ is called أَلِفٌ مَمْدُودَةٌ *alifē mamdūda*, 'the lengthened *alif*,' in contradistinction to 'the abbreviated or short *alif*' أَلِفٌ مَقْصُورَةٌ (*alifē maqṣūra*, § 12, *Rem. b.*).

18. The attainment of a correct pronunciation will be materially facilitated by a strict attention to the rule for

dividing a word correctly into syllables. Every syllable begins with a movable consonant, and every word has just as many syllables as it has vowels. Hence a syllable consists of a consonant and a vowel, or a consonant, a vowel, and any following *quiescent* consonants: *e.g.* بُؤْكَهَا *bhū-khā*, 'hungry.' حَرَكَتْ *ha-ra-kat*, 'motion,' دِرَخت *di-rakht*, 'tree,' تَبَسَّمَ *ta-bas-sum*, 'smile.'

Rem. The short vowels, and other orthographical signs, are rarely to be met with in MSS. and books printed in India, and the points of the final ي are frequently dispensed with. However necessary then the aid of the orthographical marks may be to a European student, he should not fail to accustom himself to their omission. In these pages an attempt has been made to mark all the most necessary signs. The short vowel *fatḥa* is generally omitted, as also the *kasra* and *zamma* when they help to form the *majhūl* sounds *e* and *o*. When the *majhūl* sound *e* occurs at the end of a word it is written ے, with 'the reversed *ye*' (يَائِے مَعْكُوسِي) *yā'ē ma'kūsī*), provided the preceding letter is one which admits of its being connected with it.¹ The letter غ is represented by *g*, instead of the usual *gh*, since the aspirate in the latter is calculated to mislead the student as to the true sound of the letter.

19. The letters of the alphabet are also used for the purpose of numerical computation:—chiefly, if not exclusively, in recording the date of important events: *e.g.* پادشاه شُعرا بُود اَہلِی *pādshāhē shu'arā būd ahlī*, 'Ahlī was the king of poets,' wherein the sum of the letters پ, ا, د, etc., amounts to 942 (A.H.), the date of the death of the poet Ahlī; باغ و بہار *bāg o bahār*, where the sum of the numerical values of the letters ب, ا, etc., amounts to 1217 A.H., the year in which the work called the *Bāg o bahār* was completed. The arrangement of the letters of

¹ The *yā'ē ma'kūsī*, or 'reversed *ye*,' can only be employed, in the Arabic character, when connected with a preceding letter.

the alphabet according to their numerical values is called the *abjad*, and is contained in the following eight unmeaning words :

اَبجد هوز حُطى کَلَمَن صَعْنَص قُرِشت ثَخَذَضَطْع

The value of each letter will be found in the Table of the Alphabet.

20. The special numerical figures are

۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶	۷	۸	۹	۰
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0

which are compounded in exactly the same way as our numerals : *e.g.* ۱۸۷۳ 1873.

21. The following passage, with the transcript in English letters, will serve as a useful exercise in reading for the student, and also to exemplify the most important of the remarks in the preceding paragraphs.

سِنْد بادِ جہازی کا پہلا سفر *

سِنْد بادِ نے کہا - مَیں نے جو دَوْلَت اور جایداد اپنے باپ کے ترکے سے پائی تھی عالمِ شباب میں عیاشی کر کے سب خرچ کر ڈالی - اور پھر اپنی حماقت اور نادانی پر مُطالع ہو کر کمالِ نادِم اور پشیمان دُوا - اور اُس دَوْلَت کثیر اور مال و اسباب کے ضائع کرنیکا بہت افسوس کیا - دانشمندیوں کا یہ قول کہ ”مُفلسی سے مَر جانا بہتر ہے“ یاد کرتا اور اُسکو اپنے حسبِ حال پاتا - اور میری باپ کا یہی قول تھا * آخر الامر میراث کا بچا بچایا جو میری فضول خرچیوں سے باقی رہ گیا تھا سب جمع کر کے بیچا - اور تاجرانِ بحری سے اپنے باب میں مشورہ کیا - انہوں نے مجھکو اچھی صلاح بتلائی - مَیں نے اُس رُوپی کو تجارت

میں لگادیا۔ اور تجارت کا اسباب خرید کر اُن تاجروں کے ہمراہ بندر
 بانسرا کو گیا۔ اور وہاں سے۔ باتفاق اُن سبکے۔ جہاز کرایہ کر کے
 سوار ہوا *

Sindbād jahāzī-kā pahlū safar.

Sindbād-ne kahā, main-ne jo daulat aur jā'edād apne bāp-ke tarīke-se pā'ī thī, 'ālamē shabāb-men 'aiyāshī-karke sab kharach kar dālī, aur phir apnī hamākat aur nā-dānī-par muṭṭalī'-hokar kamāl nādīm aur pashemān hū'ā, aur us daulatē kaṣīr aur māl o asbāb-ke zū'ē karne-kū bahut afsos kiyā; dānishmandon-kū yēh kaul kī "muṭlisī-se mar-jānā bēhtar hai" yād-kartā, aur usko apne hasbē hāl pātā, aur mere bāp-kū bhī yēhī kaul thā. Ākhīru 'lamr mīrās-kā bachā bachāyū jo merī fazūl-kharachiyon-se bālī rah-gayā thā, sab janī-karke bechā, aur tājirānē baḥrī-se apne bāb-men mashwara kiyā; unhoṅ-ne mujh-ko achchhī ṣalāḥ batlā'ī; main-ne us rūpai-ko tijārat-men lagā-diyā, aur tijārat-kū asbāb kharīd-kar, un tājiron-ke ham-rūh bandar bānsrā-ko gayā, aur wahān-se, ba-ittifāq un sab-ke, jahāz kirāya-kar-ke sawār hū'ā.

TRANSLATION.

Sindbād the Sailor's First Voyage.

Sindbād said: Whatever wealth and property I inherited from my father's estate, I spent all in debauchery in the season of youth; and then, perceiving my folly and stupidity, became extremely ashamed and sorry, and much regretted having squandered that vast wealth and property; I used to call to mind the saying of the wise, 'Death is better than poverty,' and to find it in accordance with my predicament; this saying moreover was my father's also. Ultimately, collecting all the remnants of my inheritance, which had escaped my extravagances, I sold (them), and consulted some merchants (*lit.* sea-traders) respecting myself; they gave me good counsel: I invested that money in commerce, and purchasing trading commodities, accompanied those merchants to the sea-port of Baṣrā, and thence, conjointly with them all, hired a ship, and embarked.

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER II.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

22. Urdū grammarians, using the grammatical terminology of the Arabic, class all the parts of speech under the three general heads of *Verbs* (فَعْل *fēl*), *Nouns* (إِسْم *ism*), and *Particles* (حَرْف *harf*). Under the verb they class what we call the Conjunctive Participle (فَعْلٍ مَعْطُوفٍ *fēl' mātūf*). The *Noun* includes—

1°. The Substantive (إِسْمٌ مَوْصُوفٍ *ism' mauṣūf*, or simply *ism*, 'the noun which is described or qualified').

2°. The Adjective (إِسْمٌ صِفَتٍ *ism' ṣifat*, 'the noun indicating a quality').

3°. The Numerical Adjective (إِسْمٌ عَدَدٍ *ism' adad*, 'the noun of number').

4°. The Personal Pronoun (زَمِيرٌ *zamīr*, 'the noun that is kept in mind').

5°. The Demonstrative Pronoun (إِسْمٌ إِشَارَةٍ *ism' ishāra*, 'the noun of indication, or by which something is pointed out').

6°. The Relative Pronoun [إِسْمٌ مَوْصُولٍ *ism' mauṣūl*, 'the noun that is connected' (with a relative clause)],

7°. The Interrogative Pronoun (اسْمُ اسْتِفْهَامِ *ismě istifhām*, 'the noun that seeks information,' or 'the noun of questioning').

8°. The Indefinite Pronoun (اسْمُ مُبْهَمِ *ismě mubham*, 'the indeterminate or indefinite noun').

9°. The Infinitive, or Verbal Noun (مَصْدَرِ *maṣḍar*, 'the source whence the different forms of the verb originate').

10°. The Deverbal Nouns, as the Noun of Agency (اسْمُ فَاعِلِ *ismě fā'il*), the Perfect, or Passive Participle (اسْمُ مَاضِي or مَفْعُولِ *māzī*, or *ismě maf'ūl*), and the Imperfect Participle (اسْمُ حَالِيَةِ *ismě hālīya*, 'the noun of state or circumstance' of the subject or object).

Under the term *Particles* are comprised—1°. *Adverbs*; 2°. *Prepositions* (حُرُوفِ جَرِّ *hurūfě jarr*, 'particles of attraction'); 3°. *Conjunctions* (حُرُوفِ عَطْفِ *hurūfě 'atf*, 'conjunctive particles,' or حُرُوفِ شَرْطِ *hurūfě shart*, 'conditional particles,' etc.); 4°. *Interjections* (حُرُوفِ نِدَا *hurūfě nidā*, 'particles of calling').

I. THE ARTICLE.

23. It will be perceived from the above classification that the Article finds no place among the parts of speech in Urdū. The context alone can determine whether a noun is definite or indefinite. The force of the definite article is, however, often conveyed by the demonstrative pronouns يَهْ *yēh*, 'this,' and وَهْ *wōh*, 'that'; and that of the

¹ There is no special name for an *adverb* in Urdū; it is termed تَمِيزِ *tamīz*, 'the specification,' ظرفِ *ẓarf*, 'the vessel, or that in which the act is done,' or نَفِي *nafī*, 'the particle of negation,' according to the sense in which it is used.

indefinite article by the numeral ایک *ek*, 'one,' or by the indefinite pronoun کوئی *ko'ī*, 'some.' A fuller notice of this will be found in the Syntax.

II. THE SUBSTANTIVE (اسم).

1. GENDER (جنس *jins*).

24. In respect of gender, Urdū nouns are divisible into two classes: 1) those which are *masculine* (مذکر *muzakkar*); 2) those which are *feminine* (مؤنث *mu'annās*).

Rem. Most nouns are masculine or feminine merely by *usage* (سامعی *samā'ī*); the gender of a large number, however, is based on rule (قیاسی *qiyāsī*): it is with these chiefly that we have to deal.

25. That a noun is of the *masculine* or *feminine* gender may be ascertained either: 1) from its *signification*; or 2) from its *form*.

26. All common nouns and proper names that denote males are masculine by signification, and those that denote females are feminine: *e.g.* باپ *bāp*, 'father,' شوہر *shauhar*, 'husband,' لوہار *lohār*, 'blacksmith,' موہن *Mohan*, are masculine; and ماں *mān*, 'mother,' جورو *zorū*, 'wife,' چھوچھو *chhochcho*, 'nurse,' بٹو *Bannū*, are feminine by signification.

Rem. There is one exception even to this rule. The word قبیلہ *qabīla*, 'family,' 'tribe,' is used euphemistically to signify *wife*, and treated as a masculine; and the masculine terms خاندان *khāndān*, 'family,' گھرانہ *gharāna*, 'household,' گھر کے آدمیاں *ghar ke ādmiyān*, 'people of the house,' are still more commonly used in the sense of 'wife.'

27. Masculine by form are :

1). Hindī nouns ending in ا - *ā*, as آٹا *ātā*, 'flour,' گھڑا *gharā*, 'an earthen vessel,' هیرا *hīrā*, 'diamond.'¹

Rem. The exceptions (though numerous in the Hindī dialect) are not numerous in Urdū.² The chief exception to the rule is a class of feminine diminutives ending in یا - *iyā* : e.g. چڑیا *chiriyā*, 'a bird,' پُٹیا *phuriyā*, 'a small boil,' ڈبیا *ḍibiyā*, 'a tiny box.'

2). Nouns ending in و - *ū* or *o*, and especially those ending in *ū* : e.g. آلو *ālū*, 'potato,' اُلُو *ullū*, 'owl,' بچھو *bichchhū*, 'scorpion,' پہلو *pahlū*, 'side,' جادو *jādū*, 'magic,' hasho, 'stuffing' (a pillow, etc.), بیاو *bhā'o*, 'price,' چھڑکاو *chhirkū'o*, 'sprinkling.' Abstract nouns, like the last of the examples, are without exception masculine.

Rem. Hindī and Arabic words furnish a few exceptions, as بالو *bālū*, 'sand,' دارو *dārū*, 'liquor,' روہو *rohū*, 'a kind of fish,' ناؤ *nā'o*, 'a boat,' ہجو *hajo*, 'satire,' and perhaps one or two more. The chief exceptions are Persian words, as ابرو *abrū*, 'eyebrow,' آبرو *ābrū*, 'honour,' آرزو *ārzū*, 'wish,' بو *bū* or *bo*, 'smell,' ترازو *tarāzū*, 'a pair of scales,' دارو *dārū*, 'medicine,' جو *jō*, 'a stream,' خو *kho*, 'habit,' and a few more.

3). Nouns ending in ا - *a* : e.g. بندہ *banda*, 'a slave,' پردہ *parda*, 'a curtain,' غصہ *gussa*, 'anger,' کِصہ *kissā*, 'a tale.'

Rem. a. بنفشہ *banafsha*, 'a violet,' توبہ *tauba*, 'repentance,' دفعہ *dafa*, 'time,' 'a class,' صرفہ *ṣarfā*, 'expenditure,' فاختہ *fākhta*, 'a

¹ I use the term *Hindī* advisedly ; for Sanskrit, not having been a spoken language when Urdū sprung into existence, could only have furnished words to it through the Hindī.

² Words like *mansū*, *dayā*, *jachā*, *kirpā*, *sobhā*, etc., belong, not to Urdū, but to Hindī. Such words were commonly used by the older writers, but are rarely found in modern authors ; and even the older writers generally used them under peculiar circumstances, just as an English novelist, the scene of whose novel is laid in Cornwall, for example, might introduce something of the Cornish dialect into his work.

dove,' لاشه *lāsha*, 'a corpse,' and a few more, are exceptions; as are also all such Arabic nouns as have *ṣ* affixed to the masculine to form the feminine, مَلِكَة *malika*, 'queen,' from مَلِك *malik*, 'king,' والدَة *wālida*, 'mother,' from والد *wālid*, 'father.'

Rem. b. Final *ṣ* (masculine) is frequently changed into *l*, and *vice versa*: e.g. راجه *rāja*, for راجا *rājā*, 'a king;' آگره *āgra*, for آگرا *āgrā*, 'Agra.'

4). All nouns terminating in the syllable پَن *pan*: e.g. اُلُوپَن *ullū-pan*, 'owliness,' كَمِينَة پَن *kamīnapan*, 'meanness,' لَرَكِين *larak-pan*, 'childishness,' 'childhood.' Such words are all abstract substantives.

5). Arabic verbal nouns of the measure اِفْعَال *if'āl*, in which the two *alifs* (the first and fourth letters) are servile and constant: e.g. اِحْسَان *ḥsān*, 'a kindness,' اِئْتِبَال *ikbāl*, 'good fortune,' اِئْتِرَار *ikrār*, 'avowal,' اِنْكَار *inkār*, 'denial.'

Rem. The few exceptions are اِجْلَاس *ijlās*, 'a sitting,' اِدْبَار *idbār*, 'turning back,' اِصْلَاح *iṣlāḥ*, 'correction,' اِكْرَاه *ikrāh*, 'aversion,' اِلْهَاج *ilhāḥ*, 'solicitation,' اِمْدَاد *imdād*, 'assisting,' اِيرَاد *irād*, 'adducing,' and a few more words that end in ت *t* or ا *ā*, which are common feminine terminations in Arabic nouns.

6). Arabic verbal nouns of the measure تَفْعُل *tafa'ul*, in which the first letter (ت *t*) is servile and characteristic, and the third is marked with *tashdīd*: e.g. تَرَدُّد *taraddud*, 'vacillation,' تَكَبُّر *takabbur*, 'haughtiness.'

Rem. The exceptions are تَوَجُّه *tawajjuh*, 'regard,' تَوَاضُّو *tawazzū*, 'performing ablution before prayer,' تَوَاقُّع *tawakku'*, 'expectation,' تَمَنَّا *tamannā*, 'wish,' and all nouns ending in ي *ī*, as تَسْلِي *tasallī*, 'consolation,' تَرْقِي *tarakkī*, 'advancement.'

7). Arabic verbal nouns of the measure تَفَاعُل *tafā'ul*, in which the first and third letters are servile and constant:

e.g. تَدَارُكٌ *tadāruk*, 'calling to account,' تَفَاوُتٌ *tafāwut*, 'difference.'

Rem. تَوَاضَعٌ *tawāzu'*, 'civility,' is an exception; so also are all nouns ending in ي — *ī*, as تَحَاشِي *taḥāshī*, 'exception.'

8). All Arabic verbal nouns of the measure اِنْفِعَال *infi'āl*, in which the first, second, and fifth letters are servile and constant: e.g. اِنْسِرَامٌ *insirām*, 'ending,' 'ceasing,' اِنْفِصَالٌ *infisāl*, 'decision.'

9). Arabic verbal nouns of the measure اِفْتِعَال *ifti'āl*, in which the first, third, and fifth letters are servile and constant: e.g. اِخْتِصَارٌ *ikhṭisār*, 'abridgment,' اِلْتِمَاسٌ *iltimās*, 'petition.'

Rem. There are a few exceptions, as اِحْتِيَاجٌ *iḥtiyāj*, 'necessity,' اِحْتِيَاظٌ *iḥtiyāṭ*, 'careful guarding,' اِسْتِطْلَاحٌ *istitlāḥ*, 'a conventional term,' اِطْلَاعٌ *ittilā'*, 'announcement' (in which word, as also in that preceding it, the characteristic ت is assimilated to the preceding letter; see § 105, viii. Rem.), اِعْتِرَاضٌ *i'tirāṣ*, 'objection,' and a few words ending in ā or t, as اِبْتِدَاءٌ *ibtidā'*, 'beginning,' اِلْتِفَاتٌ *iltifāt*, 'attention.'

10). Arabic verbal nouns of the measure اِسْتِفْعَال *istif'āl*, in which the first three letters are servile and characteristic, and the sixth letter also is servile: e.g. اِسْتِغْفَارٌ *istigfār*, 'begging forgiveness,' اِسْتِعْمَالٌ *istē'māl*, 'use.'

Rem. The exceptions are اِسْتِعْدَادٌ *istē'dād*, 'capacity,' اِسْتِكْرَاهٌ *istikrāḥ*, 'aversion,' اِسْتِمْدَادٌ *istimdād*, 'begging help,' اِسْتِدْعَاٌ *istid'ā*, 'supplication,' اِسْتِرْعَاٌ *istirzā*, 'seeking to please.'

11). Arabic nouns of place and time of the measures مَفْعَل *maf'al* and مَفْعِل *maf'il*, in which the first letter is characteristic: e.g. مَصْدَرٌ *maṣdar*, 'the source' (of any thing), مَسْكَنٌ *maskan*, 'habitation,' مَقَامٌ *maḳām* and مَكَانٌ

makān, 'halting, or dwelling place,' مَشْرِيق *mashrik*, 'rising place' (of the sun), مَغْرِب *magrib*, 'setting place' (of the sun).

Rem. The principal exceptions are: مَجَال *majāl*, 'scope,' 'power,' مَحْشَر *mahshar*, 'a place of gathering,' مَحْزَر *mahzar*, 'royal presence,' مَحْفَل *mahfil*, 'a place of meeting,' مَجْلِس *majlis*, 'a place of sitting,' مَسْجِد *masjid*, 'a mosque,' مَنْزِل *manzil*, 'a halting place.'

12). Arabic *nomina instrumenti* of the measure مِثْل *mif'al*, in which the first letter is characteristic, *e.g.* مِثْبَر *mimbar*, 'a pulpit,' مِثْكَل *miskal*, 'a furbishing instrument.'

Rem. مَنَكْر *minkhar*, 'a nostril,' is perhaps the only exception.

28. Feminine by form are:

1). Arabic nouns ending in *ā*: *e.g.* بَقَا *bakā*, 'duration,' بَلَا *balā*, 'evil'; and all Hindī diminutives ending in *iyā*, as چِرِيَا *chiryā*, 'a bird,' پُھِرِيَا *phuriyā*, 'a pimple.'

Rem. Not a few Arabic nouns ending in *ā* are masculine, but those that are feminine are far more numerous.

2). Arabic nouns ending in *t*: *e.g.* اُلْفَت *ulfat*, 'familiarity,' عِزَّت *izzat*, 'honour;' as also Persian abstract nouns formed by dropping the final ن of the Infinitive: *e.g.* رَفْت *raft* (from رَفْتَن) 'going,' گُفْت *guft* (from گُفْتَن) 'speaking.'

Rem. The exceptions in the first case are very few: *e.g.* سُبُوت *subūt*, 'confirmation,' شَرْبَت *sharbat*, 'a drink,' وَقْت *wakt*, 'time,' خَلْعَت *khil'at*, 'a robe of honour,' يَاقُوت *yākūt*, 'a ruby,' and perhaps a few more. The rule does not apply to Hindī nouns, nor indeed to any other Persian nouns than the class mentioned.

3). All nouns terminating in the syllable هَت *hat* or

ت, *wat*, preceded by the long vowel *ā*: e.g. گہراہٹ *ghabrāhat*, 'perturbation,' بناوت *banāwat*, 'invention,' 'fabrication.'

Rem. The affixes *āhat* and *āwat* help to form a large class of abstract substantives. In the Dakhinī dialect these affixes take the form *āt*: e.g. گہرات *ghabrāt*.

4). Persian nouns (chiefly, if not all, abstract substantives) ending in the syllable *ish* ش; as دانش *dānish*, 'wisdom,' نالish *nālīsh*, 'complaint.'

Rem. بالish *bālīsh*, 'a pillow,' is perhaps the solitary exception. It may here be observed that *sh*, simply, is not a feminine termination in Urdū.

5) Nouns ending in *ī* ی: e.g. روتی *rotī*, 'bread,' سُرَاجِی *surāhī*, 'a gugglot,' ہڈی *haddī*, 'a bone.'

Rem. پانی *pānī*, 'water,' جی *jī*, 'life,' دہی *dahī*, 'curdled milk,' گھی *ghī*, 'clarified butter,' موتی *motī*, 'a pearl,' ہاتھی *hāthī*, 'an elephant,' and a few other words are exceptions.¹ Relative adjectives, as دھوئی *dhoōī*, 'a washerman,' خزانچی *khazānchī*, 'a treasurer,' are of course masculine by signification.

6). Abstract nouns formed by dropping the characteristic

¹ These words are masculine or neuter in Sanskrit, and, as a general rule, such words are masculine in Hindī. There are numerous exceptions though: e.g. *āg*, 'fire,' *tārā*, 'star,' *bhāph*, 'steam,' 'vapour' (= S. *vāshpa*, m.), *deh*, 'the body,' etc. Mr. Dowson, however (Urdū Grammar, p. 22), writes as though the rule were of *universal application*, and applied equally to words derived from the Arabic also. He says, "Sanskrit and Arabic scholars should bear in mind that words borrowed from those languages retain their original gender; masculines and neuters being masculine, and feminines remain (*sic*) feminine in Hindūstānī." We were not aware before of there being a neuter gender in Arabic; and as regards the derivatives from that language we can adduce examples by the score in which Arabic feminines have been changed to masculines in Urdū and *vice versā*; here are a few: *af'a*, 'viper,' *jahannam*, 'hell,' *khāmṛ*, 'wine,' *shams*, 'the sun,' *ṣaḥrā*, 'desert,' *aṣū*, 'staff,' *naṣ*, 'soul,' etc., not to speak of the long list of verbal nouns in which Urdū changes the feminine termination *ī* of the Arabic into the masculine *ā*; as *muḥāwara*, 'idiom.'

syllable نا *nā* of the Infinitive; *e.g.* مار *mār* (from مارنا *mārna*), 'beating,' لُوت *lūt* (from لُوتنا *lūtna*), 'plunder,' چاپ *chhāp*, 'printing,' 'impression,' سمجه *samajh*, 'understanding,' رگتر *ragar*, 'rubbing,' 'friction.'

Rem. The exceptions are کھیل *khel*, 'play,' نوچ *noch*, 'scratch,' ڈھکیل *dhakel*, 'shove,' نچوڑ *nichor*, 'extract,' ناچ *nāch*, 'dance,' رنگ *rang*, 'colour,' and a few more.

7). Arabic verbal nouns of the measure تَفْعِيل *taf'īl*, in which the first and fourth letters are servile and characteristic; *e.g.* تَرْغِيب *targīb*, 'exciting desire,' تَسْكِين *taskīn*, 'consolation,' تَعْمِيل *ta'mīl*, 'execution' (of an order).

Rem. تَعْوِيز *ta'wīz*, 'an amulet,' is perhaps the only exception.

8). Arabic *nomina instrumenti* of the measure مِفْعَال *mif'āl*, in which the first and fourth letters are servile and characteristic: *e.g.* مِقْرَاض *mīqrāṣ*, 'scissors,' مِئْكَار *mīnkār*, 'a bird's beak,' مِيزَان *mīzān*, 'a balance.'

Rem. a. The exceptions are مِئْشَار *mīnshār*, 'a hand-saw,' مِئْمار *mīsmār*, 'a peg or nail,' مِئْيار *mī'yār*, 'a touchstone,' 'an assay-balance.'

Rem. b. The following twenty-one letters of the alphabet are feminine, viz. ط, ژ, ز, ر, د, خ, چ, ج, ث, ت, پ, ب, ي, ة, و, ف, ظ.

Rem. c. The words بُلْبُل *bulbul*, جان *jān*, 'life,' فِکْر *fīkr*, 'thought,' are masculine or feminine, but the latter is generally considered correct in Northern India.

Rem. d. Generic nouns (اِسْمِ جِنْس *ismē jins*) are either masculine or feminine, and apply equally to both sexes; *e.g.* چیل *chīl*, 'a kite,' is feminine; هَرَن *haran* or *hīran*, is masculine. In some cases, however, the terminations *ā*, *ī* are added to such nouns to distinguish the sex: *e.g.* هَرْنَا *harnā*, 'a buck,' هَرْنِی *harnī*, 'a doe.' The word آدَمِی *ādmī*,

‘a human being,’ though properly a generic noun, and hence applicable to females as well as males, is rarely treated as a feminine by Mo-hammadans; where a Hindū might say اَچھی آدمی *achchhī ādmī*, ‘a good woman,’ a Musalmān would say, اَچھی عورت *achchhī aurat*.

29. The gender of compounds is generally determined by the latter part of the compound: *e.g.* شکارگاہ *shikār-gāh*, ‘a hunting-ground,’ شہرِ پناہ *shahr-panāh*, ‘a wall of defence round a town,’ are feminine, because the words گاہ *gāh* and پناہ *panāh* are feminine. There are exceptions however; as پائے گاہ *pā'e-gāh*, ‘dignity,’ قبلہ گاہ *kibla-gāh*, ‘an object of reverence,’ ‘father,’ نوشدارو *nosh-dārū*, ‘medicine,’ ‘a draught.’

FORMATION OF FEMININES FROM MASCULINES.

30. The most common termination used to form feminines from masculines is *-ī*. If the masculine end in a consonant, this termination is merely added to it; as

براہمن <i>brāhman</i> , ‘a Brāhman,	براہمنی <i>brāhmanī</i> , ‘a Brāhman woman.’
اھیر <i>ahīr</i> , ‘a cowherd,’	اھیری <i>ahīrī</i> , ‘a woman of the Ahīr caste.’
پٹھان <i>paṭhān</i> , ‘a Paṭhān,’	پٹھانی <i>paṭhānī</i> , ‘a woman of the Paṭhān race.’

If the masculine end in *ā* or *a* (ـا), these terminations are changed into *ī* for the feminine: *e.g.*

لڑکا <i>larḳā</i> , ‘a boy,’	لڑکی <i>larḳī</i> , ‘a girl.’
گھوڑا <i>ghoṛā</i> , ‘a horse,’	گھوڑی <i>ghoṛī</i> , ‘a mare.’
بندہ <i>banda</i> , ‘a male slave,’	بندی <i>bandī</i> , ‘a female slave.’
شاہزادہ <i>shāh-zāda</i> , ‘a prince,’	شاہزادی <i>shāh-zādī</i> , ‘a princess.’

31. Other common feminine affixes are ان *an* or *in*, ني *nī*, and اني *ānī*, which are all used in the case of rational beings (chiefly with nouns denoting *caste*, *trade*, *occupation*, etc.), and the last two in the case of irrational animals also. In the application of these the following rules are to be observed:

1). If the masculine end in a consonant, the affixes are merely added: *e.g.*

سُنار <i>sunār</i> , 'a goldsmith,'	{	سُنارَن <i>sunāran</i> ,	{	'a goldsmith's wife.'
		سُنارَنِي <i>sunārni</i> ,		
کُمہار <i>kumhār</i> , 'a potter,'	{	کُمہارَن <i>kumhāran</i> ,	{	'a potter's wife.'
		کُمہارَنِي <i>kumhārni</i> ,		
شیر <i>sher</i> , 'a tiger,'		شیرَنِي <i>shernī</i> , 'a tigress.'		
اُونٹ <i>ūṇṭ</i> , 'a male camel,'		اُونٹَنِي <i>ūṇṭni</i> , 'a female camel.'		
مہتر <i>mēhtar</i> , 'a sweeper or scavenger.'		مہترَنِي <i>mēhtarānī</i> (vulg. <i>mēhtrānī</i>), 'a <i>mēhtar's</i> wife.'		

2). If the masculine end in a long vowel preceded by any consonant except ي *y*, the vowel is generally dropped before the affixes are added, and a long *mā'ruf* vowel in a monosyllabic masculine noun shortened: *e.g.*

دُلہا <i>dulhā</i> , 'a bridegroom,'	دُلہن <i>dulhan</i> , 'a bride.'
بَرِیٹھا <i>barēṭhā</i> , 'a washerman,'	بَرِیٹھن <i>barēṭhan</i> , 'a washerwoman.'
کُنجرَا <i>kunjrā</i> , 'a greengrocer,'	کُنجرَن <i>kunjran</i> , 'a greengrocer's wife.'
دھوبِي <i>dhobī</i> , 'a washerman,'	دھوبِن <i>dhobin</i> or <i>dhoban</i> , 'a washerwoman.'
مَالِي <i>mālī</i> , 'a gardener,'	مَالِن <i>mālin</i> , 'a gardener's wife.'
ہَاتھِي <i>hāthī</i> , 'a male elephant,'	ہَاتھَنِي <i>hāthni</i> , 'a female elephant.'
کھترِي <i>khatrī</i> , 'a man of the Khatrī caste,'	کھترَنِي <i>khatrānī</i> , 'a Khatrī's wife or daughter.'

مَامُو <i>māmū</i> , 'a maternal uncle,'	مُمَانِي <i>mumānī</i> , 'a maternal uncle's wife.'
مُلَّا <i>mullā</i> , 'a doctor or school-master,'	مُلَّانِي <i>mullānī</i> , 'a mullā's wife.'

Rem. In the word *mumānī* (for *mamānī*) the influence of final *ū* in the masculine is sufficient to change the first vowel from *a* into *u*. In some instances final *ū* of the masculine is not dropped in the feminine : e.g. تَتْوَانِي *ṭaṭwānī* (for *ṭaṭū'ānī*), from تَتْوُ *ṭaṭṭū*, 'a stallion pony.'

3). If the termination of the masculine be *ā* preceded by *y* (یا *yā*), or *ī* preceded by *hanza* (ئِي 'ī', in which case a long vowel precedes), *ā* in the first is not dropped, and in both cases the affix *an* or *in* is changed to يَن *yan* or ئِن *in* : e.g.

بَنِيَا <i>baniyā</i> , 'a corn-seller,'	{ بنيَاين <i>baniyāyan</i> , بَنِيَاِن <i>baniyā'in</i> , }	'a <i>baniyā</i> 's wife.'
نَاؤِي <i>nā'ī</i> , 'a barber.'	{ نَاَيِن <i>nāyan</i> , نَاِئِن <i>nā'in</i> , }	'a barber's wife.'

Rem. The above affixes are all derived from the Sanskrit affix आनी *ānī*, (e.g. इन्द्राणी *indrāṇī*, 'the wife of Indra'). Of the two forms *an* and *in* of the first affix, the latter is more commonly used in towns, and by Musalmāns. This affix is also added to Arabic nouns to form the names of women ; e.g. اميرن *Amīran*, نصيبن *Naṣībān*, which are generally, though incorrectly, written اميرًا *Amīrān*, نصيبًا *Naṣībān*.

32. Other masculines and feminines are :

راجا <i>rājā</i> , 'a king,'	رانی <i>rānī</i> , 'queen.'
نایک <i>nāyak</i> , }	نایکا <i>nāyikā</i> , }
نایک <i>nā'ik</i> , }	نایکا <i>nā'ikā</i> , }
بھائی <i>bhā'ī</i> , 'brother,'	بھین <i>bahin</i> , 'sister.'
خالو <i>khālū</i> , 'a maternal uncle,'	خالہ <i>khāla</i> , 'aunt.'
بیگ <i>beg</i> , 'lord,' 'prince,'	بیگم <i>begam</i> , 'lady,' 'princess.'
خان <i>khān</i> , 'lord,' 'prince,'	خانم <i>khānam</i> , 'lady,' 'princess.'

The first of these is derived, through the Prākṛit, from the Sanskrit *rājñī*, by elision of *j*; the second is taken intact from the Sanskrit, and is perhaps the only example in Urdū of a feminine so formed; the third is derived through the Prākṛit from the Sanskrit *bhaginī*; the fourth is the regular Arabic feminine of *khāl*, which is also in use, and of which *khālū* is probably a corruption; the two last are borrowed (through the Persian) from the Turkish.

33. In many cases distinct words are used for the feminine: *e.g.*

باپ *bāp*, 'father,'

مان *mān*, 'mother.'

سانڈ *sāṇḍ*, 'bull,'

گائے *gā'e*, 'cow.'

And the distinction of sex is occasionally indicated, as in Persian, by means of the words نر *nar*, 'male,' ماده *māda*, 'female': *e.g.* شیر نر *sherē nar*, or نر شیر *nar sher*, 'a male tiger,' شیر ماده *sherē māda*, 'a female tiger.'

Rem. The formation of Arabic feminines will be treated separately in the section on Persian and Arabic constructions.

2. NUMBER (عدد *'adad*).

34. Nouns have *two* numbers, the singular (واحد *wāḥid*), and the plural (جمع *jam'*). The nominative singular has no case-sign, but is always identical with the crude form of the noun. The formation of the plural depends on the termination and gender of the singular. The following rules may be laid down respecting it.

1). Masculines ending in a consonant, or in one of the long vowels *ū* or *o*, *ī*, as also a few Hindī masculines ending in *ā*, that are *proper names*, or nouns denoting *relationship*, *titles*, *professions*, etc., and Persian and

Arabic words with the same termination, remain unchanged in the nominative plural: *e.g.*

گھر <i>ghar</i> , 'a house,'	plural گھر <i>ghar</i> .
بُچھو <i>bichchhū</i> , 'a scorpion,'	,, بُچھو <i>bichchhū</i> .
موتی <i>motī</i> , 'a pearl,'	,, موتی <i>motī</i> .
چچا <i>chachā</i> , 'a paternal uncle,'	,, چچا <i>chachā</i> .
لالا <i>lālā</i> , 'master,'	,, لالا <i>lālā</i> .
راجا <i>rājā</i> , 'king,'	,, راجا <i>rājā</i> .
دریا <i>daryā</i> , 'a river' (Pers.),	,, دریا <i>daryā</i> .
صحرا <i>ṣaḥrā</i> , 'a desert' (Arabic),	,, صحرا <i>ṣaḥrā</i> .

Rem. A few Arabic words ending in *ā* are exceptions: *e.g.* ماجرا *mājarā*, which is treated like Hindī masculines ending in *ā*, and has for its nom. plural ماجري *mājare*.

2). Masculines ending in \bar{a} (with the exceptions noticed above), or $s\bar{a}$ (which is interchangeable with \bar{a}), form the nominative plural by changing \bar{a} , or a , into e : *e.g.* لڑکے *larke*, 'boys,' from لڑکا *larkā*, 'a boy;' پردے *parde*, 'curtains,' from पर्ده *parda*, 'a curtain or screen.'

Rem. a. One Hindī noun of relationship, namely, دادا *dādā*, 'a paternal grandfather,' and a few Arabic nouns; as ماجرا *mājarā*, 'state,' 'incident,' also come under this rule. And as regards nouns ending in $s\bar{a}$, it may be observed that the custom now appears to be to retain the final *h* in writing, but to pronounce it like *e*: *e.g.* پردے *parde* (pronounced *parde*) 'curtains.'

Rem. b. The plural termination *e* corresponds to the plural termination *e* of the Prākṛit, *vide* Lassen's Instit. Ling. Prāk. p. 430.

3). Feminines ending in \bar{i} form the nominative plural by adding \bar{an} to the singular, the *fatha* of the

affix changing the letter of prolongation ی into the consonant *y*: *e.g.*

لَرْكِي *lar̥kī*, 'a girl,' plural لَرْكِيَّانِ *lar̥kiyān*, 'girls.'

Rem. The termination *ān* corresponds to the Prākṛit plural increment *o*, which is changed to *ā* and nasalized.

4). Feminines ending in any letter except ی *ī* form the nominative plural by adding the termination یں *en* to the singular; as

عَوْرَت *aurat*, 'a woman,' plural عَوْرَتِیں *auratēn*.

کِتَاب *kitāb*, 'a book,' ,, کِتَابِیں *kitābēn*.

If the singular end in one of the long vowels ا *ā*, — *ū* or *o*, *hamza* is employed to enounce the initial vowel of the termination: *e.g.*

دَوَا *dawā*, 'medicine,' plural دَوَائِی or دَوَائِیں *dawā'en*.

بُو *bū* or *bo*, 'smell,' ,, بُوِیں *bū'en*.

جَوْرُو *zorū*, 'wife,' ,, جَوْرُوِیں *zorū'en*.

نَاو *nā'o*, 'a boat,' ,, نَاوِیں *nā'o'en* or *nāwen*.

If, however, the singular end in ا *a*, or ئے *e*, these terminations are dropped before the plural affix is added: *e.g.*

فَاخْتَه *fākhta*, 'a dove,' plural فَاخْتِیں *fākhtēn*.

دَفْعَه *daf'a*, 'time,' 'class,' ,, دَفْعِیں *daf'en*.

گَاِے *gā'e*, 'a cow,' ,, گَاِِیں or گَائِیں *gā'en*.

رَاِے *rā'e*, 'opinion,' ,, رَاِِیں or رَائِیں *rā'en*.

Rem. a. The word *zorū* has for its plural جَوْرُوَانِ *zorū'ān* as well as the regular *zorū'en*; and a few other words ending in *ū* or *o* perhaps never occur in the plural: *e.g.* بَالُو *bālū*, 'sand,' دَارُو *dārū*, 'liquor,' کُو *kū*, 'a street,' سُو *sū*, 'direction,' هَجُو *hajo*, 'satire,' تَرَاوُو *tarāzū*, 'a pair of scales.' As exceptions to the rule we may note the class of

feminine diminutives which end in *یا* *iyā*; as *چِترِیا* *chiriyā*, 'a bird,' *بُڑھِیا* *burhiyā*, 'an old woman,' *پُتُڑِیا* *phuriyā*, 'a pimple;' these take the plural forms of the feminines from which they are derived: *e.g.* *چِترِیاں* *chiriyān* (= pl. of *chirī*), *بُڑھِیاں* *burhiyān* (= pl. of *burhī*).

Rem. b. The plural affix *en*, like the preceding affix *ān*, corresponds to the Prākṛit affix *o*, which is frequently changed to *e* in the Prākṛit dialects.

Rem. c. Dissyllables with a short vowel in the first syllable, and *fatha* (*a*) in the second, generally drop the *fatha* when, in the course of inflection or derivation, a syllable is added beginning with a vowel: *e.g.* *جگہیں* *jagheñ*, plural of *جگہ* *jagah*, 'a place.'

3. DECLENSION (تَصْرِیف *taṣrīf*, or گرداں *gardān*).

35. Strictly speaking there is no such thing as declension in Urdū; the cases are formed by means of certain adverbs (called *حُرُوفِ مَعْنَوِی* *hurūfē ma'nawī*, 'significant particles,' by the native grammarians), which are placed *after* the noun, and hence termed postpositions.

36. The cases (*حالات* *hālāt*), as generally given in Hindūstānī grammars, are eight in number; namely, the Nominative, Agent, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative, Locative, and Vocative. In reality, however, there are but *two* cases; viz. the crude form or *Nominative*, and the oblique form, or that to which the postpositions are added, and which Dr. Caldwell happily terms the *Formative*.

Rem. Most Urdū grammarians, ignoring all grammatical forms save those of the Arabic and Persian, recognise but *three* cases; viz. the Nominative and Agent (*حالتِ فاعِلِی* *hālātē fā'ilī*, or *فاعِل* *fā'il*), the Genitive (*حالتِ إضافَت* *hālātē izāfat*), and the Dative-Accusative (*حالتِ مفعُولِی* *hālātē maf'ūlī*, or *مفعُول* *maf'ūl bih*). The Ab-

lative and Locative they term *مَجْرُورٌ وَجَارٌ* *majrūr o jārr*, 'the attracted and the attracting' (*i.e.* the *object attracted* and the *preposition attracting it*); and the Vocative they call *نِدَا وَ مُنَادِي* *nidā o munādā*, 'the calling and the called.'

37. The postpositions which are used in lieu of case-endings are:

نِ <i>ne</i> , 'by,'	for the Agent, sing. and plural.
كَā, 'of,' etc.	„ Genitive, „
كَو <i>ko</i> , 'to,' 'for,'	„ Dative, „
سِ <i>se</i> , 'from,' 'with,' 'by,'	„ Ablative, „
پِ or پَر - مِیں <i>men, par or pa</i> , 'in,' 'on,'	„ Locative „

38. The singular nominative, as we have already observed, has no postposition added to it, but is always identical with the crude form of the noun.

The postposition of the agent case is derived from the affix *na*¹ of the Sanskrit instrumental case (singular), to which it was no doubt at first understood to correspond in use and signification; but according to the conception of those who now employ it, it is nothing more than a mere sign to distinguish the subject or agent of a transitive verb in the tenses formed with the passive participle (§§ 183, 188).

The genitive case is simply an adjective, formed by means of an adjective affix (see § 42).

The accusative case, strictly speaking, does not exist in Hindī and Urdū; its place is supplied by the nominative (which we shall call *the direct object*), or by the dative, in which case the postposition *ko* is not to be translated into English.

The vocative case takes no postposition. but a variety of interjections may be prefixed to it.

¹ For the derivation of the other postpositions see the section on Prepositions and Postpositions.

Rem. a. The force of the dative is occasionally expressed by the postpositions تہیں *ta'īn*, 'to,' and لیئے *lī'e* or واسطے *wāṣṭe*, 'for the sake of,' 'for,' together with the genitive they govern: *e.g.* باپ کے *bāp-ke ta'īn* (= باپ کو *bāp ko*), 'to the father;' بھائی کے لیئے *bhā'ī-ke lī'e*, 'for (my) brother.' Other obsolete forms of the ablative postpositions, which occur in the older writings, are سین *sen*, سوں *son*, سیٹی *sitī*; and in some grammars تک *tak* (تلاک *talak*) also is given as a postposition of the locative case, but as this particle never signifies 'in,' 'on,' but simply indicates motion towards and arrival at an object, the Urdū grammarians rightly regard it as a distinct postposition governing the inflected form of a noun. Instead of تک *tak* the postpositions توڑی *torī* and تہیں *ta'īn*, 'till,' 'up to,' are occasionally found in the older writings, but are now obsolete.

Rem. b. Two postpositions (generally those of the ablative and locative cases) are frequently used together: *e.g.* گھر میں سے *ghar-men-se*, 'from within the house,' بیل پر سے *bail-par-se*, 'from upon the ox.' In such cases the first is regarded by some of the native grammarians as a noun governing the preceding noun in the genitive.

39. The form assumed by a noun before it takes a postposition after it (whether that postposition be expressed or understood) is generally termed the *oblique form*. We prefer calling it, with Dr. Caldwell, the *Formative*. In constructing the Formative the following cases arise:

1). If the nominative singular end in any letter except the masculine terminations ا \bar{a} and ے \bar{a} (§ 33, 2), the Formative singular is identical with the nominative, and the Formative plural is obtained by *adding* the termination ں on to the singular: *e.g.* nom. sing. گھر *ghar*, 'a house,' Formative singular گھر *ghar*, Formative plural گھروں *gharon*. In the vocative plural the nasal *n* of the termination *on* is dropped, *e.g.* گھرو *gharo*, 'O houses.'

2). If the nom. sing. end in اـ \bar{a} or سـ a (§ 33, 2), the Formatives are obtained by *changing* these letters into يـ e for the singular, and وں on for the plural: *e.g.* nom. sing. گھوڑا *ghorā*, 'a horse,' singular Formative گھوڑی *ghore*, plural Formative گھوڑوں *ghorōn*; nom. sing. غصہ *gussa*, 'anger,' sing. Form. غصے *gusse*, plural Form. غصوں *gusṣon*. But nouns which are the names of living beings do not inflect: *e.g.* گھسیٹا *Ghasītā*, Formative گھسیٹا *Ghasītā*.

Rem. a. According to some native grammarians *no proper name* should be inflected; hence we find in the *Kawā'id-ḥ Urdū*, Part III., جمنا کے کہنے سے وہ دریا سمجھا جائیگا جو دہلی متہرا آگرہ کے نیچے ہے *jamnā-ke kahne-se wōh daryā samjhā-jā'egā jo dēhlī mathurā āgra ke nīche bahtā hai*, 'By mentioning the Jamnā that river will be understood which flows by (*lit.* under) Dehlī, Mathurā, and Āgra.'

Rem. b. The Formative is originally, as Dr. Trumpp suggests (*Sindhi Gram.* p. 123), the Prākṛit Genitive. This is not very clear in the singular, but the termination *on* of the Formative plural is evidently the termination *āṇa* or *ūṇa* of the Prākṛit genitive plural, and in the case of the pronouns the identity is unmistakable.

40. All nouns then may be arranged in two classes or declensions, corresponding to the two forms of the Formative.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

41. The first declension comprises *all* feminines, and masculines terminating in any letter except (original) سـ a ; those ending in اـ \bar{a} , however, are Persian or Arabic words, or Hindī nouns of relationship, etc. (§ 33, 1); *e.g.*

1). گھر *ghar*, 'a house' (masc.).

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	گھر <i>ghar</i> , 'a house.'	گھروں <i>ghar</i> , 'houses.'	
Formative	گھر <i>ghar</i> .	گھروں <i>gharōn</i> .	
Agent.	گھر نے <i>ghar-ne</i> , 'by a house.'	گھروں نے <i>gharōn-ne</i> , 'by houses.'	
Gen.	گھر کا <i>ghar-kā</i> , 'of a house.'	گھروں کا <i>gharōn-kā</i> , 'of houses.'	
Dat.	گھر کو <i>ghar-ko</i> , 'to a house.'	گھروں کو <i>gharōn-ko</i> , 'to houses.'	
Acc.	{ گھر <i>ghar</i> , گھر کو <i>ghar-ko</i> , } 'a house.'	{ گھر <i>ghar</i> , گھروں کو <i>gharōn-ko</i> , } 'houses.'	
Abl.	گھر سے <i>ghar-se</i> , 'from, with, by, a house.'	گھروں سے <i>gharōn-se</i> , 'from houses.'	
Loc.	گھر میں - پر <i>ghar-men</i> , - <i>par</i> , 'in, on, a house.'	گھروں میں <i>gharōn-men</i> , 'in houses.'	
Voc.	آی گھر <i>ai ghar</i> , 'O house.'	آی گھرو <i>ai gharo</i> , 'O houses.'	

2). چچا *chachā*, 'a paternal uncle.'

Nom.	چچا <i>chachā</i> , 'an uncle.'	چچا <i>chachā</i> , 'uncles.'	
Form.	چچا <i>chachā</i> .	چچاؤں <i>chachā'ōn</i> .	
Agent.	چچا نے <i>chachā-ne</i> , 'by an uncle.'	چچاؤں نے <i>chachā'ōn-ne</i> , 'by uncles.'	
Gen.	چچا کا <i>chachā-kā</i> , 'of an uncle.' etc. etc. etc.	چچاؤں کا <i>chachā'ōn kā</i> , 'of uncles.' etc. etc. etc.	

Rem. Like *chachā* are declined such Hindī nouns as راجا *rājā*, 'a king,' لالا *lālā*, 'a master,' as also Persian and Arabic nouns (masc.); e.g. دریا *daryā*, 'a river,' صحرا *ṣaḥrā*, 'a desert.'

3). موتی *motī*, 'a pearl' (masc.).

Nom.	موتی <i>motī</i> , 'a pearl.'	موتی <i>motī</i> , 'pearls.'	
Form.	موتی <i>motī</i> .	موتیوں <i>motiyōn</i> or <i>motī'ōn</i> .	
Gen.	موتی کا <i>motī-kā</i> , 'of pearl.' etc. etc.	موتیوں کا <i>motiyōn-kā</i> , 'of pearls.' etc. etc.	

4). بِیچھو *bichchhū*, 'a scorpion' (masc.).

SINGULAR.

Nom. بِیچھو *bichchhū*, 'a scorpion.'Form. بِیچھو *bichchhū*.Agent بِیچھو نے *bichchhū-ne*, 'by a scorpion.'

PLURAL.

Nom. بِیچھو *bichchhū*, 'scorpions.'Form. بِیچھو *bichchhū'ōn*.Agent بِیچھو نے *bichchhū'ōn-ne*, 'by scorpions.'

Rem. Final *ū* is occasionally shortened before the termination *ōn* of the Formative plural is added; as آنسُوں *ānsu'ōn* (for آنسُوں *ānsū'ōn*); and if final و *ū* or *o* be preceded by ا *ā*, it is frequently dropped in the Formative plural: *e.g.* گھاؤں *ghā'ōn*, from گھاؤ *ghā'o*, 'a wound or sore.' On the same principle final *w* in such words as پاؤں *pānw*, 'a foot,' گاؤں *gānw*, 'a village,' etc., is frequently dropped in the Formative plural, and occasionally the preceding nasal also: *e.g.* پاؤں *pān'ōn* and پاؤں *pā'ōn*, for پاؤں *pānwōn*. In the singular of such words moreover final *w* is often transposed and changed to *o*, and hence the singular form پاؤں *pā'ōn*, 'a foot,' گاؤں *ga'ōn*, 'a village,' the Formative plural of which has the same form by contraction.

5). رات *rāt*, 'night' (fem.).Nom. رات *rāt*, 'night.'Form. رات *rāt*.Gen. رات کا *rāt-kā*, 'of night.'
etc. etc. etc.Nom. راتیں *rāten*, 'nights.'Form. راتوں *rāton*.Gen. راتوں کا *rāton-kā*, 'of nights.'
etc. etc. etc.6). دوا *dawā*, 'medicine' (fem.).Nom. دوا *dawā*, 'medicine.'Form. دوا *dawā*.Agent دوا نے *dawā-ne*, 'by the medicine.'
etc. etc. etc.Nom. دوائیں *dawā'en*, 'medicines.'Form. دواؤں *dawā'ōn*.Agent دواؤں نے *dawā'ōn-ne*, 'by medicines.'
etc. etc. etc.

7). بُو *bo* or *bū*, 'smell' (fem.).

SINGULAR.

Nom. بو *bo* or *bū*, 'smell.'Form. بو *bo* or *bū*.

PLURAL.

بوئیں *bo'en* or *bū'en*, 'smells.'بوؤں *bū'on*.

Rem. The few feminines ending in *e* and *a* (سے) not only drop those letters in the nominative plural, but also in the Formative plural: *e.g.* گاؤں *gā'on*, from گائے *gā'e*, 'a cow,' فاخٹوں *fākhton*, from فاختہ *fākhta*, 'a dove.'

8). لڑکی *larḳī*, 'a girl.'Nom. لڑکی *larḳī*, 'a girl.'Form. لڑکی *larḳī*.لڑکیاں *larḳiyān*, 'girls.'لڑکیوں *larḳiyon* or *larḳi'on*.

Rem. a. Feminine diminutives, such as چڑیا *chiriyā*, 'a bird,' پھڑیا *phuriyā*, 'a small boil,' drop the final *ā* in the Formative plural (as in the plur. nom), and so have the same plural forms as feminines ending in *ī*: *e.g.* nom. pl. چڑیاں *chiriyān*, 'birds,' Form. pl. چڑیوں *chiriyon*.

Rem. b. A noun terminating in nasal *n* is declined in the singular just as if the nasal were not present, but the nasal is dropped in the plural.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

42. The second declension comprises all masculine (Hindī) nouns ending in ا *ā* (except such as denote *relationship*, *titles*, *professions*, etc.) and all masculines ending, in سے *a*: *e.g.*

1). لڑکا *larḳā*, 'a boy.'Nom. لڑکا *larḳā*, 'a boy.'لڑکے *larḳe*, 'boys.'Form. لڑکے *larḳe*.لڑکوں *larḳon*.Agent لڑکے نے *larḳe-ne*, 'by a boy.'لڑکوں نے *larḳon-ne*, 'by boys.'

Voc. { لڑکے *larḳe*, 'boy!'
 { آئی لڑکے *ai larḳe*, 'O boy!'

{ لڑکو *larḳo*, 'boys!'
 { آئی لڑکو *ai larḳo*, 'O boys!'

2). پَرْدَہ *pardā*. 'a curtain.'

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. پَرْدَہ *pardā*, 'a curtain.'پَرْدِی *parde*, 'curtains.'Form. پَرْدِی *parde*پَرْدَوَن *pardōn*.

Rem. a. According to the present custom of writing such words as end in ـه *a*, the Formative singular is identical, in writing, with the nominative: *e.g.* پَرْدَہ, pronounced *parde*.

Rem. b. A few masc. Arabic nouns also, as مَاجِرَا *mājarā*, 'incident,' 'circumstance,' نَشَا *nashā*, 'intoxication,' belong to this declension.

Rem. c. Nasal *n* at the end of words is retained in the singular, as also in the nominative plural, but dropped in the Formative plural: *e.g.* nom. sing. بَنِيَان *baniyān*, 'a merchant,' Form. sing. بَنِيَنِ *baniyen*, nom. pl. بَنِيَن *baniyen*, Form. pl. بَنِيَوَن *baniyōn*.

Rem. d. Words ending in ـه *ya*, as پَايَہ *pāya*, 'the foot or leg' (of a thing), کِرَايَہ *kirāya*, 'hire,' 'rent,' may follow the general rule, or change ـی *y* into *hamza* in the Form. sing.: *e.g.* پَايَہ *pāye* or پَائَہ *pā'e*, کِرَايَہ *kirāye* or کِرَائَہ *kirā'e*. In the plural, however, the rule is generally observed. Similarly from رُوپیَہ *rūpayā* are formed رُوپَئَہ *rūpa'e* or رُوپِیَہ *rūpai*; and from رُوپیَہ *rupayā* the forms رُوپَئَہ *rupa'e* or رُوپِیَہ *rupai*. It is a mistake to derive these forms from رُوپیَہ *rūpiyā*, and call them irregular.

THE GENITIVE (مُضَافِ إِلَیْهِ).

43. The Genitive, as has been remarked before, is formed by means of an *adjective affix* (کَا *kū* = Prākṛit को *ko* = Sanskrit क *ka*), and is a real adjective, changing its termination so as to agree with its governing noun (the *مُضَاف*), just as the Hindī adjective ending in ـا *ā* does.

Rem. The Persian genitive construction is also used in Urdū, and it is a noteworthy fact that the relation of the governed to the governing

noun is expressed in the same manner as that of a noun to the adjective qualifying it (see *Persian Constructions*, § 76).

III. THE ADJECTIVE (اسم صفت).

44. The adjective generally precedes the noun it qualifies, and, unless it end in $\text{ا} \leftarrow \bar{a}$, and be derived from the Hindī, is indeclinable: *e.g.* سفید گھوڑا *safed ghorā*, 'a white horse;' سفید گھوڑی *safed ghori*, 'a white mare;' سفید گھوڑے *safed ghore*, 'white horses.'

45. Adjectives (not Persian or Arabic) which end in $\text{ا} \leftarrow \bar{a}$ (the masc. termination), are declined in the singular like nouns of the Second Declension, and form the nom. pl. in the same way; but the Formative pl. is identical with that of the singular. The feminine is formed by changing the termination $\text{ا} \leftarrow \bar{a}$, of the masc. into $\text{ي} \leftarrow \bar{i}$, and is not altered for case or number: *e.g.*

SINGULAR.	
Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. اچھا <i>achhā</i> , 'good.'	اچھی <i>achhī</i> .
Form. اچھے <i>achhe</i> .	اچھی <i>achhī</i> .
PLURAL.	
Nom. اچھے <i>achhe</i> .	اچھی <i>achhī</i> .
Form. اچھے <i>achhe</i> .	اچھی <i>achhī</i> .

The genitive is similarly declined: *e.g.*

SINGULAR.	
Nom. گھر کا <i>ghar-kā</i> , 'of the house,' 'household.'	گھر کی <i>ghar-kī</i> .
Form. گھر کے <i>ghar-ke</i> .	گھر کی <i>ghar-kī</i> .
PLURAL.	
Nom. گھر کے <i>ghar-ke</i> .	گھر کی <i>ghar-kī</i> .
Form. گھر کے <i>ghar-ke</i> .	گھر کی <i>ghar-kī</i> .

Examples: *اچھا آدمی achchhā ādmī*, 'a good man,' dat. sing. *اچھے آدمی کو achchhe ādmī ko*, 'to a good man;' nom. pl. *اچھے آدمی achchhe ādmī*, 'good men,' abl. pl. *اچھے آدمیوں سے achchhe ādmīyon se*, 'from good men:' *اچھی عورت achchhī 'aurat*, 'a good woman,' dat. sing. *اچھی عورت کو achchhī 'aurat ko*, 'to a good woman,' nom. pl. *اچھی عورتیں achchhī 'auratein*, 'good women;' *موہن کا گھوڑا mohan-kā ghorā*, 'Mohan's horse,' loc. sing. *موہن کے گھوڑے پر mohan-ke ghore par*, 'on Mohan's horse,' nom. pl. *موہن کے گھوڑے mo-han-ke ghore*, 'Mohan's horses,' dat. pl. *موہن کے گھوڑوں کو mohan-ke ghoron ko*, 'to Mohan's horses.'

Rem. a. One Persian adjective ending in *اَ* *ā*, viz. *جدا judā*, 'separate,' and one Arabic, *فلانہ fulānā* (for *فلان*), 'certain,' are similarly declined.

Rem. b. If a masculine noun is qualified by several adjectives capable of inflection, they are all declined in the same way: *e.g.* *بڑے کالے بارے گھوڑے bare kālē ghore*, 'large black horses.' And if the adjective be a compound word, the latter part of which is itself an adjective or participle determining a preceding substantive, this last is declined so as to agree with the noun qualified by the compound adjective: *e.g.* *ٹوپے پٹے لڑکے topī-phaṭe larke*, 'the boys with torn caps' (*lit.* 'the cap-torn boys'), *دوپٹا پٹے لڑکی dupaṭṭā-phaṭī larķī*, 'the girl with a torn veil or mantle.'

Rem. c. If final *ā* of an adjective be nasalized, the nasal does not affect its declension, but is retained in all the cases: *e.g.* *بایاں ہاتھ bāyān hāth*, 'the left hand,' *کو ہاتھ (or) بائیں bāyēn (or) bā'ēn* *hāth-ko*, 'to the left hand,' *بائیں طرف bā'īn ṭaraf*, 'the left side.'

Rem. d. The adjective occasionally follows the noun it qualifies. This is especially the case if the attribute is to be emphasized or brought prominently to notice. In the older writings, moreover, femi-

nine adjectives following the nouns they qualify sometimes take the plural termination of substantives; as راتیں بیاریاں *rāten bhāriyān*, 'heavy or wearisome nights;' کوٹھریاں بہت اونچیاں *koṭhriyān bahut ūnchiyān*, 'very lofty rooms;' but this construction is now obsolete.

46. A few Persian adjectives ending in *a* are declined like Hindī adjectives ending in *ā*; but as a rule such adjectives are indeclinable. The following are the most important of those that inflect: بیچارہ *be-chāra*, 'helpless,' 'poor,' تازه *tāza*, 'fresh,' حرامزادہ *harām-zāda*, 'base-born,' 'rascally,' دیوانہ *dīwāna*, 'mad,' 'insane,' رائدہ *rānda*, 'rejected,' شرمندہ *sharminḍa*, 'ashamed,' 'bashful,' کمینہ *kamīna*, 'mean,' گندہ *ganda*, 'fetid,' 'rotten,' ماندہ *mānda*, 'tired,' 'indisposed,' نادیدہ *nā-dīda*, 'unseen,' ناکارہ *nā-kāra*, 'useless.'

Rem. a. To these some grammarians add عُمْدہ *umda*, 'exalted,' سالہ یکت *yak-sāla*, 'annual,' دوسالہ *dū-sāla*, 'biennial,' etc., but these are not inflected by writers of the present day: *e.g.* عُمْدہ بات *umda bāt*, 'an excellent matter,' not عُمْدِی بات.

Rem. b. Adjectives, when used as concrete nouns, are declined like nouns: *e.g.* دانا *dānā*, 'a wise man,' داناؤں سے *dānā'ōn-se*, 'from the wise.'

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

47. Adjectives undergo no change of form to express the comparative and superlative degrees. When two objects are compared, that with which the comparison is made generally takes the form of the ablative, the adjective itself remaining in the positive and following it: *e.g.* موہن زید سے بڑا ہے *mohan zaid-se barā hai*, 'Mohan is bigger than Zaid.' The superlative is, strictly speaking, nothing more than a comparative involving the pronominal adjective

سب *sab*, 'all,' (prefixed to the ablative, either expressed or understood) as its complement: *e.g.* موهن سب لڑکوں سے *mohan sab larḥon-se achchhā hai*, 'Mohan is better than (the best of) all the boys;' وہ سب سے بڑا ہے *wōh sab-se barā hai*, 'he is bigger than (the biggest of) all.'

Rem. a. The particle سے signifies the *difference between two objects* that are compared with each other, and hence its use in forming the comparative degree. It is a remarkable fact that this method of forming the comparative and superlative is borrowed from the Semitic languages. The only trace of the Sanskrit method that exists in Urdū is found in the forms borrowed from the Persian, as بہ *bēh*, 'good,' بہتر *bēh-tar*, 'better,' بہترین *bēhtarīn*, 'best' (see Persian Constructions, § 78).

Rem. b. Instead of the ablative, however, we occasionally meet with the genitive or the locative; as موهن سب کا بڑا ہے *mohan sab-kā barā hai*, 'Mohan is biggest of all;' سب طالب علموں میں زید اچھا ہے *sab ṭālib-‘ilmon meñ zaid achchhā hai*, 'Zaid is the best among all the students.' The comparative is also frequently expressed by using the word بنسبت *ba-nisbat*, 'in relation to,' 'in comparison with,' with the genitive of the noun with which the comparison is made; as زید کا ہے *zaid-kā ḥadd banisbat mohan-ke buland hai*, 'Zaid's stature is tall in comparison with Mohan's.'

48. An intensive signification is given to an adjective, in either the positive or comparative degree: 1) by repeating it; as اچھا اچھا *achchhā achchhā*, 'very good,' بہتر بہتر *bēhtar bēhtar*, 'much better:' 2) by prefixing to it an adverb, or a noun or adjective used adverbially, as بڑا بڑا *barā bhārī*, 'very heavy;' بہت اچھا *bahut achchhā*, 'very good' (which is still more intensified by the addition of the emphatic particle *hī* to the adverb, as

نہایت بہت ہی اچھا *bahut-hī achchhā*, 'exceedingly good'); اور کالا *nihāyat khūb-sūrat*, 'extremely handsome'; اور بھی کالا *aur bhī kālā*, 'even, or still, blacker'; زیادہ حسین *ziyāda ḥasīn*, 'more beautiful,' or 'exceedingly beautiful'; بدرجہ بہتر *ba-darja bēhtar*, or بدرجہا بہتر *ba-darjahā bēhtar*, 'by degrees, or many degrees, better,' 'far better'; کہیں بہتر *kahīn bēhtar*, 'anywhere better,' 'ever so much, or incomparably, better:' 3) by adding to the adjective the termination سا *sā*; کالا سا *kālā-sā*, 'very black,' or 'blackish,' بہت سا *bahut-sā*, 'a large quantity,' 'very much'; تھوڑا سا *thorā-sā*, 'just a little,' 'a very little.'

49. With the intensive affix سا *sā* must not be confounded the adjective of similitude سا *sā*, سار *sār*, or سائی *sān* 'like.' This may be added to substantives or adjectives to form adjectives corresponding (when subjoined to substantives) to those which in English have the termination *ish*; as لڑکا سا *larḳā-sā*, 'boyish,' کالا سا *kālā-sā*, 'black-like,' ایکساں *ek-sān*, or یکساں *yak-sān*, 'one-like,' 'similar.'

50. Whether the adjunct سا be employed as an intensive, or as an adjective of similitude, it is declinable like Hindī adjectives ending in اَ *ā*, and the noun to which it is added inflects just as it would do without it: e.g. بہت سے *bahut-se ghore*, 'a great many horses,' کالی سی گھوڑیاں *kālī-sī ghorīyān*, 'very black (or blackish) mares.'

Rem. سا *sā* or سائی *sān*, 'like,' 'resembling,' is most probably the

¹ The use of *sā* after the genitive appears to have perplexed the grammarians greatly. The matter belongs properly to Syntax; but we may observe here, that the construction in such cases is precisely similar to that of the English; the *muzāf*, or noun which governs the genitive, is invariably understood, and it is to this that the adjunct of similitude is attached: e.g. in the phrase *sher-kī-sī ṣūrat*, the word *ṣūrat* (to which the adjunct *sā* pertains) is understood after *kī*, just as, in the English equivalent, 'a form like a tiger's,' the word 'form' is understood after 'tiger's' (Cf. also § 362).

Prākṛit form of the Sanskrit समान *like*; whereas the intensive particle ल is derived from the Sanskrit शस् *śas*, 'fold,' etc.

IV. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES (اسم عدد).

51. The Urdū numerals are the same as those of the Hindī, and are derived from the Sanskrit through the medium of the Prākṛit.¹ Like other adjectives they

¹ In deriving its words from the Prākṛit, the Hindī generally drops final short vowels, elides one or both the letters of conjuncts, and lengthens medial short vowels, especially where a conjunct, or one of the consonants, is elided. Thus we have:—*One*, Sanskrit *eka*, Prākṛit, *ēkka*, Hindī *ek*:—*Two*, S. *dvi*, P. *do*, H. *do*:—*Three*, S. *tri*, P. *tiṇṇi*, H. *tīn*:—*Four*, S. *chatur*, P. *chattāri*, H. *chār*, by elision of the conjunct:—*Five*, S. *pañchan*, P. *pañcha*, H. *pāñch*:—*Six*, S. *shash*, P. *chha*, H. *chha* (the cerebral sibilant of the Sanskrit being changed in Prākṛit into *chh*: occasionally this sibilant is changed into *h*, very commonly into *s*, as is also the palatal sibilant *ś* of the Sanskrit, since Prākṛit has no palatal or cerebral sibilant):—*Seven*, S. *saptan*, P. *satta*, H. *sūt*:—*Eight*, S. *aṣṭan*, P. *aṭtha*, H. *āṭh*:—*Nine*, S. *navan*, P. *naü*, H. *nau*:—*Ten*, S. *daśan*, P. *dasa*, H. *das*.

From *ten* upwards the numbers are formed by prefixing the units to the tens, which, however, previously undergo a change of form: e.g. the Prākṛit *dasa* is changed, first to *daha*, and then to *raha*; as *Eleven*, S. *ekādaśan*, P. *eāraha*, H. *igūrah* (not eliding the *k* of the Sanskrit, but changing it into the soft *g*, and changing the diphthong *e* into the short vowel *i*), whence, by transposition of vowel, *giārah*, whence *gyārah*:—*Twelve*, S. *dvādaśan*, P. *vāraha*, H. *bārah*:—*Thirteen*, S. *trayodaśan*, P. *terah*, H. *terah*:—*Fourteen*, S. *chaturdaśan*, P. *chaūdah*, H. *chaudah*:—*Fifteen*, S. *pañchadaśan*, P. *pañnaraha*, H. *pandrah*, for *pandarah*, by change of conjunct to *nd* before the liquid *r*:—*Sixteen*, S. *shoḍaśan*, P. *sorah* or *solah* (?), H. *sorah* or *solah*:—*Seventeen*, S. *saptadaśan*, P. *sattaraha*, H. *satrah* for *sattarah*:—*Eighteen*, S. *aṣṭadaśan*, P. *aṭtharaha*, H. *aṭhārah*:—*Twenty*, S. *viṃśati*, P. *vīsaī*, H. *bīs*.

The numbers 19, 29, 39, etc. are formed by prefixing to the following decades the word *un* (Sanskrit *ūna*, 'diminished'), and making certain changes in the initial letters of some of the decades: e.g. the *v* of the Prākṛit *vīsaī*, is elided; as, *Nineteen* (i.e. 20 diminished by 1) is *un-īs*: so also in the other compounds, *ekīs*, 'twenty-one,' and so on.

Thirty, S. *triṃśat*, P. *tīsaü*, H. *tīs*, whence *Twenty-nine*, *untīs*.

Forty, S. *chatvariṃśat*, P. *chattārisa* (?), H. *chālīs*, by elision of the conjunct *tt*, and change of *r* to *l*. In compounds, *chālīs* is changed into *tālīs*, before which the vowels *a*, *i*, *ī* of the units are changed to *e*, *eñ*, or *aiñ*. In *forty-two* and *forty-six*, *ch* is elided.

Fifty, S. *pañchāśat*, P. *pañṇāsa*, H. *pachās* (which is closer to the Sanskrit than to the Prākṛit); whence, *Forty-nine*, *unchās*, the first syllable of *pachās* being elided. In the numbers 50 to 58, the last syllable is dropped and original *n* restored; as *pachpan*. In 51, 52, 54, 57, 58, the *p* of *pan* is, for the sake of euphony, softened into *b*, and thence into *v* or *w*.

From the Sanskrit *śaṣṭī* is derived the Hindī *sāṭh*, whence *un-saṭh*, 'fifty-nine,' *iksaṭh*, 'sixty-one,' etc.

generally precede the noun, which may be in the singular or plural.

THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

FIGURES.			NAMES.	FIGURES.			NAMES.
	ARABIC.	DEVANAGARI.			ARABIC.	DEVANAGARI.	
1	۱	१	ایک <i>ek</i> .	12	۱۲	۹۲	بارہ <i>bārāh</i> .
2	۲	२	دو <i>do</i> .	13	۱۳	۹۳	تیرہ <i>terāh</i> .
3	۳	३	تین <i>tīn</i> .	14	۱۴	۹۴	چودہ <i>chaudah</i> .
4	۴	४	چار <i>chār</i> .	15	۱۵	۹۵	پندرہ <i>pandrah</i> .
5	۵	۵	پانچ <i>pāñch</i> .	16	۱۶	۹۶	سولہ <i>solah</i> .
6	۶	۶	چھ <i>chha</i> .	17	۱۷	۹۷	سترہ <i>satrah</i> .
7	۷	۷	سات <i>sāt</i> .	18	۱۸	۹۸	{ اٹھارہ <i>aṭhārah</i> .
8	۸	۸	آٹھ <i>āṭh</i> .				{ اٹھارā <i>aṭhārā</i> .
9	۹	۹	نو <i>nau</i> .	19	۱۹	۹۹	انیس <i>unīs</i> and <i>unnīs</i> .
10	۱۰	۱۰	دس <i>das</i> .	20	۲۰	۲۰	بیس <i>bīs</i> .
11	۱۱	۱۱	{ اگارہ <i>igārah</i> .	21	۲۱	۲۱	{ ایکیس <i>ikīs</i> .
			{ گیارہ <i>gyārah</i> .				{ ایکس <i>ikkīs</i> .

In *sattar*, 'seventy,' the *p* of the Sanskrit *saptati* is assimilated to *t*, and final *t* changed into *r*; and in the compounds, initial *s* is, for the sake of euphony, changed into *h*; as *unhattar*, 'sixty-nine'; *ikhattar*, 'seventy-one.'

Assī, 'eighty,' is from the Sanskrit *aṣṭī*, the final *t* being elided, and the sibilant doubled. In the compounds, however, the doubling of the sibilant does not take place, while the conjunctive vowel *ā* is added to the units; as *unāsī*, 'seventy-nine'; *ikāsī*, 'eighty-one'; *navāsī*, 'eighty-nine,' instead of *unānave*, as might have been expected.

Naave, or *navave*, 'ninety,' is derived from the Sanskrit *navati*. In the compounds formed therewith, the conjunctive vowel *ā* is added to the units: e.g. *ikānave*, 'ninety-one.'

The word *sau*, or *sai*, 'one hundred,' is derived from the Sanskrit *śata*, Prākṛit *saḍ*.

FIGURES.			NAMES.	FIGURES.			NAMES.
	ARABIC.	DEVA-NAGARI.			ARABIC.	DEVA-NAGARI.	
22	۲۲	२२	بائیس <i>bā'īs</i> .	40	۴۰	४०	چالیس <i>chālīs</i> .
23	۲۳	२३	تئیش <i>te'īs</i> .	41	۴۱	۴۱	{ ایکتالیس <i>ēktālīs</i> .
24	۲۴	२۴	چوہیس <i>chaubīs</i> .				{ اکتالیس <i>iktālīs</i> .
25	۲۵	२۵	پچیس <i>pachīs</i> .	42	۴۲	۴۲	بیاہیس <i>be'ālīs</i> .
26	۲۶	२۶	چھبیس <i>chhabbīs</i> .	43	۴۳	۴۳	تینتالیس <i>tentālīs</i> .
27	۲۷	۲۷	ستائیس <i>satā'īs</i> .	44	۴۴	۴۴	چوالیس <i>chau'ālīs</i> .
28	۲۸	۲۸	اتھائیس <i>aṭhā'īs</i> .	45	۴۵	۴۵	پینتالیس <i>paintālīs</i> .
29	۲۹	۲۹	اُنٹیس <i>untīs</i> .	46	۴۶	۴۶	چھالیس <i>chhe'ālīs</i> .
30	۳۰	३०	تیس <i>tīs</i> .	47	۴۷	۴۷	سینتالیس <i>saintālīs</i> .
31	۳۱	۳۱	{ ایکتیس <i>ēktīs</i> .	48	۴۸	۴۸	{ ارتالیس <i>artālīs</i> .
			{ اکتیس <i>iktīs</i> .				{ اٹھتالیس <i>aṭhtālīs</i> .
32	۳۲	۳۲	بٹیس <i>battīs</i> .	49	۴۹	۴۹	اُنچاس <i>unchās</i> .
33	۳۳	۳۳	تینتیس <i>tentīs</i> .	50	۵۰	۵۰	پچاس <i>pachās</i> .
34	۳۴	۳۴	چوئتیس <i>chauntīs</i> .	51	۵۱	۵۱	{ ایکاون <i>ēkāwan</i> .
35	۳۵	۳۵	پینتیس <i>paintīs</i> .				{ اکاون <i>ikāwan</i> .
36	۳۶	۳۶	چھتیس <i>chhattīs</i> .	52	۵۲	۵۲	باون <i>bāwan</i> .
37	۳۷	۳۷	سینتیس <i>saintīs</i> .	53	۵۳	۵۳	ترپن <i>trēpan or tirpan</i> .
38	۳۸	۳۸	{ اٹھتیس <i>aṭhtīs</i> .	54	۵۴	۵۴	چَوَن <i>chauwan</i> .
			{ ارتیس <i>artīs</i> .	55	۵۵	۵۵	پچپن <i>pachpan</i> .
39	۳۹	۳۹	{ اُنتالیس <i>untālīs</i> .	56	۵۶	۵۶	چھپن <i>chhappan</i> .
			{ اُنچالیس <i>unchālīs</i> .	57	۵۷	۵۷	ستاون <i>sattāwan</i> .

FIGURES.			NAMES.	FIGURES.			NAMES.
	ARABIC.	DEVA-NAGARI.			ARABIC.	DEVA-NAGARI.	
94	٩٤	९४	چورانوي <i>chaurānawe</i>	98	٩٨	٩٨	اٺهانوي <i>aṭhānawe.</i>
95	٩٥	९५	{ پانچانوي <i>pañchānawe</i> پچانوي <i>pachānawe</i>	99	٩٩	٩٩	{ ننانوي <i>ninānawe.</i> نوانوي <i>navānawe.</i>
96	٩٦	९٦	چهيانوي <i>chhe'ānawe.</i>				
97	٩٧	٩٧	ستانوي <i>satānawe.</i>	100	١٠٠	٩٠٠	{ سو <i>sau.</i> سي <i>sai.</i>

Rem. In the compounds, *nawe* is generally contracted to *nwe*, as *ikānwe*, *bānwe*, or the vowel of *n* is pronounced very rapidly. In *Hindī* it also takes the form *nawwe*.

52. The numbers above one hundred are formed as in English,¹ but the conjunction 'and' is not expressed: *e.g.* ایک سو ایک *ek sau ek*, 'one hundred (and) one;' ایک سو دو *ek sau do*, 'one hundred (and) two' دو سو *do sau*, 'two hundred;' دو سو ایک *do sau ek*, and so on to 1000, which may be expressed by دس سو *das sau*, 'ten hundred,' or by a distinct word هزار *hazār*, borrowed from the Persian. Similarly 1873 may be expressed by اٺتارہ سو تہتر *aṭhārah sau tihattar*, 'eighteen hundred (and) seventy-three,' or ایک ہزار آٹھ سو تہتر *ek hazār āṭh sau tihattar*, 'one thousand eight hundred and seventy-three.' 'Ninety-nine thou-

¹ In *Hindī*, the numbers between 100 and 200 are also expressed in two other ways: 1) by placing the smaller number with the adjective termination *ā* added to it, before the word سو *sau*: *e.g.* بیس سو *bīsā sau*, 'a hundred and twenty,' literally, 'one hundred having or possessing twenty:' 2) by adding to the numeral adjective the noun *utar* (Sanskrit *uttar*, 'over,' 'above'), the initial vowel of which coalesces with the termination *ā* of the numeral into *o*: *e.g.* اٺوتر سو *aṭhotar sau* 'one hundred (and) eight,' literally 'eight over a hundred.' Such forms are, however, only used in counting, and in the Multiplication Table.

sand' is ننانوی ہزار *ninānawe hazār*; but 'a hundred thousand' is expressed by a distinct word لاکھ *lākh* (Sanskrit *laksha*); a hundred lacs, or 'ten millions,' by the word کروڑ *karor*; a hundred *karors*, or 'a thousand millions,' by the word ارب *arb*; a hundred *arbs*, or 'a hundred thousand millions,' by the word کھرب *kharb*.

Rem. The numerals سو, ہزار, لاکھ, کروڑ, ارب, and کھرب, are properly collective substantives, and are frequently used as such; *arb* and *kharb* do not occur as numeral adjectives in Urdū, but they are used in Numeration.

53. By adding to a cardinal number the particle ایک *ek*, signifying 'about,' 'or so,' the idea of indefiniteness is given to it: *e.g.* بیس ایک *bīs ek*, 'about twenty;' سو ایک *sau ek*, 'a hundred or so.' When so used, the numeral generally follows the noun it qualifies; as چار ایک *baras chār ek*, 'about four years.'

Rem. This ایک is called حرف تنکیر *harfē tankīr*, 'the indefinite particle.' It is occasionally prefixed to nouns, and then has the signification of the English indefinite article.

54. The numeral ایک *ek*, 'one,' is rendered indefinite by placing after it the word آد *ād* (said to be the contraction of the word *ādihā*, 'half,' but more probably the Sanskrit *ādi*, 'beginning'); as ایک آد *ek ād*, 'beginning with one' 'one or more,' 'a few.'

55. Two numerals (not generally consecutive), when combined, often convey the idea of indefiniteness: *e.g.* دو چار *do chār* (lit. two four), 'two or three,' 'a few;' دس بیس *das bīs*, 'ten or twenty.'

THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

پہلا <i>pahilā</i> or <i>pahlā</i> , 'first.'	چھٹواں <i>chhatwān</i> , } 'sixth.'
دوسرا <i>dūsra</i> , 'second.'	چھٹھا <i>chhatṭhā</i> , }
تیسرا <i>tīsra</i> , 'third.'	ساتواں <i>sātwān</i> , 'seventh.'
چوتھا <i>chauthā</i> , 'fourth.'	آٹھواں <i>āṭhwān</i> , 'eighth.'
پانچواں <i>pānchwān</i> , 'fifth.'	نواں <i>nauwān</i> or <i>navān</i> , 'ninth.'
	دسواں <i>daswān</i> , 'tenth.'

The first four of the series are regularly derived from the Prākṛit. The remaining ordinals are formed from the cardinals, by adding the termination *wān* (corresponding to the Sanskrit *tama*). As in English, in numbers above a hundred, the last part of the compound takes the form of the ordinal; as *ایک سو بیسواں* *ek sau bīswān*, 'the one hundred (and) twentieth.'

56. The ordinals are regularly inflected like adjectives ending in ā : e.g. *پانچواں* *pānchwān*, 'the fifth,' Fem. *پانچوین* *pānchwin*, Formative masc. *پانچوین* *pānchwen*.

COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

57. Collective numerals may be formed by adding to the cardinals the adjective terminations ā , ī ; as *بیسا* *bīsā*, 'a score;,' *چالیسا* *chālīsā*, 'an aggregate of forty;,' *بیتسی* *battīsī*, 'an aggregate of thirty-two.'

58. The following nouns are used as collective numerals:

جوڑا <i>joṛā</i> , } 'a pair,' 'couple.'	گاہی <i>gāhī</i> , 'an aggregate of five.'
جوڑی <i>joṛī</i> , }	کوڑی <i>koṛī</i> , 'a score.'
گنڈا <i>ganḍā</i> , 'a quaternion,' mostly applica to four cowries.	سیکڑا <i>saiḱṛā</i> , 'a hundred.'

They are used as substantives, taking the noun after them in the genitive case, or in apposition.—The word سیکڑا *sikṛā* is always used in lieu of سَو *sau*; a) in Numeration; as ایکائی *ēkāī*, ‘units,’ دہائی *dahāī*, ‘tens,’ سیکڑی *sikṛī*, ‘hundreds,’ ہزار *hazār*, ‘thousands:’ b) in speaking of Interest; e.g. پانچ روپے سیکڑی *pāñch rūpa'e sikṛī*, ‘five rupees per cent.’

Rem. The phrase ‘per cent.’ is also very generally expressed by the Persian phrase فی صد *fī ṣad*, or فی صدی *fī ṣadī*.

59. The cardinal numbers, especially the tens, may also be used as collective numerals; as چار بیس *chār bīs*, ‘four twenties.’ More commonly, however, the cardinal number is put in the Formative plural, and is then used to convey the idea of 1) *inclusiveness* or *totality*; as دونوں *donon*, ‘the two together,’ ‘both’ (the medial *n* of *donon* is inserted for euphony); تینوں *tīnon*, ‘the three together,’ ‘all the three;’ and in some cases, to add force to the form, the crude form of the numeral is added to the Formative; as آٹھوں آٹھ *āthon āṭh*, ‘the whole eight,’ *lit.* ‘the eight of the eight:’ 2) *indefiniteness* or *numerousness*, in which case the higher numerals are of course used, and the word سیکڑا *sikṛā* is employed in lieu of سَو *sau*: e.g. سیکڑوں گھر *sikṛon ghar*, ‘hundreds of houses,’ *lit.* ‘houses in hundreds;’ ہزاروں آدمی *hazāron ādmī*, ‘thousands of men,’ ‘men in thousands;’ لاکھوں روپے *lākṣon rūpa'e*, ‘lacs of rupees.’

Rem. a. It would appear from the current usage of the cognate dialects, that this form originally expressed *collectiveness* alone, and hence may be assumed by the lower numbers also; e.g. Sindhi ويہين *vīhen*, ‘in twenties.’

Rem. b. By adding to the numeral اَيْک the *affix of intensity*, يَلا — *elā*, we have the form اَکيلا *akelā*, ‘one by itself,’ ‘alone,’ corresponding to the series دونون *donon*, تينون *tīnon*, etc.

DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

60. The distributives are expressed by repeating the cardinal numbers once: *e.g.* اَيْک اَيْک *ek ek*, ‘one at a time,’ ‘singly,’ ‘one apiece;’ دو دو *do do*, ‘by twos,’ ‘two apiece.’

MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS.

61. The multiplicatives are formed from the cardinals: 1) by adding to them the word گُنا *gunā* (fem. گُني *gunī*), ‘time,’ ‘fold;’ as دوگُنا *dogunā*, or دُgunā, (whence by contraction, دُgnā, and, by elision of *g*, the more common دُونَا *dūnā*), ‘two-fold;’ تِگُنا *tigunā*, ‘threefold;’ چَوگُنا *chaugunā*, ‘fourfold;’ 2) by adding the termination هَرا *harā* or اَهرَا *ahrā*; as اَيْکَهَرا *ēkaharā*, ‘single;’ دوهَرا *doharā* or دوهَرَا *dohrā*, ‘double,’ ‘twofold;’ تِهَرا *tiharā* or تِهَرَا *tīhrā*, ‘triple,’ ‘threefold.’

Rem. a. The Persian and Arabic multiplicatives are also frequently used: the construction of these is given in §§ 103, 133.

Rem. b. The word گُنا *gunā* is derived from the Sanskrit *guṇa*, ‘quality,’ etc; the affix هَرا *harā* (contracted from هَارَا *hārā*) from the Sanskrit *vāra*, by elision of *v*, and insertion of a euphonic *h*.

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

62. The numeral adverbs *once, twice, thrice*, etc. are expressed by adding to the cardinals the word بار *bār*, or بَارَا *bārā*, ‘time’ (Sanskrit *vāra*), or one of the synonymous Arabic words دَفْعَة *daf‘a*, مَرْتَبَة *martaba*: as اَيْک بار *ek bār* or

دفعہ ایک *ek daf'a* or مرتبہ ایک *ek martaba*, 'once;' بار دو *do bār*, بار دو *dōbārā*, دو مرتبہ *do martaba*, etc., 'twice;' بار تین *tīn bār*, بار تین *tibārā*, or تین دفعہ *tīn daf'a*, etc., 'thrice.'

Rem. The same affixes (with the change of بار *bārā* into بارہ *bāra*) are used with the Persian cardinal numbers (§ 104).

63. Numeral adverbs showing in what order certain facts are treated, are expressed by employing the ordinals in the Formative singular: *e.g.* پہلے *pahle*, 'firstly;' دوسری *dūsre*, 'secondly;' تیسری *tīsre*, 'thirdly,' etc.; or by using the Persian ordinals; as اول *avval*, 'firstly,' دوم *duwum*, 'secondly,' etc. (§ 104).

FRACTIONAL NUMBERS.

64. The fractional numbers are: a) Substantives; as

پاؤ <i>pā'o</i> ¹	} 'a quarter.'	آدھا <i>ādḥā</i> , 'a half.'
چوتھائی <i>chauthā'z</i>		سوا <i>sawā'z</i> , 'one and a quarter.'
تہائی <i>tihā'z</i> , 'a third.'		

Rem. The fractional numbers of the Arabic are also of frequent occurrence: *e.g.* نصف *niṣf*, 'a half,' ثلث *ṭulṭ*, 'a third,' etc. (§ 134); and the Persian نیم *nīm*, 'half,' is occasionally used.

b) Adjectives; as

پون <i>paun</i>	} 'one quarter less.'	ساتھ <i>sārḥe</i> , 'one half more.'
پونے <i>paune</i>		دیر <i>dērḥ</i> , 'one and a half.'
آدھا <i>ādḥā</i> , آدہ <i>ādḥ</i> , اد <i>adh</i> , 'half.'	} 'two and a half.'	ارہائی <i>arḥā'z</i>
سوا <i>sawā</i> , 'a quarter more.'		دھائی <i>dhā'z</i>

¹ پاؤ is derived from the Sanskrit *pāda*; تہائی from the Sanskrit *tritīyāṁśa*, پون and پونے from the S. adj. *pāḍona*; آدھا from the S. *ardḥa*; سوا from the S. *saṇḍā* (*sa* + *pāda*), 'with a quarter,' ساتھ سے from the S. *sārdḥa* (*sa* + *ardḥa*), 'with a half.'

65. These fractions always precede the numeral or the noun with which they are used ; and the unit employed in using them is 1, from 1 to 99 inclusive ; 100, from 100 to 999 inclusive, and so on: *e.g.* پونے بیس *paune bis* = 20— $\frac{1}{4}$ of 1 = $19\frac{3}{4}$; سوا اُنیس *sawā unīs* = $19 + \frac{1}{4} = 19\frac{1}{4}$; but پونے سو *paune sau* = $100 - \frac{1}{4}$ of 100 = 75; سوا دو سو *sawā do sau* = $200 + \frac{1}{4}$ of 100 = 225; سوا ہزار *sawā hazār* = $1000 + \frac{1}{4}$ of 1000 = 1250; پونے دو ہزار *paune do hazār* = $2000 - \frac{1}{4}$ of 1000 = 1750.

66. پون *paun*, differs from پونے *paune*, inasmuch as it is generally used with units only ; as پون روپیا *paun rūpayā*, 'a rupee minus a quarter,' *i.e.* ' $\frac{3}{4}$ of a rupee,' پون گز *paun gaz*, ' $\frac{3}{4}$ of a yard.'

آدھا *ādḥā*, 'half,' is an ordinary adjective, and is used accordingly.

ساڑھے *sārḥe*, is used in the same manner as پونے and سوا, but only with numerals after 2 ; *e.g.* تین ساڑھے *tīn sārḥe*, 'three and a half;' چار ساڑھے *chār sārḥe*, 'four and a half,' etc. Similarly تین سو ساڑھے *tīn sau sārḥe*, 'three hundred and fifty,' چار سو ساڑھے *chār sau sārḥe*, 'four hundred and fifty,' etc.; and تین ہزار ساڑھے *tīn hazār sārḥe*, 'three thousand five hundred,' and so on.

ڈیڑہ *ḍeṛḥ* is used with units of measure, quantity, etc. (as *one yard, one maund*), and with the collective numerals (as *one hundred, one thousand*), etc.: *e.g.* ڈیڑہ گز *ḍeṛḥ gaz*, 'one yard and a half;' ڈیڑہ من *ḍeṛḥ man*, 'one maund and a half;' ڈیڑہ سو *ḍeṛḥ sau*, 'one hundred and fifty;' ڈیڑہ ہزار *ḍeṛḥ hazār*, 'one thousand five hundred.'

اڑھائی *aṛḥāī* also is used with collective numerals and nouns denoting measure, quantity, etc., which may be in the singular or the plural, as in the case of the integers:

e.g. اَرِهائِي سَو *arhūi sau*, 'two hundred and fifty'; اَرِهائِي هَزَار *arhūi hazār*, 'two thousand five hundred'; اَرِهائِي گَز *arhūi gaz*, 'two yards and a half'; اَرِهائِي رُوپِيَه *arhūi rūpiya*, 'two rupees and a half.'

Rem. From these fractions are derived other nouns and adjectives signifying 'consisting of,' 'containing,' 'at the rate of,' etc. *e.g.* پَوَا *paowā*, 'consisting of, or containing, one *pā'o*.' سَوَايَا *sawāyā* and سَوَايَا *sawaiyā*, 'consisting of one and a quarter,' or 'at the rate of $1\frac{1}{4}$;' دِيَوَرَهَا *dī'orhā*, 'half as much again.'

67. Other fractional numbers are: a) those which are formed from the integers, or from the fractions, adjectives or substantives; as

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{آدھ پَاو } adh\ pā'o = \frac{1}{2} \text{ of } \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{8}. \\ \text{دِیَرَه پَاو } derh\ pā'o = 1\frac{1}{2} \text{ of } \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{8}. \\ \text{اَرِهائِي پَاو } arhū'i\ pā'o = 2\frac{1}{2} \text{ of } \frac{1}{4} = \frac{5}{8}. \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{دو تہائی } do\ tihā'i = \frac{2}{3}. \\ \text{تین پَاو } tīn\ pā'o, \\ \text{تین چوتھائی } tīn\ chouthā'i, \end{array} = \frac{3}{4}.$$

b) those which have a special application, and are formed by adding to the fractions پَاو *pā'o* and آدھ *adh* the suffix *-elā*, or *-lā*; as پَاوَلَا *pā'olā*, 'a quarter of any coin,' آدھِلَا *adhelā*, 'half a pice' (*paisā*); آدھِلِي *adheli*, 'half a rupee.'

رَقَم (رَقَم). *RAKAM*

68. Distinct from the system of notation noticed above is that called رَقَم *rakam* (an Arabic word signifying 'writing, or price-mark' on a thing), which is always used in recording pecuniary transactions, or computations involving *weight, measure* (of land), such as *maunds, bighās*, etc. (as shown in the Plate adjoining). It is taken, for the most part, from the initial letters of the names of the Arabic numerals: *e.g.* عدد *one* is a contraction of the Arabic عدد

Table of Rahm.

رقم	تعداد	رقم	تعداد	رقم	تعداد	رقم	تعداد	رقم	تعداد	رقم	تعداد
		81 to 100		61 to 80		41 to 60		21 to 40		1 to 20	
مال	۲۰۰	ل	۸۱	ل	۶۱	ل	۴۱	ل	۲۱	ع	۱
سما	۳۰۰	ل	۸۲	ل	۶۲	ل	۴۲	ل	۲۲	ع	۲
اسما	۴۰۰	ل	۸۳	ل	۶۳	ل	۴۳	ل	۲۳	ل	۳
کما	۵۰۰	ل	۸۴	ل	۶۴	ل	۴۴	ل	۲۴	ل	۴
نما	۶۰۰	ل	۸۵	ل	۶۵	ل	۴۵	ل	۲۵	م	۵
سا	۷۰۰	ل	۸۶	ل	۶۶	ل	۴۶	ل	۲۶	ع	۶
تا	۸۰۰	ل	۸۷	ل	۶۷	ل	۴۷	ل	۲۷	م	۷
لما	۹۰۰	ل	۸۸	ل	۶۸	ل	۴۸	ل	۲۸	ل	۸
الا	۱۰۰۰	ل	۸۹	ل	۶۹	ل	۴۹	ل	۲۹	ل	۹
عما	۲۰۰۰	ل	۹۰	م	۷۰	م	۵۰	ل	۳۰	ع	۱۰
سما	۳۰۰۰	ل	۹۱	م	۷۱	م	۵۱	ل	۳۱	ل	۱۱
اسما	۴۰۰۰	ل	۹۲	م	۷۲	م	۵۲	ل	۳۲	ع	۱۲
کما	۵۰۰۰	ل	۹۳	م	۷۳	م	۵۳	ل	۳۳	ع	۱۳
نما	۶۰۰۰	ل	۹۴	ل	۷۴	ل	۵۴	ل	۳۴	ل	۱۴
سا	۷۰۰۰	ل	۹۵	م	۷۵	م	۵۵	ل	۳۵	م	۱۵
تا	۸۰۰۰	ل	۹۶	م	۷۶	م	۵۶	ل	۳۶	ع	۱۶
لما	۹۰۰۰	ل	۹۷	م	۷۷	م	۵۷	ل	۳۷	م	۱۷
عما	۱۰۰۰۰	ل	۹۸	م	۷۸	م	۵۸	ل	۳۸	ع	۱۸
سما	۱۱۰۰۰	ل	۹۹	ل	۷۹	ل	۵۹	ل	۳۹	ل	۱۹
لاکھ	۱۰۰۰۰۰	ل	۱۰۰	ل	۸۰	ل	۶۰	ل	۴۰	ع	۲۰

$\frac{1}{4}$ of an ānā; $\frac{1}{2}$ an ānā; $\frac{3}{4}$ of an ānā; 1 = one ānā

Rs. As. Pais.
 1125, 11, 8 $\frac{3}{4}$

Rs. As. Pais.
 795, 11 $\frac{3}{4}$

'*adad*'; عددان *two*, of the Arabic dual, عددان *'adadān*; ثلث *three*, from the Arabic ثلاثة *ṣalāṣa*, and so on (See Arabic numerals, § 129).

PERSIAN AND ARABIC CONSTRUCTIONS.

69. The Urdū borrows largely from the Persian and Arabic languages, and the words borrowed are frequently treated according to the rules of inflection peculiar to the language from which they are taken. A knowledge of some of the most important facts of Persian and Arabic inflection is therefore indispensably necessary to the student of Urdū.

PERSIAN CONSTRUCTIONS.

70. *Gender*.—There is no distinction of genders in Persian. The distinction of sex is indicated, as in English, by the use of different words; as مرد *man*, زن *woman*; or by the aid of the words نر *nar*, 'male,' ماده *māda*, 'female;' as شیر نر *sherē nar*, 'a male tiger,' شیر ماده *sherē māda*, 'a female tiger.'

71. *Declension*.—In the declension of nouns, the cases, with the exception of the genitive, accusative, and vocative, are formed by means of prepositions, as in English. The only cases which demand notice in connection with Urdū are the genitive and the vocative.

THE GENITIVE.

72. The 'relation of the genitive case' (إضافة *izāfat*) is indicated by placing the *determined* or *governing* noun first, with the vowel *kasra* (called كسرة *the kasra of annexation*) attached to its final letter; as عِلْم طَب *'ilmē*

ṭibb, 'the science, or art, of medicine;' شہر بغداد *shahrē bagdād*, 'the city of Bagdād.' If the governing noun end in ـ *a*, or ـی *ī*, *hamza* must be employed to enounce the *kasra* (which need not then be written, since *hamza* can occur in such a position for no other purpose); e.g. ملکہ ہند *malikā'ē hind*, 'the Queen of India;' ماهی دریا *māhī'ē daryū*, 'the fish of the sea.' When the first, or governing word, ends in either of the long vowels ـا *ā*, ـو *ū* or *o*, the *hamza* is followed by ی (the *majhūl ye*); as تخت پایہ *pā'ē takht*, 'the foot of the throne;' روی زمین *rū'ē zamīn*, 'the face of the earth.'

Rem. a. In employing this construction in Urdū, a Hindī proper name may stand in the place of the *governed* noun, but the *governing* noun must be Persian or Arabic: e.g. شہر بریلی *shahrē barelī*, 'the city of Bareilī' (Bareilly).

Rem. b. Whatever be the sign of the *izāfat*, its sound in Urdū is always that of short *e* (ē), between the *kasra* and the *yā'ē majhūl*.

73. The genitive may also be formed by reversing the order of the words and placing the governed noun first, in which case the *izāfat* is not used: e.g. شہر پناہ *shahr panāh* = پناہ شہر *panāhē shahr*, 'the protection of the city,' 'a wall of defence round a city;' جہاں پناہ *jāhān panāh* = پناہ جہاں *panāhe jāhān*, 'the refuge of the world,' 'His Majesty.' But the more common result of this construction is either an *attributive compound* (corresponding to the *Bahuvrīhi* of the Sanskrit); as دل سنگ *sang-dil*, 'possessing a heart of stone,' 'hard-hearted;' فیلتن *fīl-tan*, 'elephant-bodied;' پری روی *parī-rū*, 'fairy-faced;' or a *determinative compound* (corresponding to the *Tatpurusha* of the Sanskrit); e.g. پندنامہ *pand-nāma*, 'the book of counsels;' شبگاہ *shab-gāh*, 'night-time.'

THE VOCATIVE.

74. The vocative case may be formed as in English, by prefixing an interjection to the nominative: *e.g.* *ای دوست* *ai dost*, 'O friend;' but another common way of forming it is to add the termination *ا-ā* to the nominative; as *دل* *dilū*, 'O heart;' *دوستا* *dostū*, 'O friend.' If the nominative end in *ā*, a euphonic *y* is inserted between it and the affix; *e.g.* *خدایا* *khudā-yū*, 'O God.'

THE PLURAL.

75. The terminations of the plural are two; namely *ان ān* for things animate, and *ها hā* for things inanimate: *e.g.* *مرد* *mard*, 'a man,' pl. *مردان mardān*; *ساقی* *sākī*, 'a cup-bearer,' pl. *ساقیان sākijān*; *بار* *bār*, 'a time,' pl. *بارها bār hā*; *سال* *sāl*, 'a year,' pl. *سالها sāl hā*. There are exceptions however, chiefly in the use of the plural affix *hā* (which in Persia would appear to be now used generally to form the pl. of all nouns): *e.g.* *چراغان chirūgān*, 'lamps,' *اسبها asphā*, 'horses.' If the singular end in *ا-a*, this letter is changed into *گ g* before the termination *ān* is added, and dropped before the addition of *hā*: *e.g.* *بندگان bandagān*, 'slaves,' 'servants,' from *بند* *banda*; *خانهها khānahā*, 'houses,' from *خانه khāna*. And if the singular end in *ā*, a euphonic *y* is inserted between it and the affix *ān*; as *پارسایان pārsā-yān*, 'the devout,' from *پارسا pārsā*, 'devout.'

76. The Persian plural of nouns denoting inanimate things is also formed, in imitation of the Arabic, by the addition of the termination *ات āt* to the singular: *e.g.* *دهات dēh-āt*, 'villages,' 'the country' (in contradistinction to 'the town'), from *ده dēh*, 'a village'; *زیورات zewar-āt*, 'ornaments,' 'jewels,' from *زبور zewar*; *کاغذات kāgāz-āt*,

‘papers,’ ‘documents,’ from کاغذ *kāgaz*. If *s* = *a* be the final letter of the singular, it is changed into ج *j* before the pl. affix is added: *e.g.* نامجات *nāmajāt*, ‘letters,’ from نامه *nāma*.

THE ADJECTIVE.

77. The construction of the genitive case is also that of the noun and its qualifying adjective, the adjective being generally placed after the noun: *e.g.* مردِ نیک *mardē nek*, ‘a good man,’ زبانِ شیرین *zabānē shīrīn*, ‘a sweet tongue.’

78. The adjective however often precedes the substantive, and in that case the *izāfat* is dispensed with: *e.g.* نیکِ مرد *nek mard*, ‘a good man.’ But more generally in this construction, the adjective and noun together form either a *determinative compound* (corresponding to the *Karmadhāraya* of the Sanskrit); as رخ‌شده روز *rakhshinda-roz*, ‘shining day,’ خوش نویس *khvush navīs*, ‘a neat writer;’ or an *attributive compound* (similar to the *Bahuvrīhi* of the Sanskrit): *e.g.* خوبصورت *khūb-sūrat*, ‘handsome-faced,’ ‘handsome;’ بدخوی *bad-kho*, ‘ill-behaved,’ ‘having a bad disposition;’ نامِ نیک *nek-nām*, ‘having a good name,’ ‘celebrated.’

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

79. The comparative of an adjective is formed by adding to the positive the termination تر *tar*; the superlative, by adding ترین *tarīn*: *e.g.*

بِه <i>bēh</i> , ‘good,’	بِه‌تر <i>bēh-tar</i> , ‘better,’	بِه‌ترین <i>bēh-tarīn</i> , ‘best,’
بد <i>bad</i> , ‘bad,’	بد‌تر <i>bad-tar</i> (or بدتر {	بد‌ترین <i>bad-tarīn</i>), ‘worst,’
	بد‌تر <i>bat-tar</i>), ‘worse,’ {	
		بد‌ترین <i>bat-tarīn</i> }

فاضل *fāzil*, ‘learned,’ فاضل‌تر *fāzil-tar*, ‘more learned,’ فاضل‌ترین *fāzil-tarīn*, ‘most learned.’

Rem. a. The suffixes تر and ترین are frequently added to the Arabic superlative (§ 106); *e.g.* اُولی تر *aulā-tar*, 'better,' اُولی ترین *aulā-tarīn*, 'best.' Such forms may be regarded as double comparatives and superlatives.

Rem. b. The suffix اَـ *ā* adds the idea of intensiveness to the signification of an adjective; as خوشا *khūshā*, 'very happy,' from خوش 'happy.'

THE INFINITIVE AND VERBAL NOUN.

80. Persian infinitives are of rare occurrence in Urdū, but derivatives from them, as also from the verbal root, are frequently met with.

81. The infinitive always ends in one of the syllables دن *dan* or تن *tan*; as دیدن *dīdan*, 'to see,' گفتن *guftan*, 'to speak.'

82. The root (which is also the form of the singular imperative) is commonly used as a noun of action or abstract substantive. To obtain the root from the infinitive, it is sufficient, occasionally, to simply drop the characteristic termination of the latter: *e.g.* پرور *parwar*, from پرورَدَن 'to protect;' کن *kan*, from کَنَدَن 'to dig.' But, generally, the letter immediately preceding the termination is either dropped as well, or changed into some other letter or letters; *e.g.* دان *dān*, from دانِشْتَن 'to know;' دار *dār*, from داشْتَن 'to have or possess;' باز *bāz*, from بازِیدَن 'to play,' etc.; ساز *sāz*, from ساخْتَن 'to make;' کن *kun*, from کَرَدَن 'to do or act;' بند *band*, from بَسْتَن 'to bind or fasten;' گو and گوی *go*, from گُفْتَن 'to speak.'

VERBAL ADJECTIVES.

83. *Past Participles* are formed from infinitives, by changing the final ن into silent s. They may have both an

active and a passive signification (though more commonly the latter), and may be used either as adjectives or substantives: *e.g.* دیدۀ *dīda*, 'seeing,' 'seen,' 'the eye' (from دیدن 'to see'); پرورده *parwarda*, 'protected,' 'a protégé.' The past participles of some neuter verbs generally have the signification of the present part.; as خفته *khuf̄ta*, 'sleeping,' 'asleep' (from خفتن 'to sleep'); شایسته *shāyista*, 'decent,' 'proper,' 'becoming' (from شایستن 'to become,' 'to be worth').

84. Passive participles are of frequent occurrence in composition with nouns, forming therewith *determinative* compounds (like the *Tatpurusha* of the Sanskrit): *e.g.* سال خورده *sāl-khwarda*, 'old in years,' سایه پرورده *sāya-parwarda*, 'brought up in the shade,' 'delicately reared.' Occasionally the final *s* of participles ending in ده is dropped; as زنگ آلود *zang-ālūd* (= زنگ آلوده), 'covered with rust,' 'rusty.'

Rem. The participle ending in ت *ta* does not appear to be so used; but it seems probable that many words, as دوست 'a friend,' بخت 'fortune,' مست 'intoxicated' (= Sanskrit मत्त), which are now used as substantives and adjectives, were originally past participles.

85. *Active Participles*, adjectives, and nouns of agency, are formed:—a) By adding to the roots of verbs the terminations:

1) آ *ā*; as دانا *dān.ā*, 'knowing,' 'learned,' 'wise,' 'a sage' (from the root of دانستن 'to know'); بینا *bīn.ā*, 'seeing,' 'seer' (from بین *bīn*, the root of دیدن 'to see'); گویا *goy.ā*, 'speaking,' 'speaker,' 'an orator' (from the root of گفتن 'to speak'); توانا *tuw.ān.ā*, 'powerful' (from the root of توانستن 'to be able'). Participles so formed sometimes

have a *passive*, as well as an *active*, signification; *e.g.* پذیرا *pazīrā*, 'accepting,' and 'accepted' (from the root of پذیرفتن 'to accept').

2) ان *ān*; as جویان *joyān*, 'seeking,' 'seeker' (from the root of جستن 'to seek'); روان *rawān*, 'going' (from the root of رفتن 'to go'); باران *bārān*, 'raining,' 'rain' (from the root of باریدن 'to rain'); گویان *goyān*, 'speaking,' 'speaker,' 'an orator' (from the root of گفتن 'to speak').

3) اند *anda* (or *inda*); as روانده *ravanda*, 'going,' 'goer' (from the root of رفتن 'to go'); کُننده *kuninda*, 'doing,' 'doer' (from the root of کردن 'to do'); جوینده *joyanda*, 'seeking,' 'seeker' (from the root of جستن 'to seek').

Rem. This suffix may be attached to the root of any verb, and, like the preceding suffix *ān*, often forms appellatives as well as present participles. Like the corresponding suffix والا *wālā*, of the Hindī, it is sometimes added to nouns also; *e.g.* شرمنده *sharminda*, 'ashamed,' 'bashful' (from شرم 'shame'). It sometimes takes the form ند *nda*; as پرنده *parand* (= پرنده), 'flying,' 'a bird,' چرند *charand* (= چرنده), 'grazing,' 'an animal.' Occasionally, too, it would appear to take the form نده *nda*; as فرخنده *farikhunda*, 'happy,' 'fortunate.' The original suffix appears to have been the same as the Sanskrit अन्त *ant*.

b) By adding the root of a verb to a noun, and thus forming a *determinative* compound (corresponding to the *Tatpurusha* of the Sanskrit). The root governs the noun:

1) In the *accusative*; as کاردان *kār-dān*, 'knowing work,' 'skilful,' زمیندار *zamīn-dār*, 'holding or possessing land,' 'a landholder,' مالگذار *māl-guzār*, 'paying revenue,' 'one who pays revenue,' 'a tenant,' نعلبند *na'l-band*, 'fastening or fixing a shoe' (on a horse, etc.), 'a farrier.'

2) In the *ablative*; as شمشیرزن *shamsher-zan*, 'striking with the sword,' 'a swordsman' (from the root of زدن 'to strike'),

3) In the *locative*; as تَخْتِ نِشِین *takht-nishīn*, 'sitting on a throne,' 'a king' (from the root of نِشِستَن 'to sit'); صُبْحِ خِیز *subh-khez*, 'rising in the early morning,' 'one who so rises,' and thence, 'a morning-thief' (from the root of خِیزِیدن 'to rise').

Rem. a. The root in the same construction often gives the signification of the *passive* participle: *e.g.* خانِه ساز *khāna-sāz*, 'made in the house,' 'home-made'; خُدا بَخْش *Khudā bakhsh*, 'given by God' (from the root of بَخْشِیدن 'to bestow'); رُو شِناس *rū-shinās*, 'known by the face,' 'an acquaintance' (from the root of شِناخْتَن 'to know,' etc.).

Rem. b. In Urdū a Persian root is occasionally joined to a Hindī word, which, if it end in *ā*, is inflected: *e.g.* گِھڑِی ساز 'a watch-maker;' سوْنٹِے بَرْدَار 'a mace-bearer' (بَرْدَار being the root of بُرداشْتَن 'to carry,' etc.); تَهْتَهْتِے باز 'one who repeatedly plays jokes,' 'a jester;' کُوڑِی باز 'one who plies the whip,' 'a whipper.'

c) By adding a passive participle to a noun; as جہاں دِیدِه *jahān-dīda*, 'one who has seen the world,' 'experienced;' غم خُورْدِه *gam-khūrda*, 'one who has suffered sorrow.'

d) By adding the suffixes تار *tār* and دار *dār* to apocopated infinitives (the former to those ending in تَن, and the latter to those ending in دَن), and eliding the ت or د of the infinitive termination; *e.g.* خواستار *khwāstār* (for خواست تار), 'one who makes a request,' 'a petitioner' (from خواستَن 'to wish,' etc.); خریدار *khārīdār* (for خرید دار), 'a purchaser' (from خریدَن 'to purchase').

Rem. These suffixes sometimes form adjectives with a *passive* signification; as گِرفْتار *giriftār*, 'taken captive,' 'captive' (from گِرفْتَن 'to take or seize'). They are also used to form abstract substantives (§ 97).

SUFFIXES FORMING NOUNS OF AGENCY.

86. Nouns of agency, and adjectives, are also formed by adding to substantives the following suffixes :

1) کار *kār*; دستکار *dast-kār*, 'a handicraftsman,' 'an artificer' (from دست 'hand'); جفاکار *jafā-kār*, 'an oppressor' (from جفا 'oppression'); پیشکار *pesh-kār*, 'an assistant,' 'an agent' (from پیش 'before').

2) گار *gār*; as خدمتگار *khidmat-gār*, 'a servant' (from خدمت 'service'); پرهیزگار *parhez-gār*, 'abstinent,' 'a devout man' (from پرهیز 'abstinence'); گناهگار *gunāh-gār*, 'an offender,' 'a sinner' (from گناه 'sin'); ستمگار *sitam-gār*, 'unjust,' 'an oppressor' (from ستم 'oppression'); یادگار *yād-gār*, 'a memorial,' 'a monument' (from یاد 'remembrance').

Rem. The idea of agency is sometimes not very prominent: *e.g.* روزگار *roz-gār*, 'time,' 'the world,' 'fortune' (from روز 'day').

3) گر *gar*; as آهنگر *āhan-gar*, 'a blacksmith' (from آهن 'iron'); جلدگر *jild-gar*, 'a book-binder' (from جلد 'a skin,' 'a volume'); زرگر *zar-gar*, 'a gold-smith' (from زر 'gold'); شیشهگر *shīsha-gar*, 'a glass-blower' (from شیشه 'glass'); ستمگر *sitam-gar*, 'an oppressor' (from ستم 'oppression').

Rem. کار *kār* is, originally, a noun, signifying 'work,' 'action;' but it is commonly used as a suffix, denoting 'work,' or 'the doing, or doing of, a work.' In گار the ک of کار is softened into گ, these letters being interchangeable. The suffix گر is simply a contraction of گار; it most frequently indicates 'a worker,' 'a maker,' but it is interchangeable with both کار and گار. Occasionally گر has the signification of 'possessor;' *e.g.* توانگر *tuwāngar*, 'one possessing power,' 'rich.' These affixes correspond to the Sanskrit कार and कर at the end of compounds; *e.g.* अन्धकार, दन्तकार, दिनकर, दुष्कर.

1) چي *chī*; as بارچي *bāwar-chī* (*lit.* 'one possessing trust or confidence'), 'a cook' (from بار 'trust, confidence'); مشعلچي *mash'al-chī*, 'a torch-bearer' (and, in India) 'a cook's mate' (from مشعل 'a torch'). If the final letter of the noun be *s* (silent), it is dropped before the termination is added; as خزائچي *khazūn-chī*, 'a treasurer' (from خزانه 'treasure').

Rem. This suffix is derived from the Turkish.

5) بان *bān*, or وان *wān*, signifying 'keeping, watching, or guarding,' as باغبان *bāḡ-bān*, 'a gardener' (from باغ 'a garden'); دربان *dar-bān*, and دروان *dar-wān*, 'a gatekeeper,' 'a porter' (from در 'a gate'); گریبان *girebān*, 'the collar of a garment' (*lit.* 'that which protects the گری or 'neck'); مهربان *mihrbān*, 'benevolent,' 'affectionate,' 'kind' (*lit.* 'guarding or keeping مهرب, or affection').

Rem. This suffix is occasionally attached to Hindī words also: *e.g.* گاری وان *gārī-wān*, or گاری بان *gārī-bān* (= گاری والا) 'a cart man, or carter.' The original suffix is doubtless وان (related to the Sanskrit वन्त *vant*), the letters ب and و being interchangeable.

87. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES and substantives are formed by adding to substantives the following suffixes, denoting 'possession,' 'affection,' or 'fullness':

1) آور *āwar*; as زبان آور *zabān-āwar*, 'possessing speech,' 'eloquent' (from زبان 'speech'); زورآور *zor-āwar*, 'possessing strength,' 'strong,' 'an athlete' (from زور 'strength'); دلآور *dil-āwar*, 'possessing heart,' 'brave,' 'warlike' (from دل 'heart'); بختآور *bakht-āwar*, 'fortunate' (from بخت 'fortune'). This affix is sometimes contracted

to $\bar{a}r$; e.g. سالار *sāl-ār* (lit. 'possessed of years,' 'old,' and thence,) 'a chief, or leader'; دیوار *dīw-ār*, 'a wall' (lit. 'possessing a stratum, or foundation,' from دیو, for دِاو, by *imāla*, or change of vowel).

Rem. In some words the suffix *ār* is redundant: e.g. زنگار *zang-ār* (= زنگت), 'rust,' also written زنگال *zang-āl*, the letters ر and ل being interchangeable. So also دیوار for دیوال 'a wall.'

2) وار *war*; as جانور 'possessing life,' 'an animal' (from جان 'life'); سرور *sar-war*, 'a chief, or leader' (from سر 'head'); کینه‌وار *kīna-war*, 'rancorous,' 'malevolent' (from کینه 'rancour'); هنرور *hunar-war*, 'possessing virtue or merit,' 'skilful,' 'accomplished' (from هنر 'virtue,' 'merit'). This suffix occasionally takes the form $\bar{u}r$; e.g. دستور *dustūr*, 'a prime-minister,' etc. (from دست 'hand,' 'power,' etc.); رنجور *ranjūr*, 'vexed,' 'afflicted' (from رنج 'vexation,' 'sorrow'); مزدور *muzdūr* (but, in India, *mazdur*), 'a hireling' (from مزد 'hire').

3) وار *wār*; as امیدوار *umēd-wār*, 'having hope,' 'hopeful' (from امید 'hope'); سوگوار *sog-wār*, 'having grief,' 'mourning,' 'afflicted' (from سوگت 'grief,' 'sorrow').

4) یار *yār*; as بختیار *bakht-yār*, 'fortunate' (from بخت 'fortune'); شهریار *shahr-yār*, 'possessor, or lord of the city,' 'a king' (from شهر 'city'); هوشیار *hosh-yār*, 'possessing sense,' 'sensible,' 'prudent' (from هوش 'sense,' etc.). In a few words this suffix is contracted to $\bar{e}r$: e.g. دلیر *diler*, 'possessing heart,' 'bold,' 'valiant,' = دلاور *dil-āwar*.

Rem. The suffix آور or آور *āwar* is properly (though not used as) the root of the verb آورَدَن 'to bring;' and to this is related the suffix ور, for بر, the root of the verb بُرَدَن 'to bear or carry,' which, when com-

pounded with the preposition آ, becomes آوردن, ب and و being interchangeable. From ور again, by lengthening the vowel, is formed the suffix وار. The suffix یار is but another form of وار or ور.

5) سار *sār*; as شرمسار *sharm-sār*, 'bashful,' 'modest' (from شرم 'shame').

6) مند *mand*; دانشمند *danishmand*, 'possessing learning, or wisdom,' 'learned,' 'wise' (from دانش 'knowledge,' etc.); دولتمند *daulat-mand*, 'wealthy' (from دولت 'wealth'); عقلمند *akl-mand*, 'sensible,' 'wise' (from عقل 'understanding'). This suffix sometimes takes the forms *ūmand*, and *umand*: e.g. بارومند *barūmand*, 'fruitful,' 'fertile,' 'successful,' 'happy' (from بر 'fruit'); ارجمند *arjūmand* (and ارجمند *arjmand*), 'precious,' 'esteemed' (from ارچ 'price').

Rem. مند corresponds to the Sanskrit मन्त *mant*. It occasionally also takes the form وند, the Sanskrit वन्त *want*.

7) گین *gīn*; as شرمگین *sharm-gīn*, 'abashed,' 'bashful'; خشمگین *khishm-gīn*, 'inflamed with anger,' 'irate' (from خشم 'anger'); غمگین *gam-gīn*, 'sorrowful' (from غم 'sorrow').

Rem. The original form of گین is آگین *āgīn*, derived from the verb آگندن, and signifies 'filled.' Added to nouns it sometimes serves to express a *quality*, as well as to form a possessive.

8) ناک *nāk*; as غضبناک *gaṣab-nāk*, 'inflamed with wrath,' 'enraged' (from غضب 'rage,' 'violence'); دردناک *dard-nāk*, 'painful' (from درد 'pain'); هولناک *haul-nāk*, 'terrible,' 'fearful' (from هول 'fear,' 'terror').

Rem. ناک more commonly forms adjectives of *quality*. It would appear to be related to the Sanskrit नज् *naj*. It is occasionally added to verbal roots and adjectives also.

88. Possessive Adjectives are also formed by prefixing to a substantive :

1) با *bā*, signifying 'possessed of,' 'according to;' as با آبرو *bā-ābrū*, 'honourable' (from آبرو 'honour'); با تمیز *bā-tamīz*, 'discriminating,' 'judicious' (from تمیز 'discrimination,' 'judgment'); با قاعده *bā-kā'ida*, 'regular' (from قاعده 'a rule'); با وفا *bā-wafū*, 'faithful' (from وفا 'faith').

2) صاحب *ṣāhib* (an Arabic noun, signifying 'possessor,' 'owner'); as صاحب دل *ṣāhib-dil*, 'pious,' 'godly' (*lit.* 'possessor of the heart'); صاحب جمال *ṣāhib-jamāl*, 'beautiful,' 'handsome' (from جمال 'beauty'); صاحب نصیب *ṣāhib-naṣīb*, 'fortunate' (from نصیب 'destiny,' 'fortune').

89. NEGATIVE ADJECTIVES, denoting privation, or the absence of a quality, are formed by prefixing to a noun one of the following prepositions or adverbs, corresponding in signification to the English *un*, *in*, *dis*, *less*, etc.:

1) به *be*, 'without' (always prefixed to substantives); as به پروا *be-parwā*, 'fearless,' 'careless'; به انصاف *be-īnṣāf*, 'unjust'; به وفا *be-wafū*, 'faithless.'

2) کم *kam*, 'less,' 'lacking' (prefixed to substantives); as کم بخت *kam-bakht*, 'luckless'; کم زور *kam-zor*, 'powerless,' 'feeble'; کم همت *kam-himmat*, 'spiritless,' 'unaspiring.'

3) نا *nā*, 'not' (prefixed, originally, to adjectives alone, but, at the present time, to substantives also); as نا امید *nā-umed*, 'hopeless,' 'despairing'; نا پاک *nā-pāk*, 'unclean'; نا خوش *na-khwush*, 'displeased'; نا اهل *nā-ahl*, 'unworthy.'

4) غیر *gair*, 'other,' 'different,' 'opposite' (borrowed from the Arabic, and used before substantives and adjectives); as غیر انصاف *gair-īnṣāf*, 'unjust'; غیر حاضر *gair-hāẓir*, 'not present,' 'absent'; غیر ممکن *gair-mumkin*, 'impossible.'

5) لا *lā*, 'not' (also borrowed from the Arabic, and prefixed chiefly to substantives, or adjectives employed as substantives); as لاچار *lā-chār*, 'helpless,' 'remediless;' لا جواب *lā-jawāb*, 'answerless;' لا وارث *lā-wārīs*, 'heirless,' 'unclaimed.'

90. ADJECTIVES OF SIMILITUDE are formed by adding to substantives the suffixes:

1) آسا *āsā*, سا *sā*, or سان *sān*; e.g. شیرآسا *sher-āsā*, or شیرسا *sher-sā*, or شیرسان *sher-sān*, 'like a tiger,' 'tigrish;' مردآسا *mard-āsā*, 'like a man,' 'manly;' فرشته سان *firishta-sān*, 'angelic.'

Rem. The origin of these suffixes is the verb سَوَدَن, whence by prefixing the preposition آ, the verb آسودَن is derived.

2) سار *sār*; as خاکسار *klāk-sār*, 'like dust,' 'humble;' سگسار *sag-sār*, 'dog-like,' 'miserly,' 'a miser.'

Rem. سار affixed to substantives and adjectives is occasionally synonymous with سر 'head;' e.g. سگسار *sag sār*, 'dog-headed,' 'an inhabitant of a region where the inhabitants have heads like dogs;' سبکسار *sabuk-sār* (= سبکسر), 'light-headed,' 'unsteady,' 'foolish.'

3) وار *wār*: as بزرگوار *buzurg-wār*, 'like the great,' 'great,' 'excellent;' ذرّوار *zarra-wār*, 'atom-like,' 'humble.'

4) گان *gān*; as خدايگان *khudā'egān*, 'like God' (a title of kings and great men), 'most excellent,' 'omnipotent.'

Rem. The signification of 'similitude,' in the case of both وار and گان, often passes into that of 'fitness,' 'worthiness' (see § 91, 2, 3).

5) مان *mān*; as آسمان *āsmān*, 'like a mill-stone' (revolving), 'heaven' (from آس 'a mill-stone').¹

¹ Such is the derivation of *āsmān* according to native scholars. The Zend form of the word is *ashman*, the Sanskrit अश्मन् *asman*.

Rem. مان is used in some Persian words with the signification of 'possessing,' but is not found in Urdū. In the word شادمان it does not signify 'possession,' as Professors Monier Williams and Dowson affirm, but is *redundant*. It never can signify 'possession' when joined to an adjective.

6) وش *wash*; as ماهوش *māh-wash*, 'like the moon.'

7) وند *wand*; as خداوند *khudā-wand*, 'like God,' 'lord,' 'possessor;' whence, by contraction, خاوند, also signifying 'lord,' 'master,' 'husband.'

91. Adjectives denoting *fitness* or *worthiness* are formed by attaching to substantives the suffixes:

1) انه *āna*; as شاهانه *shāhāna*, 'befitting a king,' 'royal,' 'splendid;' مردانه *mardāna*, 'becoming a man,' 'manly.'

Rem. a. Such is the teaching of the native grammarians; but it appears far more probable that in these words, as also in دیوانه - بُزرگانه - عاشقانه - شاگردانه (§ 92, 6) is added to the *plurals* شاهان - مردان, etc.: انه also occurs as a relative suffix.

Rem. b. From the signification of 'fitness,' arises that of 'manner,' which is also common to this suffix, and hence its use in forming adverbs: *e.g.* شاهانه 'royally,' مردانه 'in a manly manner;' غرضانه 'interestedly.'

2) گان *gān*; as شایگان *shā'e-gān* (for شاهگان), 'worthy of a king;' رایگان *rā'e-gān* (for راهگان), 'fit to throw on the road,' 'a thing found on the road,' hence, 'a thing obtained, or lost, for nothing,' 'anything worthless.'

3) وار *wār*, or واره *wāra*; as شاهوار *shāh-wār*, 'worthy of a king,' 'princely,' 'royal;' بزرگوار *buzurg-wār*, 'worthy of the great,' 'great,' 'excellent;' گوشوار *gosh-wār*, or گوشواره

gosh-wūra, 'suitable to the ear,' 'an earring;' ماهوار *māh-wār*, or ماهواره *māhwāra*, 'adapted to a month,' 'monthly stipend,' etc., 'monthly.'

Rem. From the signification of 'fitness,' etc., arises that of 'measure,' 'quantity;' as وار جامه *jāma-wār*, ('fit to make,' or) 'sufficient to make a garment' = جامه بهر *jāma-bhar*. The original form of this suffix is بر, corresponding to the Sanskrit and Hindī भर *bhar*.

4) یَـ *ī*, added to infinitives only; as خوردنی *khūrdanī*, 'fit to eat,' 'eatable' (from خوردن 'to eat'); گفتنی *guftanī*, 'fit to utter,' شدنی *shudanī*, 'fit to be.'

92. RELATIVE ADJECTIVES and Substantives are formed by adding to substantives the suffixes:

1) ال *āl*, (used to form substantives); as چنگال *chang-āl*, 'a claw' (from چنگ 'bent, curved'); دُنبال *dumb-āl*, 'the extremity of a thing,' 'a tail' (from دُنب = ذم 'a tail').

2) ان *ān*; as بیابان *biyābān*, 'a desert' (from آب 'without water'); پایان *pāyān*, 'end' (of the foot), 'extremity' (from پای 'foot'); پیشان *peshān*, 'the front or foremost part' (from پیش 'before'; from پیشان is derived پیشانی *peshanī*, 'the forehead').

Rem. The suffix ان also forms *patronymics* and *relative nouns of place*: e.g. ایران *Īrān* and توران *Tūrān* (from Īr and Tūr, sons of Farīdūn); اسپهان *ispahān*, Ispahān (for سپاهان *sipāhān*, from سپاه 'an army'). It is sometimes *reduhdant*: e.g. آبادان = آباد 'inhabited,' 'peopled.'

3) انه *āna*; as دستانه *dast-āna*, 'a glove' (from دست 'hand'); مردانه *mard-āna* 'pertaining to man'; کاشانه *kāsh-āna*, 'a glass-house,' thence generally, 'a house'; سالانه *sāl-ana*, 'pertaining to a year,' 'yearly.'

4) گان *gān*; as گردگان *gird-gān*, 'a walnut' (from گرد 'round'); دیگهان *dih-gān* = دیقان 'pertaining to a village,' 'a villager' (دیقان is the Arabic form of the word); بازارگان *bāzar-gān* (from بازارگان), 'a merchant.'

5) وان *wān*, and ون *wan* (but in Urdū generally occurring under the form ون *ūn*); as همایون *humāyūn*, 'fortunate,' 'happy' (from دُمای 'a bird of happy omen,' 'Humāy'); گردون *gardūn*, 'the celestial orb,' 'a wheel' (from گرد 'revolving'); واژون *wāzhūn*, 'inverted,' 'unfortunate' (from واژ 'inverted').

Rem. The suffixes ونَد and اوند are also *relative*, and are common in Persian, although not frequently occurring in Urdū: *e.g.* خداوند 'pertaining to God,' 'a lord,' خویشاوند 'pertaining, or related, to self,' 'a kinsman.' These suffixes are all no doubt derived from the Sanskrit वन्त *vant*, nom. वान् *vān*.

6) ـه *ā*; as اُستُرَه *ustura*, 'a razor' (from اُستَر the root of اُستَرْدَن 'to shave'); دَستَه *dasta*, 'a handle' (from دَست 'hand'); زبانه *zabāna*, 'flame' (of fire, etc.), from زبان 'tongue'; دهانه *dahāna*, 'the bit of a bridle' (from دهان 'mouth'); روزَه *roza*, 'pertaining to a day' (from روز 'day'); سالَه *sāla*, 'pertaining to a year'; یک طرفه *yak-tarfā*, 'pertaining to one side,' 'one-sided' (from یک طرف 'one side').

Rem. The suffix ـه is sometimes redundant, as in چاره *chāra*, کینه *kīna*, آواز *āwāza*.

7) ـین *īn*, denoting, besides *relation*, the *material* of which a thing is made; as زرین *zarīn*, 'golden' (from زر 'gold'); رنگین *rangīn*, 'coloured' (from رنگ 'colour'); سنگین *sangīn*, 'of stone'; نمکین *namakīn*, 'salty'; پوستین *postīn*, 'a cloak or jacket made of a skin' (پوست).

Rem. In lieu of —ین the form —ینه sometimes occurs: *e.g.* پشمینه *pashmīna*, 'made of wool,' 'woollen;' گنجینه *ganjīna*, 'that which is obtained from a repository of treasure,' 'a treasury.' The suffix —ین is also used in forming the superlative degree, and is added to many words to form degrees of comparison: as پیشین *peshīn*, 'anterior;' پسین *pasīn*, 'posterior.' It is sometimes redundant: *e.g.* اولیس *awwalīn* = اول 'first.'

8) —ی *ī*, forming *patronymics* and other *relative adjectives*; as پارسی *pārsī*, 'of Persia,' 'Persian;' هندی *hindī*, 'of India,' 'Indian;' شاهي *shāhī*, 'pertaining to a king,' 'royal;' آتشی *ātishī*, 'of fire,' 'fiery;' خونی *khūnī*, 'sanguinary,' 'bloody,' 'a murderer.' If the final letter of the noun be ـا *a*, it is changed into ـگ before the suffix; *e.g.* خانگی *khānagī* (or *khāngī*) 'pertaining to the house,' 'domestic.'

Rem. —ی is occasionally redundant, chiefly at the end of Arabic words: *e.g.* اعتقاد *itikādī* = اعتقاد 'to believe firmly;' زیادت *ziyādātī* = زیادت 'increase,' 'excess.'

93. Adjectives denoting *colour*, or similitude of colour, are formed by means of the suffixes فام *fām*, and گون *gūn*, as سیاه فام *siyāh-fām*, 'blackish;' لعل فام *lā'l-fām*, 'ruby-coloured;' گلگون *gul-gūn*, 'rose-coloured;' لاله گون *lāla-gūn*, 'tulip-coloured.'

Rem. فام may also take the forms وام *wām*, پام *pām*, and بام *bām*; and in place of گون the form گونه is occasionally found.

94. Adjectives and substantives denoting *fellowship*, *companionship*, *equality*, etc., are formed by prefixing to a substantive the adverb هم *ham*, signifying 'together,' 'same,' and corresponding to the English 'fellow,' 'mate,'

‘con-,’ ‘co-;’ as هم درَد *ham-dard*, ‘fellow-sufferer,’ ‘sympathetic’ (from درَد ‘pain’); هم جنس *ham-jins*, ‘of the same genus, or class,’ ‘congener,’ ‘homogeneous;’ هم عمر *ham-umr*, ‘of the same age,’ ‘coeval;’ هم سبق *ham-sabaq*, ‘a class-fellow’ (from سبق ‘a lesson’).

Rem. هم may also occur as the latter part of a compound, a preposition being prefixed to it: e.g. باهم *bāham*, ‘together,’ ‘along with;’ برهم *bar-ham*, ‘upon one another,’ ‘confused,’ ‘jumbled,’ ‘angry,’ درهم *dar-ham*, ‘one under another,’ ‘higgledy-piggledy,’ ‘confused,’ ‘angry.’

95. NOUNS OF PLACE, or اسمائے مکان *asmā’ē makān*, called also اسمائے ظرف *asmā’ē zurūf* (‘nouns that express the vessels which contain things’), are formed: a) by placing after a noun one of the following nouns:

1) آباد *ābād*, ‘populated by,’ ‘city;’ as اِلاد آباد *ilāh-ābād*, ‘the city of God,’ (Anglice) ‘Allahabad;’ اکبر آباد *akbar-ābād*, ‘the city of Akbar,’ ‘Agra;’ شاه جهان آباد *shāh-jahān-ābād*, ‘the city of Shāh-jahān,’ ‘Dehli.’

2) گاه *gāh*, ‘place;’ as شکار گاه *shikār-gāh*, ‘hunting-ground;’ عبادت گاه *ibūdat-gāh*, ‘place of worship;’ خواب گاه *khawāb-gāh*, ‘sleeping-place,’ ‘bed-chamber.’

Rem. گاه also signifies ‘time,’ and is used to form nouns of time (اسمائے زمان *asmā’ē zamān*); as سحر گاه *saḥar-gāh*, ‘morning’ (from سحر ‘dawn’); شام گاه *shām gāh*, ‘eventide’ (from شام ‘evening’).

3) خانه *khāna*, ‘house;’ as کار خانه *kār-klāna*, ‘a workshop;’ کُتُب خانه *kutub-klāna*, ‘a library’ (from کُتُب pl. of کتاب ‘a book’); قید خانه *kaid-klāna*, ‘a prison’ (from قید ‘imprisonment:’ in India the compound جیل خانه, from the English ‘jail,’ is also commonly used).

Rem. The words آباد, گاه, and خانه must not be regarded as suffixes.

The construction is that of the inverted genitive (§ 73), and forms *ūe*-terminative compounds.

٦) By adding the following suffixes to nouns :

1) *-istān* (the Sanskrit स्थान *sthāna*); as گلستان *gul-istān*, 'a rose-garden;' کوهستان *koh-istān*, 'a mountainous region;' ریگستان *reg-istān*, 'a sandy place.' If the noun end in a vowel, the initial vowel of the suffix is dropped: e.g. بوستان *būstān*, 'a place of fragrance,' 'a garden.'

2) *-shan*; as گلشن *gul-shan*, 'a rose-bed, or rose-garden.'

3) *-nā*, or *-nā'e*; as آبناے *ūb-nā'e* 'a strait;' تنگناے *tang nā'e*, 'a narrow place,' 'a defile,' 'a strait' (also تنگنا *tangnā*).

A variety of the noun of place is the *noun of multitude* (اسم کثرت *ismē kaṣrat*), which designates the place where the object signified by the noun to which the suffix is added, is found in large numbers or quantities. It is formed by means of the following suffixes :

1) *-zār*; as گلزار *gul-zār*, 'a place where roses abound,' 'a rose-garden;' سبزه زار *sabza-zār*, 'a place where verdure abounds,' 'a meadow;' بازار *bā-zār* (contracted from ابا بازار), 'a place where provisions (ابا) abound,' 'a market.'

2) *-sār*; as شاخسار *shākh-sār*, 'abounding in branches,' 'a place where branchy trees abound;' نمکسار *namak-sār*, 'abounding in salt,' 'salty,' 'a salt-mine;' رخسار *rukh-sār*, 'the cheek,' 'the face.'

3) *-bār*; as سنگبار *sang-bār*, 'a place abounding in stone,' 'a stone-pit;' جویبار *jo'e-bār*, 'a place abounding in streams;' زنگبار *zang-bār*, 'the country inhabited by the Ethiopians,' 'Zanguebar.'

Rem. بار is related to the Sanskrit वार *vāra*, 'a multitude.' It has other significations also; e.g. a) 'permission,' 'approach to royalty,' as in دربار *darbār*, 'the court or levee of a prince;' b) 'time,' 'turn,' as یکبار *yak-bār*, 'one-time,' 'once.' With the suffix بار must not be confounded the root of the verb باریدن 'to rain,' which occurs in compounds: e.g. گوهر بار *gauhar-bār*, 'raining or scattering pearls.'

4) لākh; as سنگلاخ *sang-lākh*, 'a place abounding in stone;' دیولākh (or de'o-lākh), 'a place abounding in demons.'

96. Connected with the noun of place is the 'noun which is the vessel or receptacle (ظرف) of a thing,' and which is formed by means of the suffix دان *dān*; e.g. نمکدان *namak-dān*, 'a salt-cellar;' شمعدان *shamā-dān*, 'a candle-stick;' قلمدان *kalam-dān*, 'a pen-case.'

Rem. This suffix is added to Hindī nouns also, and may take the form دانی; e.g. اگالدان *ugāl-dān*, (or اگلدانی *ugāl-dānī*), 'a spit-box;' پیکدان *pīk-dān* (or پیکدانی *pīk-dānī*), 'a spittoon'—properly, 'a vessel for receiving the *ugāl* or *pīk*, i.e. the juice of the betel-leaf which is spit out.' Nouns (masc.) ending in ā are inflected before the affix is added: e.g. چوھے دان *chūhe-dān*, 'a mouse-trap, or rat-trap.'

97. ABSTRACT NOUNS are of two kinds: a) those which denote states or acts, and are verbal, being derived from infinitives, or roots of verbs:

1) By dropping the final ن of infinitives; as خرید *kharīd*, 'purchase,' from خریدن 'to buy;' درخواست *dar-khawāst*, 'request,' from درخواستن 'to desire or request;' فروخت *farokht*, 'sale,' from فروختن 'to sell.'

2) By adding the suffixes تار *tār* and دار *dār* to apocopated infinitives; the former to those which end in تن *tan*,

and the latter to those ending in *دان* *dan*; e.g. گفتار *guftār*, 'saying,' 'speech;' رفتار *raftār*, 'gait,' 'procedure;' دیدار *dīdar*, 'seeing,' 'sight.'

3) By adding to the roots of verbs the suffix *اک* *āk*; as تپاک *tapāk*, 'agitation;' خوراک *khurāk*, 'food;' سوزاک *sozāk*, 'inflammation,' 'strangury.'

4) By adding the suffix *ان* *ān* to verbal roots; as فرمان *farmān*, 'command' (the Sanskrit प्रमाण *pramāṇa*); باران *bārān*, 'rain.'

5) By adding the suffix *ش* *ish* to verbal roots; as خواهش *khwāhish*, 'desire,' 'wish;' پرورش *parwarish*, 'nurture,' 'support;' بینش *bīnish*, 'seeing,' 'discernment;' دانش *dānish*, 'knowledge,' 'wisdom.'

Rem. This suffix often forms abstract nouns of *quality* also.

6) By adding the suffix *ا* *a* to verbal roots; as لرزه *larza* = لرزش 'tremor;' ناله *nāla* = نالish 'lamentation;' سفیدی *sufaida* = سفیدی 'whiteness.'

b) Those which denote *qualities*: they are formed by means of the suffixes:

1) *ا* *ā*, added to adjectives; as گرم *garmā*, 'heat,' 'summer;' سرد *sarmā*, 'cold,' 'winter.'

2) *ی* *ī*, added chiefly to adjectives, primitive and verbal; as دوستی *dosī*, 'friendship;' نیکی *neki*, 'goodness;' سفیدی *sufaiī*, 'whiteness;' دانایی *dānāī*, 'wisdom;' خدمتگاری *khidmatgārī*, 'service;' عقلمندی *aqlmandī*, 'sense,' 'wisdom.' If the final letter of a Persian adjective be *ا* *a*, it is changed into *گ* *g* before the termination is added; e.g. بندگی *bandagī*, 'service;' تازگی *tāzagī*, 'freshness;' چسبندگی *chaspīdagī*, 'adhesiveness,' 'attachment' (from

چسپیدہ the pass. part. of چسپیدن ‘to stick’); but if the adjective be an Arabic word, the final *h* is changed to *t* (or rather the original *ṣ t*, which on account of the loss of the final vowel became *s h*, is restored); *e.g.* زیادتِ زیادتی *ziyādatī*, ‘excess,’ from زیادہ *ziyāda*, ‘more,’ ‘excessive.’

98. THE DIMINUTIVE is formed by means of the following suffixes :

1) اک *ak* (used chiefly with nouns denoting animate things); as مردک *mardak*, ‘a manikin,’ ‘a contemptible man;’ طفلک *tiflak*, ‘a little child;’ اسپک *aspak*, ‘a small horse,’ ‘a pony;’ دستک *dastak*, ‘a small hand,’ ‘a tap at a door;’ زنبورک *zambūrak*, ‘a small gun or swivel.’

2) چہ *cha*, or یچہ *īcha*, or زہ *za*, or یزہ *īza* (چ being interchangeable with ج, ز, and ژ); as باغچہ *bāgcha*, and باغیچہ *bāgīcha*, ‘a small garden;’ چمچہ *chamcha*, ‘a spoon;’ دیگچہ *degcha*, ‘a small caldron,’ ‘a pot;’ کُوچہ *kūcha*, ‘a lane;’ چوزہ *chūza*, ‘a young bird,’ ‘a chicken;’ دوشیزہ *doshīza*, ‘a virgin;’ مشکیزہ *mashkīza*, ‘a small leather bottle.’

Rem. a. *s* being interchangeable with *l* in Urdū, this suffix sometimes takes the form چا; *e.g.* دیگچا *degchā*; whence, by forming the Hindī diminutive thereof, دیگچی *degchī*.

Rem. b. Diminutive forms are commonly used in Persian and Urdū to express *contempt*, *endearment*, *regard*, etc.

99. Compounds occur in great variety of forms in Persian, and many such are borrowed by the Urdū. The most important of these—the Determinative and the Attributive—have been noticed in treating of the genitive case, and the adjective (§§ 73, 78). There remains :

THE COPULATIVE COMPOUND.

This may be composed: 1) of two verbal roots or imperatives: *a*) either one and the same verb repeated, and the last a negative; as *دار و مدار* *dār-ma-dār* (and *دار و مدار*), 'hold, hold not,' 'adjustment of a dispute;' *کش و مکش* *kash-ma-kash* (and *کش و مکش*), 'pull, pull not,' 'pulling backwards and forwards,' 'distraction,' 'tumult;' *b*) or of two different verbs; as *دار و گیر* *dār-gīr* (and *دار و گیر*), 'seizing,' 'pomp,' 'tumult.'

2) of an apocopated infinitive and the root of the same verb; as *گفت و گو* *guft-gū* (and *گفت و گو*), 'conversation;' *جست و جو* *just-jū* (and *جست و جو*), 'search,' 'quest.'

3) of two apocopated infinitives; as *آمد و رفت* *āmad-raft* (and *آمد و رفت*), 'coming and going,' 'intercourse;' *گفت و شنود* *guft o shanūd*, 'speaking and hearing,' 'colloquy,' 'altercation.'

4) of two nouns of different signification, as *پای و پر* *pa'e-o-par*, 'power;' or of the same signification, as *جو جو* *jau jau*, 'grain, grain,' 'grain by grain;' *کَل و قَال* *kāl o kāl*, 'speech and response,' 'discourse.'

Rem. To this class also belong those compounds in which the last word (which is used merely to rhyme or jingle with the first) is called the *تابع* *tābi* or *appositive*, by the native grammarians: *e.g.* *هرج و مرج* *harj-marj*, 'confusion,' 'tumult.'

Two words, whether the same or different, are often connected by means of the letter *و*, which may have the signification: *a*) of *و*, 'and;' *e.g.* *کشاکش* *kashā-kash*, 'pulling one way and the other,' 'distraction,' 'tumult;' *رستاخیز* *rastā-khez*, 'escaping and rising,' 'the day of resurrection;'

تَکَاوُ *tagāpū*, 'running and running,' 'diligent search,' 'bustle,' 'toil.'

b) of close proximity; as برابر *barā-bar*, 'breast to breast,' 'on a level with,' 'equal,' لبالب *labā-lab*, 'lip to lip,' 'brimful,' دَمادَم *damā-dam*, 'moment to moment,' 'each moment,' 'continually.'

c) totality or completeness; e.g. سراسر *sarā-sar*, 'from end to end,' 'throughout,' 'altogether,' سراپا *sarā-pā*, 'from head to foot,' 'completely.'

Rem. Similarly two members of a compound are often connected by the preposition به *ba* 'to,' etc., e.g. دم بدم *dam-ba-dam*, 'from moment to moment,' 'each instant,' جایجا *jā-ba-jā*, 'from place to place,' 'one place after another,' یکت یکت *yak-ba-yak*, 'one by one,' دست دست *dast-ba-dast* 'hand in hand,' 'from hand to hand,' 'quick,' 'prompt.'

NUMERALS.

100. The following Table gives the leading Cardinal Numbers:

یک <i>yak</i>	1	دوازده <i>duwāzdah</i> . . .	12
دو <i>du</i>	2	سیزده <i>sīzdah</i>	13
سه <i>sih</i>	3	چهارده <i>chahārdah</i> . . .	14
چهار <i>chahār</i>	4	پانزده <i>pānzdah</i> . . .	15
پنج <i>panj</i>	5	شانزده <i>shānzdah</i> . . .	16
شش <i>shash</i>	6	هفده <i>hafdah</i>	17
هفت <i>haft</i>	7	هشده <i>hashdah</i>	18
هشت <i>hasht</i>	8	نوزده <i>nūzdah</i>	19
نُه <i>nuh</i>	9	بیست <i>bīst</i>	20
ده <i>dah</i>	10	بیست و یک <i>bīst-o-yak</i> . . .	21
یازده <i>yāzdah</i>	11	بیست و دو <i>bīst-o du</i> . . .	22

سی <i>sī</i>	30	سیصد <i>sī-ṣad</i> . . .	300
چهل <i>chihāl</i> . . .	40	چهارصد <i>chahār-ṣad</i>	400
پانجاه <i>panjāh</i> . .	50	پانصد <i>pān-ṣad</i> . .	500
شصت <i>shasht</i> . . .	60	ششصد <i>shash-ṣad</i> .	600
هفتاد <i>haftād</i> . .	70	هفتصد <i>haft-ṣad</i> . .	700
هشتاد <i>hashtād</i> . .	80	هشتصد <i>hasht-ṣad</i> .	800
نود <i>nuvad</i> . . .	90	نهد <i>nuh-ṣad</i> . .	900
صد <i>ṣad</i>	100	هزار <i>hazār</i> . . .	1000
صد و یک <i>ṣad-o-yak</i> .	101	ده هزار <i>dah hāzār</i> .	10,000
دو صد <i>dū-ṣad</i> . .	200	لک <i>lak</i>	100,000

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

101. The ordinal numbers are formed by adding the termination *um* to the corresponding cardinals, but in the *third* and the *ninth* (optionally) the final *s* is changed into *w*, before the termination is added; *e.g.* *yakum*, 'first;'; *duwum*, 'second;'; *siwum*, 'third,' etc.; *nuhum*, or *nuwum*, 'ninth;'; *dahum*, 'tenth,' and so on. If the number lie between the *decades* (as *بیست و دو*), the termination is added to the last word; *e.g.* *bīst-o-duwum*, 'twenty-second.'

DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

102. The distributives are formed, as in Hindī and Urdū, by repeating the cardinals: *e.g.* *yak yak*, 'one at a time,' 'singly,' 'one apiece;'; *dū dū*, 'two at a time,' 'by twos,' 'two apiece.'

MULTIPLICATIVES.

103. Multiplicatives are formed by adding to the cardinals: 1) the adverb *chand*, 'so many:': *e.g.* *dū chand*

du-chand, 'twofold;' 2) the suffix تا *tā*; as يكتا *yak-tā*, 'single,' دوتا *du-tā*, 'double:' 3) the suffix گانه *gāna* (corresponding to the Hindī affix گُنا *gunā*): *e.g.* يگانه *yagāna*, 'single' (for يک گانه, by contraction); دوغانه *du-gāna*, 'double.'

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

104. The numeral adverbs 'once,' 'twice,' etc., are expressed by adding to the cardinals the word بار *bār*, or باره *bāra*, 'time,' or one of the synonymous Arabic words نوبت *naubat*, مرتبه *martaba*, or دَفْعَة *daf'a*: *e.g.* يگبار *yak-bār*, or يگباره *yak-bāra*, يک نوبت *yak-naubat*, etc., 'once;' دُوبار *du-bār*, دُوباره *du-bāra*, دُونُوبت *du-naubat*, etc., 'twice.' The adverbs 'firstly,' 'secondly,' etc., are expressed by the ordinals: *e.g.* يکُم *yakum*, 'firstly,' دُوم *duwum*, 'secondly,' etc.

ARABIC CONSTRUCTIONS.

105. Nearly all Arabic words are derived from some verbal root, consisting for the most part of *three* letters, with the help of one or more of the seven letters of augmentation (or, as they are commonly termed, *servile* letters) *y, t, s, m, n, ū, ā*, or *a*, which are comprised in the word يَتَسَمَّنُوا *yatasammanū*. A large number of verbal nouns are derived from the ground form of the triliteral verb, but it is not necessary to notice more of these than occur in Urdū; the models (or, as they are technically termed, the *measures*) of such are given below with examples. In these measures, as in those of all the derived forms to be noticed, the letters ف, ع, ل, of the root فعل 'acting,' are employed to indicate *radical* letters, and the servile ة to represent final *s* and ت of the Urdū.

MEASURE.	EXAMPLE.	MEASURE.	EXAMPLE.
1. فَعَلَ	قَتَلَ <i>qatl</i> , 'killing.'	17. فَعَالَ	دَعَا <i>du'ā</i> , 'praying.' ¹
2. فَعِلَ	عِلِمَ <i>ilm</i> , 'knowing.'	18. فَعُولَ	قَبُولَ <i>qabūl</i> , 'accepting.'
3. فَعَّلَ	حَكَّمَ <i>ḥukm</i> , 'ordering.'	19. فُعُولَ	حُصُولَ <i>ḥuṣūl</i> , 'acquiring.'
4. فَعَلَّ	طَلَّبَ <i>ṭalab</i> , 'seeking.'	20. فَعْلَانَ	حِرْمَانَ <i>ḥirmān</i> , 'repelling.'
5. فَعِلَّ	صَغَرَ <i>ṣiḡar</i> , 'being small.'	21. فُعْلَانَ	غُفْرَانَ <i>guḥfrān</i> , 'forgiving.'
6. فَعَلَّ	هُدَى <i>hudā</i> , 'guiding aright.'	22. فَعْلَانَ	خَفَقَانَ <i>khafaqān</i> , 'palpi- tating.'
7. فَعَّلَ	رَحِمَتْ <i>raḥmat</i> , 'pitying.'	23. فَعَالَةَ	سَعَادَتَ <i>sa'adat</i> , 'being happy.'
8. فَعَّلَ	رَحَلَتْ <i>riḥlat</i> , 'travelling.'	24. فَعَالَةَ	كِتَابَتَ <i>kitābat</i> , 'writing.'
9. فَعَّلَ	قُدِّرَتْ <i>qudrat</i> , 'being able.'	25. فَعَالَةَ	بُغَايَتَ <i>bug'āyat</i> , 'rebellng.'
10. فَعَّلَ	حَرَكَتْ <i>ḥarakat</i> , 'moving.'	26. فُعُولَةَ	صُعُوبَتَ <i>u'ūbat</i> , 'being difficult.'
11. فَعَّلَ	سَرَقَ <i>sariqa</i> , 'stealing.'	27. فَعْلِيَّةَ	رَفَاهِيَّةَ <i>rafāhiyat</i> , 'being ample.'
12. فَعَّلِي	دَعَوَى <i>da'wā</i> , 'asserting.'	28. مَفْعَلَ	مَرْجَعَ <i>marja'</i> , 'returning.'
13. فَعَّلِي	ذَكَرَى <i>zikrā</i> , 'remembering.'	29. مَفْعَلَةَ	مَرْحَمَتَ <i>marḥamat</i> , 'pity- ing.'
14. فَعَّلِي	بُشِّرَى <i>bushrā</i> , 'communi- cating goodness.'	30. مَفْعَلَةَ	مَمْلُكَتَ <i>mamlukat</i> , 'having dominion.'
15. فَعَالَ	سَلَامَ <i>salām</i> , 'being safe.'		
16. فَعَالَ	قِيَامَ <i>kiyām</i> , 'standing.'		

All these forms cannot be derived from *one* verbal root; very few verbs have more than two or three, and the majority admit of but one form. Some of the measures (for example Nos. 10, 11, 18) offer very few examples in Urdū.

¹ دَعَا *du'ā* was originally دَعَاو (from the root دَعَو). In verbal nouns of the measures of Nos. 15, 16, 17, final و or ي is in Arabic changed into *hamza* (as generally happens when they follow the *alif* of prolongation), but the Persians and Indians drop the *hamza*, unless the noun is in the *status constructus*, and the *izāfat* is used.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES.

106. Other important derivatives are the *verbal* adjectives. The *measures* of those which commonly occur in Urdū are:

- 1) فاعِل—the Active Participle, or Noun of Agency: *e.g.*
 عالم *‘ālim*, ‘a learned man’ (from علم ‘to know’);
 حاکم *hākīm*, ‘a judge,’ etc. (from حکم ‘to judge’);
 صابر *ṣābir*, ‘patient’ (from صبر ‘to be patient’);
 غافل *gāfil*, ‘negligent’ (from غفل ‘to neglect’).

Rem. If the second radical of the verbal root be و or ي, it is changed into *hamza* (أ) in the active participle; *e.g.* قائم *kā’im*, ‘standing’ (from قوم ‘to stand’). If the second and third radicals be identical, the second rejects its vowel and unites with the third so as to form a double letter, which is marked with *tashdīd*: *e.g.* خاص *khāṣṣ*, ‘special’ (from خصص); as however *tashdīd* over a final (vowelless) letter is useless, it is dropped in Urdū: *e.g.* خاص *khāṣ*. If the third radical be *hamza* (أ), or و, it is changed into ي: *e.g.* خالی *khālī*, ‘empty’ (from خلو).

- 2) مفعول—the Passive Participle: *e.g.* معلوم *ma’lūm*,
 ‘known’ (from علم ‘to know’); منظور *manẓūr*,
 ‘seen,’ ‘approved’ (from نظر ‘to see’).

Rem. If the second radical letter be و, it is elided in the pass. part., but throws back its *zamma* upon the preceding vowelless letter: مقول *maqūl*, ‘said’ (from قول ‘to say’). If the second radical be ي, the same thing takes place, but, to indicate the elision of radical ي, the *zamma* is changed into *kasra*, and the servile و is in consequence changed into ي: *e.g.* مبيع *mabī’*, ‘sold’ (from بيع ‘to sell’). If the third radical be و, it is elided: *e.g.* مدعو *mad‘ū*, ‘called,’ ‘invited’ (from دعو ‘to call’).

- 3) **فَعِيل**—a form expressing either an inherent or permanent quality, or a degree of intensity: *e.g.* **حَكِيم** *hakīm*, ‘a sage’ (from **حَكَم** ‘to judge,’ etc.); **رَحِيم** *rahīm*, ‘very compassionate’ (from **رَحِمَ** ‘to have mercy’).

Rem. Adjectives of the three measures noticed above are commonly used as substantives also.

- 4) **فَعُول**—a form with the same signification as the preceding: *e.g.* **صَبُور** *ṣabūr*, ‘very patient’ (from **صَبَرَ** ‘to be patient’); **غَفُور** *gafūr*, ‘very forgiving’ (from **غَفَرَ** ‘to forgive’).

Rem. Verbal adjectives of the measures **فَعِيل** and **فَعُول**, derived from verbs of which the third radical is **و**, or **ي**, are subject to the same changes as those of the form **مَفْعُول**: *e.g.* **نَبِي** *nabī*, ‘a prophet’ (from **نَبَوَ**).

- 5) **أَفْعَل**—the measure of *the noun of preeminence* (**إِسْمُ تَفْضِيل**) *ismē tafzīl*). It has the signification of the English comparative and superlative, and is formed from verbal adjectives with three radicals, or with three radicals and a letter of prolongation: *e.g.* **أَحْسَن** *aḥsan*, ‘more or most beautiful’ (from **حَسَنَ** *ḥasan*, ‘beautiful’); **أَفْضَل** *afḥal*, ‘more or most excellent’ (from **فَاضَلَ** *fāḥil*, ‘excellent’); **أَكْبَر** *akbar*, ‘greater,’ ‘greatest’ (from **كَبِيرَ** *kabīr*, ‘great’). This measure is also used for adjectives denoting *colour*, or *deformity*, derived from neuter triliteral verbs: *e.g.* **أَحْمَر** *aḥmar*, ‘red;’ **أَصْفَر** *aṣfar*, ‘yellow;’ **أَعْرَج** *ʿaraj*, ‘lame’ (by nature); **أَعْمَى** *ʿamā*, ‘blind.’

6) فَعَال—the measure of *the noun of intensiveness* (إِسْمٌ مُبَالِغَةٌ *ismē mubālaga*). Its signification approaches very nearly to that of the measures فَعِيل and فَعُول: e.g. كَذَّاب *kazzāb*, ‘a great, or habitual, liar;’ ظَالِم *ẓallām*, ‘very tyrannical;’ عَلَام *allām*, ‘very learned.’ The same form is commonly used for nouns which indicate *professions and trades*: e.g. بَزَّاز *bazzāz*, ‘a cloth-merchant;’ بَقَّال *baqqāl*, ‘a greengrocer’ (but, in India), ‘a grain-merchant’ (= بَنِيَا *banīyā*); صَرَّاف *ṣarrāf*, ‘a money-changer,’ ‘a banker.’ By adding the termination *ma* to this form with the first signification, still greater intensiveness is given to the meaning; as عَلَامَةٌ *allāma*, ‘exceedingly learned.’

Rem. Other adjectives of the measures فَعْل - فُعْل - فُعْل - فَعْل - فَعْل - فُعْل, also occur in Urdū: e.g. صَعْب *ṣa'b*, ‘difficult,’ صِفْر *ṣifr*, ‘empty,’ ‘a cypher,’ صَلْب *ṣu'ib*, ‘hard,’ حَسَن *hasan*, ‘good,’ ‘beautiful,’ خَشِن *khashin*, ‘rough,’ جَبَان *jabān*, ‘cowardly,’ شُجَاع *shujā*, ‘brave,’ عَطْشَان *atshān*, ‘thirsty,’ عُرْيَان *uryān*, ‘naked;’ but as these are not to be distinguished by their forms from verbal nouns, they can only be learned by reading.

107. From triliteral roots are derived other forms of verbal nouns also, which, since two or more of the servile letters occur in them, are termed *augmented infinitives* (مَصْدَرٌ مَزِيدٌ *maṣdarē mazīd*) by the native grammarians. It will be more convenient to speak of them as verbal nouns of the *second, third, etc.*, derived forms. These

verbal nouns moreover have corresponding adjectives, similar to the *فَاعِل* and *مَفْعُول* of the *first* or ground form of the triliteral verb. The measures of both are given below, with examples.

a) VERBAL NOUNS OF THE DERIVED FORMS.

II. *تَفْعِيل* } — e.g. *تَفْرِيح* *tafrīh*, ‘gladdening’ (from *فَرَح* ‘being glad’); *تَعْلِيم* *ta’līm*, ‘teaching’ (from *عَلِم* ‘to know’); *تَذْكِرَة* *taẓkira*, ‘reminding’ (from *ذَكَر* ‘to remember’); *تَفْرِيقَة* *tafriqa*, ‘scattering,’ ‘distributing’ (from *فَرَق* ‘to separate’). Of the two measures, the first is the more common, the last is used chiefly where the third radical letter is *و* or *ي*.

III. *مُفَاعَلَة* } — e.g. *مُقَابَلَة* *mukābala*, ‘facing,’ ‘confronting’ (from *قَبَلَ* ‘being opposite,’ ‘coming towards’); *مُقَاتَلَة* *mukātala*, and *قِتَال* *kitāl*, ‘fighting’ (from *قَتَلَ* ‘killing’); *مُجَادَلَة* *mujādala*, and *جِدَال* *jidāl*, ‘contending,’ ‘disputing’ (from *جَدَلَ* ‘contending’); *مُحَافَظَة* *muhāfaẓat*, ‘guarding’ (from *حَفَظَ* ‘to preserve’). The first of the two measures is of more frequent occurrence than the second.

Rem. If the third radical of the verb be *و* or *ي*, it is changed into *ا*: e.g. *مُلَاقَات* *mulāqāt*, ‘meeting,’ from *لَقِيَ* ‘to meet.’

IV. *إِفْعَال* — e.g. *إِجْرَا* *ijrā*, ‘causing to flow’ (from *جَرَى* ‘to flow’); *إِخْرَاج* *ikhṛāj*, ‘causing to go out,’

‘issuing’ (from *خرج* ‘to go out’); *إنكار* *inkār*, ‘denying’ (from *نكر* ‘not knowing or acknowledging’).

Rem. If the *first* of the radical letters be *و*, it is changed into *ي*: e.g. *إيفاء* (for *أوفاء*), *īfā*, ‘performing a promise’ (from *وفي*). If the *second* radical be *و* or *ي*, it is elided, but throws back its vowel upon the vowelless first radical, and the termination *ت* *t* is added by way of compensation: e.g. *إعانة* *ē‘ānat*, ‘helping’ (for *أعوان*, from *عون*). If the *third* radical be *و* or *ي*, it is changed into *hamza*: e.g. *إعفاء* *ē‘fā*, ‘granting freedom, or pardon’ (from *عفو*); in Persian and Urdū however the *hamza* is dropped, unless the noun is in the *status constructus*, and the *izāfat* is used.

v. *تَفَعَّلَ*—e.g. *تَكَبَّرَ* *takabbur*, ‘making oneself great,’ ‘being proud’ (from *تَكَبَّرَ* *takbīr*, ‘making great’); *تَصَوَّرَ* *taṣawwur*, ‘picturing to oneself,’ ‘conceiving’ (from *تَصَوَّرَ* *taṣwīr*, ‘making a picture’).

Rem. If the third radical be *و* or *ي* (*و* is always changed into *ي*, and), the influence of the *ي* changes the *zamma* of the penult syllable into *kasra*: e.g. *تَسَلَّى* *tasallī*, ‘becoming comforted’ (from *سلي*).

vi. *تَفَاعَلَ*—e.g. *تَنَاسَبَ* *tanāsub*, ‘resembling,’ ‘being related’ (from *مُنَاسَبَت* *munāsabat*, ‘being related to’); *تَقَارَبَ* *takārub*, ‘approaching’ (one another), from *مُقَارَبَت* *mukārabat*, ‘approaching.’

Rem. If the third radical be *و* or *ي*, the same change is made as in the *fifth* form: e.g. *تَدَاوَى* *tadāwī*, ‘treating oneself medically’ (from *دوي*). The Persians frequently change the final *ي* of such

words into اء; as تماشا tamannā, 'desire,' تماشا tamāshā, 'spectacle,' 'recreation,' 'fun.'

VII. اِنْفَعَال—e.g. اِنْفِصَال infisāl, 'being decided' (from فصل 'to decide'); اِنْكِشَاف inkishāf, 'being uncovered, or revealed' (from كشف 'to open or reveal').

Rem. If the third radical be و or ي, it is changed into hamza, which however is, as usual, dropped in Urdū: e.g. اِنْطِفَا (for اِنْطِفَا), intifā, 'being extinguished' (from طفي).

VIII. اِنْتِعَال—e.g. اِجْتِمَاع ijtīmā', 'becoming collected,' 'assembling' (from جمع 'to collect'); اِعتِرَاض i'tirāz, 'putting oneself in the way,' 'opposing' (from عرض 'to place'—before one); اِقتِدَار iktidār, 'becoming powerful' (from قدر 'to make powerful,' etc.).

Rem. If the first radical letter be ت t, the characteristic ت of this form unites with it into ت; as اِتِّبَاع ittibā', 'following' (from تبع). So also, if the first radical be و, it is changed into ت, which unites with the characteristic ت of the form into ت: e.g. اِتِّفَاق ittifāk, 'agreeing' (from وفق). If the first radical be د or ز, the characteristic ت of the form is changed into د, which unites with an initial د into د: e.g. اِدِّعَا iddi'ā, 'claiming one's rights' (from دعو); اِزْدِحَام izdi-ḥām, 'pressing,' 'crowding' (from زحم). If the first radical be ص or ط the characteristic ت of the form is changed into ط, which unites with initial ط, into ط: e.g. اِصْطِلَاح iṣṭilāḥ, 'a technical term' (from صلح); اِضْطِرَاب iẓtirāb, 'being agitated' (from ضرب); اِطِّلَا iṭṭilā', 'becoming informed' (from طلع).

ix.—This form does not occur in Urdū.

x. اِسْتَعَدَّ—e.g. اِسْتَعَدَّ isti'dād, 'getting oneself ready,' 'being ready' (from عَدَّ, the verbal noun of the *fourth* form of which, viz. اَعَدَّ i'dād, signifies 'making ready'); اِسْتَغْفَرَ istiḡfār, 'seeking forgiveness' (from غَفَرَ 'to forgive').

Rem. a. The changes which take place in this form are precisely similar to those which take place in the *fourth* form.

Rem. b. The following brief observations will throw light on the signification of these various forms :

The *second* (تَفَعَّلَ), and the *fourth* (اَفْعَلَ), are usually *causative* or *factive*. Verbs that are *intransitive* in the first form become *transitive* in these, and those that are *transitive* become *doubly transitive*, or *causative*. But in some instances the two forms have different meanings: e.g. I. عَلَّمَ 'ilm, 'knowing,' 'knowledge,' II. تَعَلَّمَ ta'lim, 'teaching,' IV. اَعْلَمَ i'lām, 'informing one of a thing.'

The *third* (مُفَاعَلَة), and the *sixth* (تَفَاعُلَ), commonly convey the idea of *reciprocity*, the latter necessarily so. When the first form is *transitive*, the third expresses the *effort* or *attempt* to perform that act upon the object; e.g. قَتَلَ katl, 'killing,' مُقَاتَلَهُ muḡātala, ('trying to kill, or) fighting with.' In the *sixth* form the idea of effort or attempt becomes *reflexive*: e.g. تَجَاهَلَ tajāhul, 'feigning ignorance.'

The *fifth* form (تَفَعَّلَ) is the reflexive of the *second*; but it is more commonly used with the *effective* signification, implying that an act is done to a person, or a state produced in him, whether caused by another or by himself: e.g. عَلَّمَ 'ilm, 'knowledge,' تَعَلَّمَ ta'lim, 'teaching,' تَعَلَّمَ ta'allum, 'becoming learned.' The idea of *intensiveness* (which is often found in the *second* form) exists in the *fifth* also: e.g. تَفَرَّقَ tafarruk,

'separation into many groups, or in various directions.' In English this form must often be rendered by the *passive*.

The *seventh* form (إِنْفَعَال) is *reflexive* or *effective* in signification, and approaches nearly to the *passive*, by which it must often be rendered into English.

The *eighth* form (إِفْعَال) is the *reflexive* of the *first*. The reflex object is either the accusative or the dative: e.g. اِعْتِرَاض *i'tirāḡ*, 'putting oneself in the way,' 'opposing' (from عَرَض 'placing something before one'); اِضْطِرَاب *iẓṭirāb*, 'moving oneself to and fro,' 'being agitated' (from ضَرَب 'beating'); اِكْتِدَار *iktidār*, 'seeking power for oneself,' 'becoming powerful' (from قَدَّر 'being powerful,' 'power'). The reflexive signification often gives rise to the *reciprocal* (which this form has in common with the *sixth*), and occasionally passes into the *passive*. In many cases too the eighth form has the same signification as the first.

The *tenth* form (اِسْتِفْعَال) is commonly used in the sense of *taking*, *seeking*, *asking for* or *demanding* what is signified by the *first*: e.g. اِسْتِغْفَار *istigfār*, 'asking forgiveness' (from غَفَرَ 'to forgive'). It also often converts the *factitive* signification of the *fourth* form into the *reflexive*: e.g. اِسْتِدَاد *isti'dād*, 'getting oneself ready,' 'being prepared' (from اَعْدَاد *i'dād*, 'making ready,' 'preparing').

Rem. c. The verbal nouns of the first and derived forms are commonly used as abstract substantives: e.g. عِلْم *ilm*, 'knowledge,' تَذْكِرَة *tazkira*, 'mention.'

b) VERBAL ADJECTIVES OF THE DERIVED FORMS.

The *measures* of these, with examples, are tabulated below. The difference between the form for the Active and that for the Passive Participle, consists simply in the vowel of the final syllable, the former taking *kasra*, and the latter *fatḥa*.

MEASURE OF ACT. PART.	EXAMPLE.	MEASURE OF PASS. PART.	EXAMPLE.
II. مَفْعَل	مَعْلَم <i>mō'allim</i> , 'a teacher' (from عَلِم).	مُفْعَل	مُعَلِّم <i>mō'allam</i> , 'taught.'
III. مُفَاعِل	مُحَافِظ <i>muḥāfiẓ</i> , 'guarding,' 'custodian' (from حَفِظ).	مُفَاعَل	مُحَافَظ <i>muḥāfaẓ</i> , 'guarded.'
IV. مُفْعِل	مُضْرِف <i>muṣrif</i> , 'squander- ing' (from صَرَف).	مُفْعَل	مُضْرَف <i>muṣraf</i> , 'squandered.'
V. مُتَفَعِّل	مُتَبَدِّل <i>mutabaddil</i> , 'chang- ing' (from بَدَل).	مُتَفَعَّل	مُتَبَدَّل <i>mutabaddal</i> , 'changed.'
VI. مُتَفَاعِل	مُتَعَارِف <i>muta'ārif</i> , 'knowing' (from عَرَف).	مُتَفَاعَل	مُتَعَارَف <i>muta'āraf</i> , 'known.'
VII. مُنْفَعِل	مُنْكَشِف <i>munkashif</i> , 'reveal- ing' (from كَشَف).	مُنْفَعَل	مُنْكَشَف <i>munkashaf</i> , 'revealed.'
VIII. مُنْفَعِل	مُعْتَمِد <i>mō'tamid</i> , 'trusting' (from عَمَد).	مُنْفَعَل	مُعْتَمَد <i>mō'tamad</i> , 'trusted.'
X. مُسْتَفْعِل	مُسْتَخْرِج <i>mustakhrij</i> , 'extract- ing' (from خَرَج).	مُسْتَفْعَل	مُسْتَخْرَج <i>mustakhraj</i> , 'extracted.'

108. Verbs consisting of four radicals also occur in Arabic, having a ground form and three derived forms; but the first and second forms alone occur in Urdū. Employing an additional ل to denote the fourth radical, the measures of the *verbal nouns* of these forms are:

- I. فَعْلَلَة—e.g. تَرْجَمَة *tarjama*, 'interpreting,' 'translation' (from تَرْجَم 'to interpret'); زَلْزَلَة *zalzala*, 'shaking' (from زَلَزَل 'to shake').
- II. تَفَعَّلَل—e.g. تَزَلْزُل *tazalzul*, 'becoming in a state of motion,' 'being shaken' (from زَلَزَل 'to shake').

109. The measures of the *verbal adjectives* corresponding to these nouns are :

- I. { مُفَعِّل (Act.)—e.g. مُتَرْجِم *mutarjim*, 'an interpreter.'
 مُفَعَّل (Pass.) مُتَرْجَم *mutarjam*, 'interpreted.'
- II. { مُتَفَعِّل (Act.)—e.g. مُتَزَلْزِل *mutazalzil*, 'shaking.'
 مُتَفَعَّل (Pass.) مُتَزَلْزَل *mutazalzal*, 'shaken.'

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

110. These, as used in Urdū, are properly determinative compounds, in which the first noun governs the second in the genitive. The governing noun is generally one which conveys the idea of *possession*, *origin*, etc. The following are examples of those which occur in Urdū :

1) أَبُو *abū*, or بُو *bū*, 'father,' 'originator,' etc.: e.g. أَبُو تُرَاب *abū-turāb* (or بُو تُرَاب), 'dusty,' from تُرَاب *turāb*, 'dust,' (*bū turāb* was the nickname given by Moḥammad to his son-in-law 'Alī); بُو الْعَجَب *bu'l'ajab*, 'cause of wonder,' 'wonderful'; بُو الْهَوَس *bu'l hawas*, 'causing desire,' 'desirous,' 'capricious.'

2) ذُو *zū*, 'owner,' 'possessor' (nom. sing. ذُو *zū*, gen. ذِي *zī*, nom. plur. أُولُو *ulū*, gen. and acc. ذَوِي *zawī* or أُولِي *ulī*): e.g. ذُو الْجَلَال *zū'l-jalāl*, 'possessor of glory,' 'glorious'; ذُو الْقَرْنَيْنِ *zū'l karnain*, 'possessor of two horns,' 'two-horned'; ذِي رُوح *zī-rūḥ*, 'animate,' اِسْتِعْدَاد *zī-istē dād*, 'capable,' 'qualified'; أُولُو الْأَبَابِ *ulu'l albāb*, 'intelligent persons'; أُولُو الْعِزْمِ *ulu'l azm*, 'firm,' 'resolute'; ذَوِي الْاِئْتِدَارِ *zawī'l iktidār*, 'powerful'; أُولِي الْاَبْصَارِ *ulī'l absār*, 'discerning,' 'wise.'

Rem The form ذِي *zī* occurs most frequently in Urdū, being used

even in ordinary conversation. It is combined with Persian words also: e.g. ذی ہوش *zī-hosh*, 'sensible,' 'intelligent.'

3) صاحب *ṣāhib*, 'companion,' 'possessor:' e.g. صاحب جمال *ṣāhib-jamāl*, 'beautiful;' صاحب نصیب *ṣāhib-naṣīb*, 'fortunate;' صاحب دل *ṣāhib-dil*, 'pious,' 'king,' *ṣāhib-takht*, 'a king.' In the last two examples the words *dil* and *takht* are Persian.

Rem. The genitive construction is occasionally indicated by the use of the *izāfat*: e.g. صاحب تخت *ṣāhibē takht*, 'possessor of the throne,' 'a king.' Such is always the case when the governing nouns are ارباب *arbāb* (pl. of رب *rabb*), 'lords,' 'possessors,' and اہل *ahl*, 'possessor;' ارباب خرد *arbābē khīrad*, 'intelligent or wise persons;' اہل عقل *ahlē āql*, 'wise.'

RELATIVE ADJECTIVES.

111. Relative adjectives are formed in the following ways: a) by adding to nouns (substantives, adjectives, or pronouns) and particles the suffix *تی* (which, in Urdū, is changed to *ی*, the *tashdīd* being dropped; but it is restored in the derivatives from the relative adjective). The suffix may often be added without any change taking place in the primitive noun: e.g. شمسی *shamṣī*, 'solar,' from شمس 'the sun;' انسانی *insānī*, 'human,' from انسان 'a human being;' حسینی *hösainī*, 'of, or relating to Hosain;' علمی *ilmī*, 'scientific,' from علم 'science;' نحوی *nahwī*, 'pertaining to grammar,' from نحو 'grammar.' In many cases however the noun undergoes some change in the auxiliary consonants, or in the vocalization, etc., before the suffix is added. In respect of these changes, so far as Urdū is concerned, the following rules may be laid down:

1) If the primitive noun be of the measure فَعِل, the *kasra* of the middle radical is changed into *fatha*: e.g. ملكي *malakī*, from ملك 'a king.'

2) The feminine termination ت or ة is rejected: e.g. حَقِيقَتِي *ḥaḳīkī*, from حَقِيقَة 'truth,' 'reality'; طَبِيعَتِي *tabī'ī*, from طَبِيعَة 'nature.'

3) Final ا, لِي and ي are changed into و before adding the termination ي, and *kasra* of the preceding letter is changed into *fatha*: e.g. عَصَوِي *aṣawī*, from عَصَا 'a staff; 'مَعْنَوِي *ma'nawī*, from مَعْنَى or مَعْنِي 'meaning,' دِهْلَوِي *dēh-lawī*, from دِهْلِي 'Dehlī.'

Rem. If, however, the primitive noun consist of more than four letters, final ا, لِي or ي are rejected: e.g. مُصْطَفِي *muṣṭafī*, from مُصْطَفًى 'chosen.'

6) by adding to nouns the termination اِنِي; as

جِسْمَانِي *jismānī*, 'corporeal,' from جِسْم 'body.'

رُوحَانِي *rūḥānī*, 'spiritual,' from رُوح 'spirit.'

نَفْسَانِي *naḥsānī*, 'pertaining to the soul,' 'lustful,' from نَفْس 'soul.'

نُورَانِي *nūrānī*, 'luminous,' 'bright,' from نُور 'light.'

ABSTRACT NOUNS OF QUALITY.

112. Abstract nouns of quality are formed by adding the feminine termination ت at to relative adjectives, or, which amounts to the same thing, by adding the termination يّات *īyat* to nouns and particles: e.g.

إِنْسَانِيّات *insānīyat*, 'humanity,' from إِنْسَانِي 'human.'

إِلَهِيّات *ilāhīyat*, 'divinity,' 'Godhead,' from إِلَهِي 'divine.'

كَيْفِيَّةٌ *kaifīyat*, 'quality,' from كَيْفِي (from كَيْف 'how?').

مَاهِيَّةٌ *māhīyat*, 'the what,' 'substance,' from مَا 'what?'¹

Rem. In a few words the Aramaic termination ^ةūt is used to form Abstract substantives; e.g. مَلَكُوت *malakūt*, 'royalty,' 'the world of angels,' from مَلِك *malik*, 'a king,' and مَلَك *malak*, 'an angel;'
جَبَرُوت *jabarūt*, 'omnipotence,' from جَبَّار *jabbār*, 'magnifying oneself.'

NOUNS OF PLACE AND TIME.

113. Nouns of place and time (أَسْمَاءُ مَكَانٍ وَزَمَانٍ *asmā' makān o zamān*) generally take the form مَفْعَل or مَفْعِل, the initial syllable مَ *ma* being characteristic: e.g. مَكْتَب *mak-tab*, 'a place where writing is taught,' 'a school' (from كَتَب 'to write'); مَخْرَج *makhraj*, and مَدْخَل *madkhal*, 'a place of egress, and ingress' (from خَرَج 'to go out,' and دَخَلَ 'to go in'); مَجْلِس *majlis*, 'the place where, or time when, several persons sit,' 'room,' 'assembly,' 'party' (from جَلَس 'to sit'); مَسْجِد *masjid*, 'a place of worship,' 'a mosque' (from سَجَد 'to worship').

114. Nouns that indicate the Instrument that one uses in performing the act expressed by a verb are called أَسْمَاءُ آلَاتٍ *asmā' ālāt*. They generally have the form مِفْعَال or مِفْعَلَة, and are distinguished from the nouns of place by the *kasra* with which the prefixed م *m* is pronounced: e.g. مِفْتَاح *miftāh*, 'a key' (from فَتَح 'to open'); مِشْكَلَة *miškala*, 'an instrument used in polishing' (from صَقَلَ 'to polish');

¹ Forbes, and other grammarians after him, say that "the Abstract noun is formed by means of the feminine termination *at* or *iyat*," and give as examples the words *ḥukūmat*, *kīsmat*, *ḡudrat*, etc. These however are *infinitive nouns*, or *nouns of action*, and though, like all verbal nouns (e.g. 'ilm, 'knowledge'), they may be used as *abstract nouns*, they are not "abstract nouns formed by means of the termination *at*;" this suffix can only form abstract substantives when added to *relative adjectives*. The other termination should be *iyat*, not *iyat*.

ميزان *mīzān* (for موزان), 'a balance or pair of scales' (from وزن 'to weigh').

THE DIMINUTIVE.

115. The Arabic Diminutive (اسم تصغير *ismē tasgīr*) is not of common occurrence in Urdū. It generally takes the form فَعِيل, though one or two words take the form فُعَيْلَة: e.g. حُسَيْن *Hōsain* from حَسَن, 'Hasan'; بُحَيْرَة *buḥaira*, 'a small sea,' 'a lake,' from بَحْر *bahr*, 'a sea.'

GENDER.

116. The most usual termination by the mere addition of which to masculines (chiefly adjectives) feminines are formed, is ة *at*, which in Urdū is changed into ا: e.g. والد *wālid*, 'father,' from والد *wālid*, 'mother,' from والد *wālid*, 'king,' from ملك *malik*, 'queen,' from ملك *malik*, 'powerful,' from قادر *kādir*, 'great,' from عظيم *ʿazīm*, 'a schoolmistress,' from معلم *mūʿallim*, 'a teacher or schoolmaster.'

117. Adjectives of the measure أَفْعَل, when they have the *superlative* signification, form the feminine after the measure فُعْلَى: e.g. كُبْرَى *kubrā*, from اكْبَر *akbar*, 'greatest,' أُولَى *ulā*, from أَوَّل *awwal*, 'first.' But when they denote *colour* or *deformity*, the measure of the feminine is فَعْلَا: e.g. صَفْرَا *safrā*, from أَصْفَر *asfar*, 'yellow,' عَرْجَا *arjā*, from اعْرَج *a'raj*, 'lame.'

NUMBER.

118. Arabic nouns have three numbers, the singular, dual, and plural.

119. The dual is formed by adding the termination

āni to the singular; as كِتَابَانِ *kitābāni*, 'two books,' from كِتَاب 'a book.'

120. The plurals are of two kinds. The one, which has only a single form, is called جَمْعٌ سَالِمٌ *jam'ē sālim*, 'the complete or entire plural,' because all the vowels and consonants of the singular are retained in it. The other, which has various forms, is called جَمْعٌ تَكْسِيرٌ *jam'ē taksīr*, 'the broken plural,' because it is more or less altered from the singular by the addition or elision of consonants, or the change of vowels.

121. The *complete*, or *regular* plural of masculine nouns is formed by adding to the singular the termination وَنٌ *ūna*; e.g. حَاضِرُونَ *hāẓirūna*, from حَاضِر 'present.' That of feminine nouns by adding اَتٌ *āt* to the singular, or, if the singular end in ة (ت or ة), by changing that letter into اَتٌ: e.g. مَلَكَاتٌ *malakātun*, 'possessions,' from مَلَكَ *malakat*.

122. The following is an example of the declension of a masculine noun.

SINGULAR.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
Nom. حَاضِرٌ <i>hāẓirun</i> , 'present.'	حَاضِرَانِ <i>hāẓirāni</i> .	حَاضِرُونَ <i>hāẓirūna</i> .
Gen. حَاضِرٍ <i>hāẓirin</i> .	حَاضِرَيْنِ <i>hāẓiraini</i> .	حَاضِرِينَ <i>hāẓirīna</i> .
Acc. حَاضِرًا <i>hāẓiran</i> .		

Rem. The genitive singular does not occur in Urdū. The accusative, with the *tanwīn*, frequently occurs, but always as an adverb. The final vowel of the nominative is always dropped.

123. The Urdū borrows from the Arabic, not only the various plural forms, but also its *dual*. But the terminations of the dual and the regular masculine plural are

always those of the Arabic accusative case, with the final vowels dropped: *e.g.* جَانِبَيْنِ *jūnibain*, 'two or both sides,' from جَانِب 'side; ' وَالْدَيْنِ *wālidain*, 'father and mother,' 'parents,' from والد 'father; ' نَاضِرِينَ *nāzirīn*, 'beholders,' from ناظر 'beholding; ' آخِرِينَ *ākhirīn*, 'those that come after,' 'posterity,' from آخر 'the last.'

124. The termination ات *āt*, of the regular plural of feminine nouns in Arabic, with the final vowel dropped, is also used in Urdū. It may be added: 1) to verbal nouns of any measure, and either gender: *e.g.*

كَمَالَاتِ <i>kamālāt</i> , 'perfections,'	from	كَمَالِ <i>kamāl</i> .
تَسْلِيمَاتِ <i>taslīmāt</i> , 'salutations,'	„	fem. تَسْلِيمِ <i>taslīm</i> .
إِخْرَاجَاتِ <i>ikhrajāt</i> , 'disbursements,'	„	masc. إِخْرَاجِ <i>ikhraj</i> .
إِصْطِلَاحَاتِ <i>iṣṭilāḥāt</i> , 'technicalities,'	„	fem. إِصْطِلَاحِ <i>iṣṭilāḥ</i> .

2) To verbal adjectives which are used in the plural as substantives: *e.g.*

كَائِنَاتِ <i>kā'ināt</i> , 'entities,'	from	كَائِنِ 'being.'
مَخْلُوقَاتِ <i>makhluqāt</i> , 'creatures,'	„	مَخْلُوقِ 'created.'
مَوْجُودَاتِ <i>maujūdāt</i> , 'beings,'	„	مَوْجُودِ 'found,' 'existing.'

Rem. Plural nouns ending in *āt* are not necessarily feminine. Their gender is generally that of the singular from which they are formed: *e.g.* حَيَوَانَاتِ *ḥaywānāt*, خَيَالَاتِ *khayālāt*, كَمَالَاتِ *kamālāt*, مَكَانَاتِ *makānāt*, etc., are masculine because their singulars are masculine, and آيَاتِ *āyāt*, إِصْطِلَاحَاتِ *iṣṭilāḥāt*, حَرَكَاتِ *ḥarakāt*, etc., are feminine for a similar reason. One or two of these plurals are commonly used in the singular also; as اِيَكْ وَارِدَاتِ هَوَيْي هِي *ek wāridāt hū'ī hai*, 'a casualty has occurred; ' تَحْقِيقَاتِ هُو رَهِي هِي *tahkīqāt ho rahī hai*, 'investigation is taking place.' And to some of those which are feminine the plural termination of the Hindī is

occasionally added; *e.g.* صِفَاتِي *ṣifāṭi*, from صِفَت *ṣifat*, 'an attribute or quality.'

125. The *broken plurals* of the Arabic are of frequent occurrence, and are found in a variety of forms. The most important of these forms are:

1) أَفْعَالٌ—Singular trilaterals of all forms may take this plural: *e.g.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
جِسْم <i>jism</i> , 'body,'	أَجْسَام <i>ajsām</i> .
حُكْم <i>ḥukm</i> , 'an order,'	أَحْكَام <i>aḥkām</i> .
وَقْتُ <i>w.ḳt</i> , 'time.'	أَوْقَات <i>auḳāt</i> .
شَيْ <i>shai</i> (from شَيْء), 'a thing,'	أَشْيَاء <i>ashyā</i> .
خَبْر <i>ḵhabar</i> , 'information,' 'news,'	أَخْبَار <i>akḵbār</i> .

Trilaterals in which the second radical (originally و, or ي) appears under the form ا, restore the original radical in the plural: *e.g.*

حَال <i>ḥāl</i> (for حَوْل), 'state.'	أَحْوَال <i>aḥwāl</i> .
نَاب <i>nāb</i> (for نَيْب), 'an eye-tooth,'	أَنْيَاب <i>anyāb</i> .

A few verbal adjectives of the measures فَاعِل and فَعِيل also take this form in the plural: *e.g.*

صَاحِب <i>ṣāḥib</i> , 'companion,'	أَصْحَاب <i>aṣḥāb</i> .
شَرِيف <i>sharīf</i> , 'noble,'	أَشْرَاف <i>ashrūf</i> .

2) فُعُول—The singular is generally a trilateral of one of the measures فُعَل - فَعِل - فُعَل - فُعَل: *e.g.*

أَمْر <i>amr</i> , 'an affair,'	أُمُور <i>umūr</i> .
عِلْم <i>ʿilm</i> , 'science,'	عُلُوم <i>ʿulūm</i> .
بُرْج <i>burj</i> , 'a tower,'	بُرُوج <i>burūj</i> .
أَسَد <i>asad</i> , 'a lion,'	أُسُود <i>usūd</i> .
مَلِك <i>malik</i> , 'a king,'	مُلُوك <i>mulūk</i> .

A few verbal adjectives of the measure فاعِل may take this form of plural: *e.g.*

SINGULAR.

شَاهِد *shāhid*, 'a witness,'

PLURAL.

شُهُود *shuhūd*.

3). فُعَلَا—This form is commonly used for the plural of verbal adjectives of the measure فَعِيل when they apply to rational beings, and have not a *passive* signification, nor are derived from verbs of which the second and third radicals are identical. Some masculine adjectives of the measure فاعِل (with the same restrictions as above) also take this form for the plural: *e.g.*

أَمِير *amīr*, 'a noble,'

أُمَرَا *umarā*.

فَقِير *fakīr*, 'poor,'

فُقَرَا *fukarā*.

غَرِيب *garīb*, 'strange,' 'poor,'

غُرَبَا *gurabā*.

شَاعِر *shā'ir*, 'a poet,'

شُعَرَا *shu'arā*.

عَاقِل *ākīl*, 'wise,'

عُقَلَا *uqalā*.

4). أَفْعَلَا—This form is commonly used for the plural of masculine adjectives of the measure فَعِيل, applicable to rational beings, and derived mostly from verbs of which the second and third radicals are identical, or the third radical is و, or ي: *e.g.*

قَرِيب *karīb*, 'near,' 'a relation,'

أَقْرِبَا *akribā*.

طَبِيب *ṭabīb*, 'a physician,'

أَطْبَا (for أَطْبِيا) *aṭibbā*.

حَبِيب *ḥabīb*, 'a friend,'

أَحْبَا (for أَحْبِيا) *aḥibbā*.

نَبِي *nabī* (from نَبِى), 'a prophet,'

أَنْبِيَا *ambiyā*.

وَلِي *walī* (from وَلِى), 'a saint,'

أَوْلِيَا *auliyā*.

5). فِعَال—Triliterals of the measures فَعَل - فَعَل - فَعَلَة may take this form of plural: *e.g.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ثَوْب <i>saub</i> , 'a robe,'	ثِيَاب <i>siyāb</i> .
بَحْر <i>baḥr</i> , 'the sea,'	بِحَار <i>biḥār</i> .
جَبَل <i>jabal</i> , 'a hill,'	جِبَال <i>jibāl</i> .
رَجُل <i>rajul</i> , 'a man,'	رِجَال <i>rijāl</i> .
خَصَلَت <i>khaṣlat</i> , 'a habit,'	خِصَال <i>khiṣāl</i> .
رُقْعَة <i>ruk'a</i> , 'a scrap of paper,' 'a letter,'	رِقَاع <i>rikā</i> .

6) فُعَال—This form is used for the plural of verbal adjectives of the measure فَاعِل not derived from verbs of which the third radical is و or ي; as

حَاكِم <i>hākim</i> , 'a judge,' 'a magistrate,'	حُكَّام <i>hukkām</i> .
جَاهِل <i>jāḥil</i> , 'ignorant,'	جُهَّال <i>juhḥāl</i> .
عَاشِق <i>āshiq</i> , 'a lover,'	عُشَّاق <i>ushshāq</i> .
كَافِر <i>kāfir</i> , 'an infidel,'	كُفَّار <i>kuffār</i> .

7) أَفْعَلَة—A form used for the plural of quadriliterals of which the antepenult letter is quiescent (a long vowel), especially nouns of the measures فَعَال and فِعَال; and verbal adjectives of the measure فَعِيل derived from verbs of which the second and third radicals are identical, or the third radical is و or ي: *e.g.*

زَمَان <i>zamān</i> , 'time,'	أَزْمِنَة <i>azmina</i> .
دَوَا <i>dawā</i> , 'medicine,'	أَدْوِيَة <i>adwiya</i> .
مِثَال <i>miṣāl</i> , 'example,'	أَمْثَلَة <i>amṣila</i> .
عَمُود <i>amūd</i> , 'a pillar,'	أَعْمَدَة <i>a'mida</i> .
حَبِيب <i>ḥabīb</i> , 'dear,'	أَحْبَبَة <i>aḥibba</i> (for أَحَبَّيَة).
دَلِيل <i>dalīl</i> , 'proof,'	أَدِلَّة <i>adilla</i> (for أَدَلَّة).

Rem. Form أَفْعَلَا (No. 4) is perhaps more commonly employed for the plural of adjectives of the measure فَعِيل.

8) فَعَائِل—This form is used for the plural of quadriliterals (all *originally* feminine) of which the third letter

is servile or quiescent (a long vowel), whether they have the feminine termination (ت) or not: *e.g.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
جزيرة <i>jazīra</i> , 'an island,'	جزائر <i>jazā'ir</i> .
حَقِيقَت <i>ḥaqīqat</i> , 'reality,'	حَقَائِق <i>ḥaqā'iq</i> .
خِصَال <i>khīṣāl</i> , 'habits,'	خِصَائِل <i>khaṣā'il</i> .
رِسَالَة <i>risāla</i> , 'a short treatise,'	رِسَائِل <i>rasā'il</i> .
شَمَال <i>shamāl</i> , 'the north wind,' 'disposition,'	شَمَائِل <i>shamā'il</i> .
دَلِيل <i>dalīl</i> , 'proof,'	دَلَائِل <i>dalā'il</i> .

Rem. The form دَلَائِل is said by some grammarians to be the plural not of دَلِيل, but of دَلِيلَة; but as *dalīl* is feminine, its plural is very properly *dalā'il*. The lexicons also give عَجَائِب '*ajā'ib*, and غَرَائِب '*garā'ib* as the plurals of عَجِيب '*ajīb*, غَرِيب '*garīb*; but these are, properly speaking, the plurals of the feminine forms عَجِيبَة '*ajība* and غَرِيبَة '*garība*.

9) فَوَاعِل—This is a common form of plural for substantives and adjectives of the measures فَاعِلَة and فَاعِل: *e.g.*

خَاتِم <i>khātim</i> , 'a signet ring.'	خَوَاتِم <i>khawātim</i> .
كَالِب <i>kālib</i> , 'a mould,'	كَوَالِب <i>kawālib</i> .
تَابِع <i>tābi</i> , 'a follower,' 'an appositive,'	تَوَابِع <i>tawābi</i> .
خَاص <i>khāṣṣ</i> , 'a noble,' etc.,	خَوَاص <i>khawāṣṣ</i> .
نَادِرَة <i>nādira</i> , 'a rarity,'	نَوَادِر <i>nawādir</i> .
فَائِدَة <i>fā'ida</i> , 'advantage,'	فَوَائِد <i>fawā'id</i> .
قَاعِدَة <i>kā'ida</i> , 'a rule,'	قَوَاعِد <i>kawā'id</i> .

Rem. The plural of Persian nouns also sometimes takes this form; *e.g.* كَوَاعِز *kawūgiz*, from كَاغِذ *kāgāz*, 'paper.'

10) فَعَائِل—This form is used for the plural of quadri-literal substantives and adjectives (final ة or ت not being counted as a letter), the consonants of which are all

radical, or which are formed from trilateral roots by prefixing ا, ت, or م, which are treated as radical letters: *e.g.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
جَوْهَر <i>jauhar</i> , 'a gem,'	جَوَاهِر <i>jawāhir</i> .
أَقْرَب <i>aḡrab</i> , 'a near relative,'	أَقَارِب <i>aḡarīb</i> .
أَكْبَر <i>akbar</i> , 'greatest,'	أَكَابِر <i>akābir</i> .
تَجْرِبَة <i>tajriba</i> , 'experience,'	تَجَارِب <i>tajārib</i> .
مَدْرَسَة <i>madrasa</i> , 'a college, or school,'	مَدَارِس <i>madāris</i> .
مُصِيبَة <i>muṣibat</i> , 'misfortune,'	{ مَصَائِب <i>maṣāyib</i> , or مَصَائِب <i>maṣā'ib</i> .

11) فَعَالِيل—The singulars are quinquiliteral substantives or adjectives (final ة or ت not included), of which the penultimate letter is a long vowel (*ā*, *ū*, or *ī*): *e.g.*

سُلْطَان <i>sultān</i> , 'a Sultan,'	سُلَاطِين <i>salāṭīn</i> .
شَيْطَان <i>shaiṭān</i> , 'Satan,'	شَيَاطِين <i>shayāṭīn</i> .
صَنْدُوق <i>ṣandūq</i> , 'a box,'	صَنَادِيق <i>ṣanādīq</i> .
تَارِيخ <i>tārīkh</i> , 'a chronicle,'	تَوَارِيخ <i>tawārīkh</i> . ¹
تَصْنِيف <i>taṣnīf</i> , 'a composition,'	تَاصِنِيف <i>taṣūnīf</i> .
إِقْلِيم <i>iklīm</i> , 'a clime,'	أَقَالِيم <i>aḡālīm</i> .
مِفْتَاح <i>miftāḥ</i> , 'a key,'	مَفَاتِيح <i>mafātīḥ</i> .

Rem. The above forms are such as commonly occur in Urdū. Others of less frequent occurrence are :

a). فَعُول—This is used for singulars of the measures فَعَال - فَعِيل - فَعِيلَه, not derived from verbs which have و or ي for the third radical : as, كُتُب *kutub*, 'books,' from كِتَاب *kitāb*; رُسُل *rusul*, 'messengers,' 'prophets,' from رِسُول *rasūl*; مُدُن *mudun*, 'cities,' from مَدِينَة *madīna*.

¹ The first radical of the word *tārīkh* is *alif* with *hamza*, and when this is preceded by *fatha* and followed by an *alif* of prolongation, it passes into *wā'o*; hence the plural form *tawārīkh* in lieu of *ta'ārīkh*.

b). **فَعْلَة**—The form of the singular is generally **فَعْلَة**: e.g. **حِكْمَة** *ḥikma*, ‘maxims,’ from **حَكَمْتُ** *ḥikmat*; **سِيَرَة** *siyar*, ‘morals,’ etc., from **سِيرْتُ** *sīrat*.

c). **فَعْلَة**—This is used to form the plural of verbal adjectives of the measure **فَاعِل** denoting rational beings, and not derived from verbs having **و** or **ي** for the third radical: e.g. **طَلَبَة** *ṭalaba*, ‘students,’ ‘pupils,’ from **طَالِب** *ṭālib*; **جَاهِلَة** *jahala*, ‘ignorant persons,’ from **جَاهِل** *jāhil*.

d). **فَعْلَة**—The singulars are verbal adjectives of the form **فَاعِل** denoting rational beings, and derived from verbs having **و** or **ي** for the third radical: e.g. **قُضَات** *quḏāt* (for **قَضَيْتَ**), ‘judges,’ from **قَاضِي** *kāzī*; **وُلَات** *wulāt* (for **وَلَيْتَ**), ‘governors,’ from **وَالِي** *wālī*.

e). **فَعْلَة**—The singulars usually have the forms **فُعَال** - **فُعَال**: e.g. **غَزَلَة** *gizla*, ‘gazelles,’ from **غَزَلَ** *gazāl*; **غِلْمَة** *gilma*, ‘boys,’ from **غُلَام** *gulām*; **رَفِيقَة** *riḥka*, ‘companions,’ from **رَفِيق** *rafiq*.

f). **أَفْعَل**—The singular is generally a noun of one of the measures **فُعَل** or **فُعَل**: e.g. **أَفْلَس** *aflas*, ‘small copper coins,’ from **فُلَس** *fuls*; **أَحْرَف** *aḥraf*, ‘letters,’ from **حَرْف** *ḥarf*.

g). **فُعَالَن**—Used to form the plural of nouns of the measures **فُعَل** - **فُعَال**, and **فُعِيل**; the first and the last from verbs of which the second and the third radical respectively is **و**: e.g. **جِيرَان** *jirān*, ‘neighbours,’ from **جَار** *jār*; **غِلْمَان** *gilman*, ‘slave boys,’ from **غُلَام** *gulām*; **صِبْيَان** *ṣibyān*, ‘boys,’ from **صَبِي** *ṣabī*; **إِخْوَان** *ikhwān*, ‘brethren,’ from **أَخ** *aḥ* (for **أَخُو**).

h). **فُعَالِي**—The singular is generally of the measure **فُعَالِي**, or **فُعَالِي**: e.g. **فَتَاوِي** *fatāwī*, ‘judicial replies,’ from **فَتَوَى** *fatwā*; **أَعَالِي** *a‘ālī*, ‘the upper or highest parts,’ from **أَعْلَى** *a‘lā*. Similarly **أَهَالِي** *ahālī*, from **أَهْل** *ahl*, ‘people.’

i). **فُعَالِيَّة**—Used to form the plural of substantives and adjectives of four, five, or more letters (principally words foreign to the Arabic), of which the penultimate letter is a long vowel: e.g. **مَلَايِكَة** *malū‘ika*,

'angels,' from ملك *malak* (for مَلَاك), 'an angel;' فلاسفه *falāsifa*, 'philosophers,' from فَيْلَسُوف *failasūf*.

126. From the preceding examples it is evident that one singular may have several forms of the broken plural, and even a sound or regular plural besides. In such cases, if the singular has several meanings, each of them often has a plural form peculiar to it. For example, بَيْت *bait* means 1) *a house*, 2) *a verse of poetry*; in the former sense the broken plural is usually بُيُوت *buyūt*, in the latter أَبْيَات *abyāt*.

127. The broken plurals, being properly *collective* nouns, or singulars with a *collective* signification, often have regular plurals formed from them by the addition of the Arabic termination ات *-āt*, or the plural terminations of the Hindī: *e.g.* بُيُوتَات *buyūtāt*, 'families,' 'household expenses,' جواهرات *jawāhirāt*, 'jewels,' کو *umarā'ōn-ko*, 'to nobles,' حُكَّاموں سے *hukkāmōn-se*, 'from those in authority.' For the same reason broken plurals are not necessarily of the same gender as the singulars from which they are formed; thus, of the feminine word طرف *taraf*, 'a side,' the plural اطراف *atrāf* is masculine, and of the masculine word وقت *wakt*, 'time,' the plural اوقات *aukāt* is feminine. Moreover, in one or two instances these plurals are treated as singular in Urdū: *e.g.* میرا احوال *merā aḥwāl*, 'my circumstances, or case,' تجارت کا اسباب *tijārat-kā asbāb*, 'trading commodities,' آپ کا الطاف ایسا ہی *āp-kā allāf aisā*, 'Your majesty's kindness is (favours are) such.' The words *asbāb* and *allāf*, however, are also treated as plurals.

Rem. The usage of the two great centres of Urdū—Dehlī and Lucknow—differs somewhat in respect of these broken plurals; some

words being treated as singular in Dehli, and plural in Lucknow. For example, the word جواهر *jawāhir*, is frequently used as a singular in the *Bāg-o-bahār*, but Lucknow authors always use it as a plural.

THE NUMERALS.

128. The Arabic numerals are occasionally used in Urdū, but rarely beyond *ten* or *twelve*.

THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

129. The cardinals from *one* to *ten* are:

	MASC.	FEM.		MASC.	FEM.
1.	أحد <i>aḥad</i> ,	إحدى <i>iḥdā</i> .	5.	خَمْسَة <i>kḥamsa</i> ,	خَمْس <i>kḥams</i> .
	واحد <i>wāḥid</i> ,	واحدة <i>wāḥida</i> .	6.	سِتَّة <i>sitta</i> ,	سِت <i>sitt</i> .
2.	إِثْنَان <i>iṣṇān</i> ,	{ إثنان <i>iṣṇān</i> .	7.	سَبْعَة <i>sab'a</i> .	سَبْع <i>sab'</i> .
		{ ثِنان <i>ṣinān</i> .	8.	ثَمَانِيَة <i>ṣamāniya</i> ,	ثَمَانِي <i>ṣamānī</i> .
3.	ثَلَاثَة <i>ṣalāṣa</i> ,	ثَلَاث <i>ṣalāṣ</i> .	9.	تِسْعَة <i>tis'a</i> ,	تِسْع <i>tis'</i> .
4.	أَرْبَعَة <i>arba'a</i> ,	أَرْبَع <i>arba'</i> .	10.	عَشْرَة <i>ashara</i> ,	عَشْر <i>ashr</i> .

The numbers from eleven to nineteen are formed by prefixing the units to the *ten*; as *أحد عشر* *aḥad 'ashar*, 'eleven,' etc.

THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

130. The ordinals from the *second* to the *tenth* take the form فَاعِل, the radical letters being the same as in the cardinals: e.g. *أول* *awwal*, 'first,' *ثاني* *sānī*, 'second,' *ثالث* *sālīs*, 'third,' and so on. The feminines are formed by adding the termination *ة* to the masculine; as *ثالثا* *sālīsā*, 'third;' the word *أول* *awwal* however, being of the measure أَفْعَل, and having the superlative signification, takes for its feminine *أولى* *ulā* (§ 117).

131. The ordinals from the *twelfth* to the *nineteenth* inclusive are formed by adding the cardinal number **عشر** 'ten' to the preceding ordinals; the *eleventh* is formed by prefixing the word **حادي** to the cardinal **عشر**; e.g. **حادي عشر** *hādī 'ashar*, 'eleventh,' **ثاني عشر** *sānī 'ashar*, 'twelfth,' etc.

DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

132. Arabic Distributives are not common in Urdū, and of the three measures used in Arabic, one alone is to be found; viz. **فُعَال**: e.g. **ثلاث** *sulās*, 'by threes.'

MULTIPLICATIVES.

133. The Multiplicatives (with the exception of *single*) are expressed by the Passive Participle of the *second form*, derived from the cardinal numbers: e.g. **مُشْتَبِل** *musannā*, 'double,' 'a duplicate;' **مُثَلَّث** *musallas*, 'threefold,' 'triple,' 'three-sided;' **مُرَبَّع** *murabba'*, 'fourfold,' 'square.' *Single* or *simple* is expressed by **مُفْرَد** *mufrad*, the pass. part. of the *fourth form*.

FRACTIONAL NUMBERS.

134. The fractions from *a third* up to *a tenth* are expressed by words of the measures **فُعَل** or **فُعَلْ** derived from the cardinals: e.g. **ثُلُث** *sulṣ*, 'a third,' **رُبَّع** *rub*, 'a fourth,' **خُمْس** *khums*, 'a fifth,' etc. *A half* is **نِصْف** *nisf*.

V. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS (ضمير *zamīr*).

135. The Personal Pronouns are *two* in number; namely **مَیں** *main*, 'I,' and **تُو** *tū*, or **تَیں** *tain*, 'thou;' the form **تَیں** however, though still current in Hindī, has become obsolete in Urdū. The place of the pronoun of the *third* person is supplied by the Demonstrative pronouns, chiefly by the *Remote Demonstrative* **وُسْ** *wōh*.

136. The personal pronouns present certain peculiarities of declension. The Formative singular of the *first* person is **مُجھ** *mujh*; that of the *second* **تُجھ** *tujh*; the Agent and Genitive cases are generally formed from the *Nominative*; and the adjective affix **ک** *kā*, which is used to form the genitive of nouns, is changed to **ر** *rā*, which in the plural has the connecting vowel *ā* prefixed to it. The plural Formatives are derived from the plural nominatives, by the addition of **وں** *on*, or, in the second person, **ہوں** *hon*: e.g. nom. pl. **ہم** *ham*, 'we,' Form. pl. **ہمیں** *hamon*; nom. pl. **تُم** *tum*, 'you,' Form. pl. **تُمہیں** *tumhon*; but the termination **وں** *on* is now always dropped, and the *h* of the termination *hon* is seldom used, except in the genitive, and the *additional* form of the dative case. This additional form ends in the singular in **ی** *e*, and in the plural in **یں** *en*, which last termination is always added to the contracted Formative **تُمھ** *tumh*.

Rem. The pronominal forms are clearly traceable to the Prākṛit: e.g.

HINDĪ. PRĀKRIT.

Nom. sing. . . . **میں** = **मं** *maṇ* (acc. sing.).

Gen. „ **میرا** = **मे** *me* (gen. sing. + affix *rā*).

Form. „ **مجھ** = **मज्झ** *majjha* (gen. sing. cf. § 39, 2, *Rem.*).

Nom. plur. . . . **हम** = **अम्हे** *amhe* (acc. plur.).

Gen. „ . . . **हमारा** = **अम्हाणं** *amhāṇaṇ* (gen. plur. + affix *rā*).

Form. „ . . **हमों** = **अम्हाणं** *amhāṇaṇ* (gen. plur.).

Nom. sing. . . . **तु** = **तुं** *tuṇ* (acc. sing.).

Gen. „ **तیرا** = **ते** *te* (gen. sing. + *rā*).

Form. „ **तुजھ** = **तुज्झ** *tujjha* (gen. sing.).

Nom. plur. . . . **तुम** = **तुम्हे** *tumhe* (acc. plur.).

Gen. „ . . . **तुम्हारा** = **तुम्हाणं** *tumhāṇaṇ*, (gen. plur. + *rā*).

Form. „ **तुम्ہیں** - **तُمہیں** = **तुम्हाणं** *tumhāṇaṇ* (gen. plur.).

The forms **हम** *ham* and **तुम** *tum* in the plural Formative are, as we

have observed above, contractions of *हमों hamon* and *तुम्हों tumhon*. So in Prākṛit we find *अहं amha*, as well as *अहानं anhānaṁ*, for the genitive. The dative forms *मुझे mujhe*, *हमें hamen*, etc., would appear to be but varieties of the Formative.

137. The personal pronouns are thus declined:

FIRST PERSON.

मैं main, 'I.'

SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>मैं main</i> , 'I.'
Agent	<i>मैंने main ne</i> , 'by me.'
Gen.	<i>मेरा me-rā</i> , 'my,' 'of me.'

Form. *मुझे mujh*.

Dat. and Act.	<i>मुझे mujh-ko</i> , or <i>मुझे mujhe</i> , 'to me,' 'me.'
Abl.	<i>मुझे से mujh-se</i> , 'from, by, me.'
Loc.	<i>मुझे में-पर mujh-men, -par</i> , 'in, on, me.'

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>हम ham</i> , 'we.'
Agent	<i>हमने ham-ne</i> , 'by us.'
Gen.	<i>हमारा ham-ārā</i> , 'our,' 'of us.'

Form. *हम ham* (for *हमों hamon*).

Dat. and Act.	<i>हमको ham-ko</i> , or <i>हमें hamen</i> , 'to us,' 'us.'
Abl.	<i>हमसे ham-se</i> , 'from, by, us.'
Loc.	<i>हममें-पर ham-men, -par</i> , 'in, on, us.'

SECOND PERSON.

तू tū, 'thou.'

Nom.	<i>तू tū</i> , 'thou.'
Agent	<i>तूने tū-ne</i> , 'by thee.'
Gen.	<i>तेरा te-rā</i> , 'thy,' 'of thee.'

Form. *तुझे tujh*.

Dat. and Act.	<i>तुझे tujh-ko</i> , or <i>तुझे tujhe</i> , 'to thee,' 'thee.'
Abl.	<i>तुझे से tujh-se</i> , 'from, by, thee.'
Loc.	<i>तुझे में-पर tujh-men, -par</i> , 'in, on, me.'

Nom.	<i>तुम tum</i> , 'you.'
Agent	<i>तुमने tum-ne</i> , 'by you.'
Gen.	<i>तुम्हारा tumh-ārā</i> , 'your,' 'of you.'

Form. *तुम or तुम् tum or tumh* (from *तुम्हों tumhon*).

Dat. and Act.	<i>तुम्हको tumh-ko</i> , or <i>तुम्हें tumhen</i> , 'to you,' 'you.'
Abl.	<i>तुम्हसे tumh-se</i> , 'from, by, you.'
Loc.	<i>तुम्हमें-पर tum-men, -par</i> , 'in, on, you.'

Rem. a. The pronoun of the second person has no vocative case. The expression **أَيُّ تُو** *ai tū* is only heard from the lips of Englishmen, or native Christians, who have learned it from the missionaries.

Rem. b. The forms **مِيرَا** *merā*, **تِيرَا** *terā*, **هَمَارَا** *hamārā*, **تُمْهَارَا** *tumhārā*, are properly possessive adjectives. The true genitive, which occurs occasionally (always in connection with an adjective), is identical with the *Formative*: e.g. **كَمْ بَحْتِ كِي كِتَاب** *mujh kam-bakht-kī kitāb*, 'the book of luckless me.' Similarly, if an adjective qualify a pronoun in the Agent case, the *Formative* is employed as the base; as **تُو بَد بَحْتِ نِي اَيْسَا كِيَا** *tujh bad-bakht-ne aisā kiya*, 'thou, wretched one, actedst thus,' or *lit.* 'by thee, wretched one, it was done thus.' So also if the 'adjective of similitude' **سَا** *sā*, follow the pronouns, the *Formative* is used as the base: e.g. **تُو سَا عَقْلَمَنْد** *tujh-sā 'aqlmand*, 'a wise man like thee,' or, ironically, 'a wiseacre like thee.' In poetry the forms **مِيرَا** and **تِيرَا** are often contracted to **مِرَا** *mirā* and **تِرَا** *tirā*.

Rem. c. The *Formatives* **مُجھ** *mujh*, **تُجھ** *tujh*, are frequently contracted to **مُج** *muj*, **تُج** *tuj*; as **مُجْکُو** *muj-ko*, **تُجْکُو** *tuj-ko*; and the dative and accusative occasionally take the form **میری تئیں** *mere ta'in*, **تیری تئیں** *tere ta'in* in the older literature, but these forms are now nearly obsolete.

138. The addition of the particle **ہی** *hī* (pl. **ہیں** *hīn*) to the pronouns gives them greater force, or, in some way, emphasizes them: e.g. **میں ہی** *main-hī*, 'I,' **میرا ہی** *merā-hī*, 'mine,' 'mine alone.'

VI. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN (اِسْمِ اِشَارَہ).

139. The *Proximate Demonstrative* (اِشَارَہ قَرِیب) *ishūra'ē karīb*) is **یہ** *yēh*, 'this,' nom. pl. **یہ** *yēh*, or **یے** *ye*; the

Remote Demonstrative (إشارة بعيد *ishūra'ë ba'id*) is *s'*, *wõh*, nom. pl. *s'*, *wõh*, *و*, *wo*, or *ي*, *we*. Both are used for the pronoun of the third person, but the remote demonstrative is the one more commonly employed.

Rem. The pronoun *يَه* *yëh* (Hindī *yah*) is derived from the Sanskrit ई *i*; *s'*, *wõh* (Hindī *wah*, Panjabī *uh*, Sindhī *hū*), probably from the Sanskrit स्व *sva* (see Bopp's Comp. Grammar, § 341). The Formatives are the contracted genitives (singular) of the Prākṛit, with the initial vowel *a* of the genitive affix changed to *i*: e.g. *إس* = *अस्स* *assa* = Sanskrit *अस्य* *asya*. In the old Formative *وَس* *wis*, a similar change of vowel occurs.

140. The demonstratives are declined as follows:

يَه *yëh*, 'this,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it.'

SINGULAR.

Nom. *يَه* *yëh*, 'this,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it.'

Form. *إس* *is*.

Agent *إس* *is-ne*, or *ان* *in-ne*, 'by him,' etc.

Gen. *إسکا* *is-kā*, 'of this,' 'his,' etc.

Dat. and Acc. { *إسکو* - * *is-ko*, or *ise*, 'to this, or him,' etc., 'this,' 'him,' etc.

Abl. *إس سے* *is-se*, 'from, with, by, this,' etc.

Loc. *إس میں* *is-men*, -*par*, 'in, on, this,' etc.

PLURAL.

Nom. *يَه* *yëh*, or *ye*, 'these,' 'they.'

Form. *انہوں* - * *inhon*, *inh*, or *in*.

Agent *انہوں* *inhon-ne*, or *in-ne*, 'by thee,' etc.

Gen. *انکا* *in-kā*, 'of these,' 'their,' etc.

Dat. and Acc. { *انکو* - * *in-ko*, or *inh-en*, 'to them,' etc. 'them,' etc.

Abl. *ان سے* *in-se*, 'from these,' etc.

Loc. *ان میں* *in-men*, -*par*, 'in, on, these,' etc.

وہ, 'that,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it.'

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. وہ, 'that, he,' etc.	وہ, wo, or we, 'those,' 'they.'
Form. اُس us.	اُنہوں * unhon, unh, un.
Agent اُس نے - * اُن نے us-ne, or un-ne, 'by him,' etc.	اُنہوں نے - * اُن نے unhon-ne, or un-ne, 'by them.'
Gen. اُسکا us-kā, 'his,' etc.	اُنکا un-kā, 'their,' 'of them.'
Dat. اُسکو - * اُسے 'to him,' etc., and { us-ko, or use, } 'him,' etc.	{ اُنکو - * اُنہیں } 'to them.'
Act. { us-ko, or use, } 'him,' etc.	{ un-ko or unh-en, } 'them.'
Abl. اُس سے us-se, 'from him,' etc.	اُن سے un-se, 'from them.'
Loc. اُس میں - پر us-men, -par, 'in, on, him,' etc.	اُن میں - پر un-men, -par, 'in, on, them.'

141. The forms marked with an asterisk can only be used when the demonstratives are employed as *personal* pronouns. As adjectives the demonstratives cannot be said to take any postpositions after them beyond those which are added to the substantives they define; in other words, they have but two forms, the *Nominative* and the *Formative*: e.g. اُس آدمی کو us admī-ko, 'to that man,' اِس is kitāb men, 'in this book.' As adjectives moreover the demonstratives may also take the various nominative forms in the accusative: e.g. یہ بات سُنکر yēh bāt sunkar, 'having heard this matter.' As regards the Formatives اُنہ in, اُنہ unh, اُنہوں inhon and unhon, it may be observed that modern usage restricts the shorter forms to the Dative ending in -ہیں en and the longer to the Agent case. The forms اُن in and un of the *singular* Agent are obtained by assimilating the s of اِس is and us to the n of the postposition نے ne, and must not be confounded with the plural Formatives in and un, which may be used

in polite speech in any case of the singular in place of *is* and *us*; but where marked respect is to be indicated, the forms *اُنہوں نے inhoṇ* and *unhoṇ-ne* are employed for the third person singular in the Agent case.

Rem. a. Forms now obsolete or rare are : *a)* *وِس wis* and *وِن win*, as the Formatives of *وُس*, in place of *اُس us* and *اُن*; *b)* *اُسکے تہیں iske ta'in* and *uske ta'in*, etc., for the dative and accusative of both pronouns.

Rem. b. The Formatives of *وُس wōḥ* are commonly written *اوس*, *اون* (pronounced however *us*, *un*), in order to distinguish them from the Formatives of *یہ yēh*, as, in the absence of vowel points, the two are likely to be confounded.

Rem. c. The plural forms *وہ وہو*, *وہو وہو*, are of frequent occurrence, both in old and modern writings, and are preferred by the Musalmāns of Northern India, and Urdū scholars generally, to the Hindī forms *یہ ye* and *وہ we*.

142. The emphatic particle *یہ ī* (plural *ہیں in*) is frequently added to the demonstratives, in order to point out the object with greater distinctness: *e.g.* *یہی yēhī*, 'this very,' 'the very same,' *وہی wōhī*, 'that very,' *اسی میں isī men*, 'in this same,' or *انہیں میں inhīn men*, 'in these very.'

143. Like the demonstrative *یہ yēh* are declined :

VII. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN (اِسْمِ مَوْصُول).

جو جو or *جُون jaun*, 'who,' 'which,' 'what,' 'he who,' etc.

* SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>جُون</i> or <i>جو jo</i> or <i>jaun</i> .	<i>جُون</i> or <i>جو jo</i> or <i>jaun</i> .
Form. <i>جِس jis</i> (and, for the Agent, <i>جِن jin</i>).	<i>جِنہیں*</i> , or <i>جِنہیں jin, jinh,</i> or <i>جِنہوں</i> .

Rem. The repetition of the relative pronoun gives it an indefinite, or a distributive signification: *e.g.* جو جو *jo jo*, 'whatever,' Formative جس جس *jis jis*.

VIII. THE CORRELATIVE (جواب اسم موصول).

سو *so*, or تون *taun*, 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'that.'

SINGULAR.

Nom. تون or سو *so* or *taun*.

Form. تس *tis* (and, for the Agent, تين *tin*).

PLURAL.

تون or سو *so* or *taun*.

تین*, or تینوں *tin, tinh, tinhoñ*.

Rem. The correlative generally accompanies the relative as its complement; as جو چڑھیگا سو گرہیگا *jo charhegā so giregā*, 'he who climbs will fall' (*lit.* 'whoever climbs, he will fall'). Modern usage prefers the pronoun وہ *wəh* to سو *so* in the place of the correlative. When the relative is repeated, so also is the correlative.

IX. THE INTERROGATIVE (اسم استفہام).

کون *kaun* 'who?' 'what?' 'which?'

Nom. کون *kaun*.

Form. کس *kis* (and, for the Agent, کین *kin*).

کون *kaun*.

کین*, or کینوں *kin, kink, or kinkhoñ*.

Rem. a. The forms marked with an asterisk cannot be employed when these pronouns are used as adjectives. In poetry, the interrogative, when used adjectively, occasionally employs the nominative (کون) for the Formative.

Rem. b. The pronoun جو = the Prākrit जो *jo*, = Sanskrit यः *yah*; जून *jaun* = P. जं *jam* (the acc. of *jo*); سو *so* = P. सो *so*; तून *taun* = P. तं *tam* (the acc. of *so*). Similarly कून *kaun* = कं *kam*, the acc. of the Sanskrit किम् *kim*. The Formatives are the Prākrit genitives

with the feminine bases, *i.e.* with the vowel *a* changed to *i*: *e.g.* جس *jīs* = P. gen. sing. जस्स *jassa* = S. यस्य *yasya*; جن *jīn* = P. gen. pl. जाणं *jāṇam*.

144. The interrogative کون *kaun* is applicable to both persons and things. A second interrogative pronoun کیا *kyā*, 'what?' is applicable to things only. It has no plural: in the singular it is declined as follows:

کیا *kyā*, 'what?'

Nom. کیا *kyā*.

Formative کاهے *kāhe*.

The Formative کاهے *kāhe* however is now rarely used, except in the genitive and dative cases, the Formative کس *kis* of the interrogative کون *kaun* being generally used instead. The genitive کاهے *kāhe-kā* has the signification of 'of what (thing, or material?),' which however is more generally expressed by کس چیز کا *kis chīz-kā*. The dative کاهے کو *kāhe-ko* always signifies, 'for what?' 'why?' and even this is more commonly expressed in Urdū by the interrogative adverbs کس واسطے *kis-wāste*, and کیوں *kyōn*.

Rem. a. Like the English 'what,' کیا *kyā* may be used to express indignation, surprise, etc.; *e.g.* کیا کرتا ہے *kyā kartā hai*, 'what art thou doing!' کیا جوائنمردی *kyā jāwān-mardī*, 'what valour or generosity!' In some instances it has the signification of 'how;' as کیا خوب *kyā khūb*, 'how excellent!' It may also be repeated, as is the English 'what,' to connect sentences, or to convey a partitive signification. (See Syntax.)

Rem. b. The interrogative کیا *kyā* (for *kiā*) is derived from the Sanskrit किम् *kim*: the form کاهے *kāhe* is properly the Formative of the Hindī interrogative कहा *kahā*, 'what?' which would appear to be derived from the Sanskrit कः *kaḥ*.

X. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (اسمائے تنکیر).

145. The Indefinite pronouns are of two kinds, simple and compound. The simple indefinite pronouns are کوئی *kō'ī*, 'some one,' 'some,' 'any,' 'a certain,' and کچھ *kuchh*, 'some,' 'something,' 'any,' 'a few,' etc.

146. The pronoun کوئی *ko'ī*, is declined in the singular only; thus—

Sing. Nom. کوئی *ko'ī*, 'some,' etc. Formative کسی *kisī*, or کسو *kisū*.

The Formative کسو *kisū*, however, is not so generally used at the present time as کسی *kisī*, which is applied to things as well as persons: e.g. کسی کتاب میں *kisī kitāb-men*, 'in some book.'

The pronoun کچھ *kuchh* is indeclinable.

Rem. a. The indefinite pronouns are both derived from the same source as the interrogatives: e.g. کوئی *kō'ī* = Sanskrit कोऽपि *ko'pi* (*kas + api*); कचिन् *kachhit* (किंचित् *kiñchit*).

Rem. b. In poetry the Formative of کوئی *ko'ī* as an adjective is occasionally identical with the nominative: e.g. مجھ سے مت جی کو *mujh-se mat jī-ko lagā'o ki nahīn rahne-kā*; main musāfir hūn, *ko'ī din-ko chalā-jā'ūngā*, 'Set not your heart on me' (lit. 'unite not your soul with me'); 'I shall not stay; I am a traveller, some day I shall depart.'

147. Emphatic forms of these pronouns are obtained: 1) by repeating them: e.g. کوئی کوئی *ko'ī ko'ī*, 'a very few,' 'some few;' کچھ کچھ *kuchh kuchh*, 'somewhat,' 'a very little:' 2) by combining them with the pronominal adjective ایک *ek*: e.g. ایک کوئی *ko'ī ek*, or ایک کوئی *ek ko'ī*, 'some one,' 'a few;' ایک کچھ *kuchh ek*, 'some little,'

‘somewhat:’ 3) by repetition and insertion of the negative
 نہ *na*: e.g. کوئی نہ کوئی *ko’i na ko’i*, ‘some one,’ ‘some one
 or other;’ کچھ نہ کچھ *kuchh na kuchh*, ‘something or other.’

Rem. The phrase کچھ کا کچھ *kuchh-kā kuchh* is used to signify
 ‘something very or quite different.’

148. By placing the negative substantive verb نہیں *nahīn* after the simple indefinite pronouns we have کوئی نہیں *ko’i nahīn*, ‘it is, or there is, no one or nobody,’ کچھ نہیں *kuchh nahīn*, ‘it is nothing.’

Rem. The word نہیں is both a negative particle and a negative
 substantive verb = نہ ہے *na hai*, and as a verb it occurs at the end of a
 sentence: e.g. کوئی نہیں *ko’i nahīn*, ‘there is nobody;’ but کوئی آیا *ko’i nahīn āyā*, ‘anyone did not come,’ i.e. ‘no one came.’
 The same distinction is found in the sister dialects: e.g. Sindhi
 کو نه *konhe* = آ نه *ko na āhe*, ‘there is no one.’

149. Compound indefinite pronouns are commonly
 formed by combining the simple indefinites with the rela-
 tive جو *jo*, or one of the pronominal adjectives اور *aur*,
 ‘other,’ دوسرا *dūsra*, ‘other,’ سب *sab*, ‘all,’ ہر *har*, ‘every.’

The compounds with کوئی *ko’i* are declinable: e.g.

SING. NOM.	SING. FORMATIVE.
جو کوئی <i>jo ko’i</i> , ‘whoever,’ ‘whosoever,’	جس کیسی <i>jis kisī</i> .
اور کوئی <i>aur ko’i</i> , ‘some other,’	اور کیسی <i>aur kisī</i> .
کوئی اور <i>ko’i aur</i> , ‘some one else,’	کیسی اور <i>kisī aur</i> .
دوسرا کوئی <i>dūsra ko’i</i> , ‘some other,’	دوسری کیسی <i>dūsrī kisī</i> .
کوئی دوسرا <i>ko’i dūsra</i> , ‘some one else,’	کیسی دوسری <i>kisī dūsrī</i> .
سب کوئی <i>sab ko’i</i> , ‘all persons,’ ‘every one,’	سب کیسی <i>sab kisī</i> .
ہر کوئی <i>har-ko’i</i> , ‘every one,’ ‘everybody,’	ہر کیسی <i>har kisī</i> .

The compounds with کُچھ *kuchh* are indeclinable. Examples are:

جو کُچھ *jo kuchh*, 'whatever,' سب کُچھ *sab kuchh*, 'what all,'
'everything.'
اور کُچھ *aur kuchh*, 'something else,' بہت کُچھ *bahut kuchh*, 'a great deal.'

XI. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

150. The Reflexive pronoun is آپ *āp*, 'self,' 'myself,' 'himself,' 'I myself,' etc. It has but one form for the singular and plural, and is declined as follows:

Nom. آت *āp*.

Gen. (adj.) اپنا *ap-nā* (fem. اپنی *ap-nī*).

Dat. and Act. اپنے تئیں - آپ کو *apne ta'in, apne-ko* or *āp-ko*.

Abl. آپ سے *āp-se*.

Loc. آپ میں - پر *āp-men, -par*.

Rem. a. The reflexive is combined emphatically with the other pronouns: *e.g.* میں آپ *main āp*, 'I myself;' وہ آپ *wh āp*, 'he himself;' تم آپ سے *tum āp-se*, 'you of yourselves' (*lit.* 'from or by yourselves').

Rem. b. آپ *āp* = Prākrit अप्पा *appā* = Sanskrit आत्मा *ātmā*, 'soul,' 'self.'

151. Besides the Formative آپ *āp*, the form آپس *āpas* also occurs, but only in the genitive and locative plural: *e.g.* آپس کا *āpas-kā*, 'of, or pertaining to, ourselves, yourselves, or themselves;' آپس میں *āpas-men*, 'among ourselves,' etc. The use of one or other of the personal pronouns depends on the context.

Rem. The Persian reflexive pronoun خود *khud*, is also commonly used in Urdū. Unlike آپ *āp*, however, it is generally used with the personal and demonstrative pronouns alone: *e.g.* میں خود *main khud*, 'I myself;' وہی خود *we khud*, 'they themselves.' To

express the signification of the ablative *آپ سے* *āp-se* (or the phrase *آپ سے آپ سے* *āp-se āp*), the Persian preposition *از* *az* = *سے* *se*, is prefixed to *خود* : *e.g.* *از خود* *az khwud*, 'from, or of, itself,' ('myself,' 'himself,' etc.), 'voluntarily,' 'spontaneously.' In Persian phrases it is also employed adjectively in the sense of 'own:' *e.g.* *چشم خود* *ba-chashmē khwud*, 'with my own eyes.'

152. *آپ āp* is also very commonly used as the *pronomen reverentie*, in both the second and the third person. When so used it is declined as follows :

NOM. SING.

آپ āp, 'your honour,' 'his honour.'

FORM. SING.

آپ āp.

Thus it differs from the reflexive by taking for its genitive the form *آپکا āp-kā*, and for its dative the form *آپکو āp-ko* alone. Like the English 'you,' though used in the singular, it is treated as a plural : *e.g.* *آپ امیر ہیں* *āp amir hain*, 'your honour is (*lit.* are) a great man,' or 'you are a great man;' *آپ فرماتے ہیں* *āp farmāte hain*, 'his honour says' (*lit.* 'say').

Rem. Other words which, like *آپ āp*, are commonly used for the sake of politeness, respect, or euphemy, and require the verb to be in the plural, are *حضرت* *hazrat*, *حضور* *huzūr*, *خداوند* *khudā-wand*, *جناب عالی* *janāb jāli*, *جناب عالی* *khudā-wandē nē'mat*, *بندہ نواز* *banda-nawāz*, *عالی جاہ* *ālī jāh*, *پرور* *garīb-parwar*, *صاحب* *sāhib*, *مخدوم* *makhḍūm*, etc.—all synonymous words or phrases used as the corresponding English words 'you,' 'Sir,' 'Master,' etc. Similarly when speaking of himself, instead of using the pronoun *میں main*, 'I,' a native frequently uses such words as *بندہ* *banda*, 'slave, or humble servant,' *کمترین* *kamtarīn*, 'least of slaves,' *احقر* *aḥkar*, 'meanest servant,' *خاکسار* *khāk-sār*, 'humble slave,' *غلام* *gulām*, 'slave,' 'servant,' *فدوی* *fidwī*, 'devoted servant,' etc. On the same principle too 'my son' is expressed by *بندہ زادہ* *banda-zāda*, 'the son

of this slave,' and a wife is spoken of as قبیله *kabīla*, 'family,' گھر کے *ghar-ke ādmī*, 'the household or family,' etc.

XII. RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

153. Reciprocal pronouns have no special form in Urdū. Reciprocity of feeling or action is expressed, as in English, by combining the pronominal adjectives ایک *ek*, 'one,' and دُوسرا *dūsra*, 'another:' e.g. Nom. ایک دُوسرا *ek dūsra*, 'each other,' 'one another,' Formative ایک دُوسری *ek dūsre*.

XIII. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (ضمیر مضاف الیہ).

154. The Possessive pronouns are the genitive cases of the personal, demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and reflexive pronouns: e.g.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
میرا <i>merā</i> , 'my,' 'thine.'	ہمارا <i>hamārā</i> , 'our,' 'ours.'
تیرا <i>terā</i> , 'thy,' 'thine.'	تمہارا <i>tumhārā</i> , 'your,' 'yours.'
اسکا <i>iskā</i> , }	انکا <i>inkā</i> , }
اُسکا <i>uskā</i> , }	اُنکا <i>unkā</i> , }
جسکا <i>jiskā</i> , 'whose,' etc.	جِنکا <i>jinkā</i> , 'whose,' etc.
تِسکا <i>tiskā</i> , 'his,' etc.	تِنکا <i>tinkā</i> , 'their,' 'theirs.'
کِسکا <i>kiskā</i> , 'whose?'	کِنکا <i>kinkā</i> , 'whose?'
اپنا <i>apnā</i> , 'own.'	

These are all declined like other adjectives ending in *ā*: e.g. masc. میرا *merā*, fem. مری *merī*; Form. sing. masc. میری *mere*, Nom. and Form. pl. masc. میری *mere*. The pronoun اپنا *apnā* however is more commonly used as a substitute for the possessive pronouns *merā*, *terā*, and *uskā* than as a distinct reflexive adjective, and when so used it always refers to the principal subject, whether this be expressed or understood: e.g. اپنا سبق سنا *apnā sabak sunā*, 'repeat thy lesson,' (lit. 'cause me to, or let me, hear thy lesson');

اپنا گھوڑا بیچا main-ne apnā ghorā beñchā, 'I have sold my horse' (*lit.* 'my horse has been sold by me').

Rem. The genitive of the adjective نِج *nij*, 'own,' is also used in Urdū as a reflexive adjective: *e.g.* میرا نِجکا ہاتھی *merā nij-kā hāthī*, 'my own elephant.'

XIV. PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

155. Under this head may be classed such adjectives as partake more or less of the nature of pronouns. They are of two kinds; *primitive* and *derivative*. The primitive are:

ایک *ek*, 'one.'

دُوسرا *dūsra*, 'another,' 'other.'

دونوں *donon*, 'both.'

اور *aur*, 'other,' 'more.'

بہت *bahut*, 'much,' 'many.'

بعض *ba'z*, } 'some,' 'certain.'

بعضے *ba'ze*, }

غیر *gair*, 'other' ('different').

سب *sab*, 'all,' 'every one.'

ہر *har*, 'each,' 'every.'

فُلان *fulān*,

فُلانا *fulāna*,

فُلانا *fulānā*,

} 'such-and-such.'

کئی *ka'ī*,

چند *chand*,

} 'several,' 'many.'

کُل *kull*, 'all,' 'the whole.'

کئی *kai*, 'how many?'

As adjectives they are all (with the exception of دُوسرا *dūsra* and فُلانا *fulānā*) *indeclinable*; but as nouns they are (with the exception of ایک *ek*, دونوں *donon*, کئی *ka'ī*, and کئی *kai*) declined in the plural: *e.g.* Nom. pl. اور *aur*, Formative اوروں *auron*. The word سب *sab* generally aspirates the *b* in the Formative: *e.g.* سبوں *sabhon*.

Rem. The origin of the words ایک *ek*, دُوسرا *dūsra*, and دونوں *donon* has been given in treating of the numeral adjectives; بہت *bahut* = Sanskrit बहू *bahu*(?); سب *sab* = S. सर्व *sarva*; کئی *ka'ī* and کئی *kai* = S. कति *kati*; بعض *ba'z*, غیر *gair*, فُلان *fulān*, فُلانا *fulāna*, and کُل *kull* are borrowed from the Arabic; ہر *har* and چند *chand* from the Persian.

156. The *derivatives* are such adjectives as are formed from the original pronominal bases by means of the terminations $\text{تā } t\bar{t}\bar{a}$, $\text{نā } t\bar{n}\bar{a}$, and $\text{سā } s\bar{a}$, the first two being used to form pronominal adjectives denoting *measure* or *quantity*, and the last such as denote *kind* or *similitude*. A long vowel in the base is shortened before the terminations $t\bar{t}\bar{a}$ and $t\bar{n}\bar{a}$ are added, and a short vowel in the base is lengthened to *e* or *ai* (in Urdū generally to *ai*) before the termination $s\bar{a}$ is added : *e.g.*

PRONOMINAL BASES.	ADJECTIVES OF QUANTITY.	ADJECTIVES OF KIND, ETC.
\bar{i} , i or \bar{e} .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{اِتا } itt\bar{a} \text{ (}\bar{e}t\bar{t}\bar{a}\text{),} \\ \text{اِتنا } itn\bar{a} \text{ (}\bar{e}t\bar{n}\bar{a}\text{),} \end{array} \right\}$ 'this 'much.'	$\text{اِيسا } ais\bar{a}$, 'of this kind,' 'like this,' 'such.'
\bar{u} or <i>wa</i> .	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{اُتا } utt\bar{a}, \\ \text{اُتنا } utn\bar{a}, \end{array} \right\}$ 'that much.'	$\text{وِيسا } wais\bar{a}$, 'of that kind,' 'like that.'
<i>ji</i> (fem. of <i>ja</i> , the base of <i>jo</i>).	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{جِتا } jitt\bar{a} \text{ (}\bar{j}ett\bar{a}\text{),} \\ \text{جِتنا } jilt\bar{n}\bar{a} \text{ (}\bar{j}et\bar{n}\bar{a}\text{),} \end{array} \right\}$ 'as 'much.'	$\text{جِيسا } jais\bar{a}$, 'of which kind,' 'like which.'
<i>ti</i> (fem. of the base of <i>so</i>).	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{تِتا } titt\bar{a} \text{ (}\bar{t}ett\bar{a}\text{),} \\ \text{تِتنا } titn\bar{a} \text{ (}\bar{t}et\bar{n}\bar{a}\text{),} \end{array} \right\}$ 'so 'much.'	$\text{تِيسا } tais\bar{a}$, 'of what kind,' 'like that.'
<i>ki</i> (fem. of base of <i>ka</i>).	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{كِتا } kitt\bar{a} \text{ (}\bar{k}ett\bar{a}\text{),} \\ \text{كِتنا } kitn\bar{a} \text{ (}\bar{k}et\bar{n}\bar{a}\text{),} \end{array} \right\}$ 'how 'much.'	$\text{كِيسا } kais\bar{a}$, 'of what kind?' 'like what?'

Rem. Although these pronominal adjectives may be conveniently described as formed in the manner mentioned above, there can be little doubt of their being really modifications of Prākṛit forms: *e.g.* $\text{كِتا } kitt\bar{a}$, = Prākṛit $\text{केत्तिअ } kettia$ = Sanskrit $\text{कियत् } kiyat$: in $\text{كِتنا } kitn\bar{a}$ the second *t* is, perhaps for the sake of euphony, changed into *n*. Similarly $\text{اِيسا } ais\bar{a}$ = P. $\text{एरिसो } \bar{e}riso$ = S. $\text{ईदृश } \bar{i}dri\bar{s}a$; $\text{كِيسا } kais\bar{a}$ = $\text{केरिसो } k\bar{e}riso$ = S. $\text{कीदृश } k\bar{i}dri\bar{s}a$. By the elision of the syllable *ri* in the Prākṛit forms, are obtained the common Hindī forms *esā* and *kesā*, the short vowel \bar{e} of the Prākṛit being lengthened.

CHAPTER III.

THE VERB (فَعْل).

157. The Urdū verbs may be conveniently divided into the two classes of *Transitive* (فَعْلٍ مُتَعَدِّي *fē'lē muta'addī*, 'the verb that passes on' to an object), and *Intransitive* (فَعْلٍ لَازِمِي *fē'lē lāzimī*, 'the verb that is confined to the subject'), the last including both *active* and *neuter* verbs, as *to run*, *to sleep*. For although *there is but one conjugation*, and *the inflectional terminations are the same in all verbs*, there is a marked difference in the formation of some of the tenses of the transitive verbs.

158. Transitive verbs have two Voices, viz. the *Active* and the *Passive*. The other verbal forms, such as Mood, etc., it will be more convenient to notice after we have spoken of the nouns and adjectives which are derived from the verbal root.

159. The root or crude form of a verb is found in the second person singular of the Imperative. It is in many cases used as an abstract verbal noun.

160. The verbal nouns are *two* in number:—

1). THE INFINITIVE OR GERUND (مُصَدَّر),

which is formed by adding to the verbal root the termination نā: e.g. Root چل *chal*, 'to move,' etc., Infinitive چلنا *chal-nā*, 'to move or go,' 'moving or going.' The infinitive is the form in which verbs are usually given in

Dictionaries, so that the verbal root may always be known by dropping the termination ٴ nā.

Rem. In most instances the infinitive is, no doubt, the Sanskrit verbal noun ending in *ana*, modified, it may be, by the laws of transformation obtaining in the Prākritis. At the same time it is evident that the Sanskrit affix *ana* alone has been borrowed, and changed to *nā*; for we find it joined to Persian and Arabic verbal nouns, and occasionally to other nouns and adjectives: *e.g.* خریدنا *kharīd-nā*, 'to purchase' (from the Persian خرید); بدلنا *badāl-nā*, 'to change or exchange' (from the Arabic بدل); گرمانا *garmā-nā*, 'to get warm or heated' (from گرم *garm*, 'hot'); پانیانا *paniyā-nā*, 'to water,' 'to irrigate' (from پانی *pānī*, 'water'). It may be observed also that the Sanskrit verbal noun, with the final vowel dropped, is occasionally employed in Urdū (in Hindī frequently) as an abstract noun: *e.g.* چلن *chalan*, 'going,' 'gait,' 'conduct,' etc.

2). THE NOUN OF AGENCY (اسم فاعل),

which is also a Future Active Participle. It is formed by adding to the *inflected* infinitive, the termination والا, *wālā*: *e.g.* چلنے والا *chal-ne-wālā*, 'mover,' 'goer,' and, 'about to move or go.'

Rem. Instead of والا, *wālā*, the affix ہار *hār* or ہارا *hārā* is occasionally used, but more commonly in Hindī than in Urdū. In the former of these dialects it is also frequently added to the Sanskrit form of the verbal noun; as مرن ہار *maran-hār*, 'about to die,' or 'one who is about to die.' The affix *wālā* corresponds to the Sanskrit वल *vala*; ہارا *hārā*, to the Sanskrit कार *kāra*, which, according to Dr. Trumpp, is first changed to *khārā*, and thence, by elision of *k*, to *hārā*.

The noun of agency is declined like other adjectives ending in *ā* (§ 45).

161. The infinitive as a gerund is used in the singular only, and is declined like masculine nouns ending in ۱- ā (§ 42). But it is also frequently used as a *gerundive*, and then agrees with its substantive in gender and number.

162. The Participles are *three* in number; namely the Imperfect, Perfect, and Past Conjunctive. They are all derived from the verbal root.

163. THE IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE (اِسْمِ حَالِيَه),

is formed by adding to the root the termination ۱- tā; as چلتا *chal-tā*, ‘moving,’ ‘going.’

164. The addition to the participle of the word دُوا *hūā* (the perfect participle of the verb هونا *ho-nā*, ‘to be or become’), gives it an *active* or *progressive* form, and more of the character of an adjective; as چلتا دُوا *chal-tā hūā*, ‘moving or going,’ *lit.* ‘become moving,’ *i.e.* ‘in a state of motion.’ But, by ellipsis, the shorter form of the participle is frequently used instead: *e.g.* چلتی چکي ديکھ *chal-tī chakkī dekh* = چلتی هُوئي چکي ديکھ *chaltī hūī chakkī dekh*, ‘having seen a moving millstone’ (*i.e.* a millstone when it was moving).

Rem. The affix ۱- tā corresponds to the affix अत् *at* of the Sanskrit present participle. In Hindī the termination is *at* (strictly speaking, perhaps, *atu*, but the final vowel is never heard in pronunciation): *e.g.* चलत् *chalat* = چلتا *chal-tā*.

165. THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

is formed by adding to the verbal root the termination ۱- ā: in its formation the following rules are to be observed:

1) If the root ends in a consonant, the termination is in most cases added without any change being made; as

چلا *chal-ā*, 'moved or gone.' But if the root consist of two short syllables, the vowel of the last being *fatha*, this vowel is generally elided in the participle: e.g. بدلا *badl-ā*, 'exchanged,' from بدل *badal*; نکلا *nikl-ā*, 'come out,' from نکل *nikal* (see § 34, *Rem. c.*).

2) If the root end in one of the vowels ا *ā* or و *o*, a euphonic ی *y* is inserted between it and the termination; as کھایا *khāy-ā*, 'eaten' (root کھا *khā*); بویا *boy-ā*, 'sown' (root بو *bo*).

3) If the final letter of the root be the vowel ی *ī*, the *fatha* of the termination (ا) changes the letter of prolongation ی into the consonant *y*: e.g. پیا *piyā*, 'drunk' (root پی *pī*).

166. The following participles are irregular :

PERF. PART.	INFINITIVE.
کیا <i>kiyā</i> , 'done.'	کرنا <i>kar-nā</i> , 'to do.'
دیا <i>diyā</i> , 'given.'	دینا <i>de-nā</i> , 'to give.'
لیا <i>liyā</i> , 'taken.'	لینا <i>le-nā</i> , 'to take.'
موا <i>mū'ā</i> , 'dead.'	مرنا <i>mar-nā</i> , 'to die.'
گیا <i>gayā</i> , 'gone.'	جانا <i>jā-nā</i> , 'to go.'
ہوا <i>hū'ā</i> , 'been or become.'	ہونا <i>ho-nā</i> , 'to be,' etc..

But the forms کرا *karā*, 'done,' and مرا *marā*, 'dead,' are also occasionally used; and the form جایا *jāyā* is that invariably used in compounds, such as جایا کرنا *jāyā karnā*, 'to go habitually or constantly,' جایا چاہنا *jāyā chāhnā*, 'to wish to go,' or 'to be about to go.'

Rem. It is incorrect to say that "the words *karnā* and *kiyā* are derived from *kar* and *kī*, two different forms of the Sanskrit root *kri*, and the words *marnā* and *mū'ā*, from *mar* and *mū*, two different forms of the Sanskrit root *mṛi*," etc.; for there can be little doubt that though

the affix *ā* (which corresponds to the Sanskrit affix *ta*) is used in forming perfect participles—*e.g.* خریدا *khariḍ-ā*, ‘purchased,’ بدلا *badl-ā*, ‘exchanged’—yet the Hindī participles are for the most part derived bodily from those of the Sanskrit (just as the infinitives are from the Sanskrit verbal noun in *ana*), through the medium of the Prākṛit, and the change of form is due to the laws which obtain in the latter language : *e.g.* کیا *kiyā* (for *kiā*) = P. कियो *kio* = S. कृत *kṛita*; ہوا *mū’ā* = P. मुओ *mu’o* = S. मृत *mṛita*; گیا *gayā* (for *gaā*) = P. गओ *gaō* = S. गत *gata*. The verb جانا *jānā*, from the Sanskrit root या *yā*, ‘to go,’ is *defective*, its perf. part. having been formed in Prākṛit from a distinct root गम् *gam*, ‘to go.’

167. The addition of the participle ہوا *hū’ā* to another perf. part. adds to the completeness of the act or state, if the verb be intransitive, and converts it into a *passive* participle (اسم مفعول *ism maf’ūl*), if the verb be transitive, imparting to it also in each case more of the character of an adjective.

Rem. The imperfect and perfect participles, when compounded with ہوا *hū’ā*, may also be used as nouns : *e.g.* میرا دیا ہوا *merā diyā hū’ā* (and, elliptically, میرا دیا *merā diyā*), ‘what has been given by (lit. of) me,’ ‘my giving or gift.’

168. The imperfect and perfect participles are declined like other adjectives ending in *ā*, with a slight difference in the feminine plural, which takes a contracted form of the nom. pl. of feminine nouns ending in *ī* : *e.g.*

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative چلا <i>chalā</i> ,	چلے <i>chale</i> .	چلی <i>chalī</i> ,	چلیں <i>chalīn</i> .
Formative چلے <i>chale</i> ,	چلے <i>chale</i> .	چلی <i>chalī</i> ,	چلیں <i>chalīn</i> .

But the euphonic *y* of such perfect participles as لایا *lāyā*, سویا *soyā*, is generally dropped in all the inflected forms:

e.g. لائے *lā'e*, لائی *lā'ī*, سوئیں *so'in*. The same change takes place in the inflected masc. forms of such participles as پیا *piyā*, دیا *diyā*: *e.g.* پیئے *pī'e*; but in the feminine the two long vowels *ī*, *ī*, are generally contracted into one; as پی *pī* for پیئی *pī'ī*; کی *kī* for کیئی *kī'ī*.

169. In the compound participles formed with ہوا *hū'a*, both parts of the compound are inflected in the same way, but the plural termination of the feminine is usually added to the last, ہوا, alone: *e.g.* چلی ہوئیں *chalī hū'in*.

Rem. As the plural is obvious from the termination of the last part of the compound, the addition of the same termination to the first part also is unnecessary, and is now rarely made. We occasionally meet with the full plural termination *ān*, as چلیاں *chaliyān*, but current usage is averse to the form.

170. The addition of the emphatic particle ہی *hī* to the locative of the imperfect participle (with the postposition suppressed), gives it the force of an adverb: *e.g.* چلتے ہی *chalte-hī*, 'in the very act, or on the instant, of moving.'

THE PAST CONJUNCTIVE PARTICIPLE (ماضی معطوف).

171. This participle, which is indeclinable, may take the form: 1) Of the simple root; as چل *chal*, 'having moved or gone; 2) of the root with the addition of one of the affixes *e*—ی, or *ke*—کے; as چلے *chal-e*, or چلکے *chal-ke*; 3) of the root with the addition of کر *kar*, or کرکے *kar-ke* (which are themselves past conj. part. of the verb کرنا *kar-nā*); as چلکر *chal-kar*, or چلکرکے *chal-kar-ke*. The affix *e* is seldom or never employed; *ke* and *kar* are those most frequently used.

Rem. a. We occasionally meet with the form کرکر *kar-kar*, as چلکرکر *chal-kar-kar*; this, however, is now generally condemned as barbarous.

Rem. b. The conjunctive participle of the verb آنا *ānā*, 'to come,' takes the forms آن *ān*, آنکر *ānkar*, etc., besides the regular forms آ *ā*, آکر *ākar*, etc.

Rem. c. The affixes *e* and *ke* both spring from the Prākṛit form *ia* of the Sanskrit affix *ya*, which is used to form indeclinable past participles: *ia* transposed = *ai* = *e*; in the case of *ke*, however, *ia* is first changed to *ja*, *je* (the form current in Sindhī), and *j* is then changed to *k*. In the first or root form of the participle the affix *e* is dropped.

GENDER, NUMBER, PERSON.

172. The Urdū verb has *two* genders, the masculine and feminine; *two* numbers, the singular and plural; and *three* persons in each number.

MOODS (صورتیں *ṣūratēn*).

173. There are *three* moods; namely the Indicative, Imperative, and Subjunctive or Conditional, which is also the Optative. The Indicative and Subjunctive will be noticed in connection with the tenses.

THE IMPERATIVE (امر *amr*).

174. The second person singular of the Imperative is, as has already been observed, the root or crude form of the verb. The second person plural is formed by adding to the singular the termination, — *o*; as چل *chal*, 'go thou,' چلو *chalo*, 'go you.' It is identical with the second person plural of the Aorist, from which tense the other persons of the Imperative are taken.

175. If the root end in ی — *e*, or, — *o*, the plural imperative may be formed as described above; but the more usual course is to elide the radical *e* or *o* before adding the *o*: *e.g.* sing. دی *de*, 'give thou,' pl. *do*, 'give you;' sing.

هو *ho*, 'be thou,' plural هو *ho*, 'be ye.' The forms ديو *de'o* and هوو *ho'o* are now regarded as provincial and barbarous.

Rem. The terminations of the Prākṛit imperative are—Sing. *u* or *a*, *āhi*, etc.; pl. *dha* or *ha*: the first of these is dropped in Hindī, and the plural termination *ha* is changed to *o* by elision of *h* and compensatory lengthening of the final vowel.

THE PRECATIVE.

176. There is another form of the Imperative which is properly a Precative, but which is also commonly used in polite speech for the Imperative. It is formed by adding to the verbal root the termination *-iye* for the singular, and *-iyo* for the plural;¹ as چلیے *chaliye*, 'please go,' or simply 'go;' چلیو *chaliyo*, 'go you.' But at the present time the two forms are both commonly employed in both the singular and the plural, the only difference between them being, that the form ending in *iye* is always used with the *pronomen reverentiae* آپ *āp*, and usually refers to *present* time; whereas that ending in *iyo* is used with the pronouns تُو *tū* and تُم *tum*, and is generally a *future* imperative: e.g. آپ چلیے *āp chaliye*, 'please come, or come, Sir, or Sirs;'
اس درخت کے پاس نہ جائیو *is dirakht-ke pās na jāiyo*, 'near this tree thou shalt not go;'
ہرگز انکے بیچنے اور آزاد کرنے کا ہارجیز انکے bechne aur āzād karne-kā irāda na kījiyo, 'never form the design of selling or setting free these (animals).' The form ending in *iyo* is also frequently

¹ Mr. Etherington (*Hindī Grammar*, p. 78) observes that it is incorrect to term the precative ending in *iyo* the plural of that ending in *iye*, and in this opinion he is supported by native scholars; but though the opinion of these is invaluable in respect of the usage and signification of words, it is utterly untrustworthy where their origin or derivation is concerned, especially in Hindī forms. By comparison with the same form in the sister dialects—Panjābī, Sindhī, etc.—we obtain conclusive evidence of the form ending in *iyo* being originally the plural of that ending in *iye*.

employed in benedictions and imprecations: *e.g.* جُدا تَمَّکُو *khudā tum-ko zinda rakhiyo*, ‘may God preserve you alive;’ خُدا کي لَعْنَت کافِروں اور مُشْرِکوں پَر هُوَ جِیو *khudā kī la’nat kāfiron aur mushrikon par hūjiyo*, ‘God’s curse on infidels and believers in a plurality of gods!’

Rem. a. The termination *iye* is derived from the increment *ija* or *ijja*, which is inserted between the root and the terminations in the present, imperative, and definite future of Prākṛit verbs (*Prākṛit-Prakāśa*, ed. Cowell, p. 30 of Introduction). This increment is traced by Lassen to the Sanskrit precativē. In Hindī and Urdū also the Aorist frequently takes the form of the Precative for the three persons of the singular, and adds nasal *n* thereto for the plural: *e.g.* حُکْم قَتْل کا *ḥukm qatl-kā farmā’iyēn*, ‘(your Majesty) is pleased to give the order to put to death.’ (See Syntax.)

177. If the root end in *ī* or *e*, the letter *j* is inserted between it and the affixes of the Precative, and *majhūl e* of the root is changed to the *ma’ruf ī* before the affixes are added: *e.g.* پِیجِیے *pījiye*, from the root پِی *pī*, ‘to drink;’ دِیجِیے *dījiye*, from the root دی *dī*, ‘to give.’ Instead of inserting *j* however, the initial *i* of the affixes may be dropped, and *y* changed to *j*; as پِیجِے *pīje*, پِیجِو *pījo*, دِیجِے *dīje*, دِیجِو *dījo*.

178. The precatives of the verbs هونا *honā*,¹ ‘to be or become,’ and مَرْنَا *marnā*, ‘to die,’ also insert *j*: *e.g.* هُوَ جِیے *hūjiye*.

¹ Forbes and others after him state that “when the root ends in *ī* or *ū*, *j* is inserted for euphony,” etc. But they give no example of a verbal root ending in *ū*, which forms its precativē thus, and we doubt much whether a single example could be given, unless it be the verb *mūnū*, which is rarely if ever used. Indeed, *mūjiye* and *mū’ū* are generally regarded as the precativē and perfect participle, not of *mūnū*, but of *marnā*. Examples of verbal roots ending in *ū* are *chhūnū*, ‘to touch,’ and *chhūnū*, ‘to drip,’ but these would certainly not take *j* in the precativē: *e.g.* *chhū’iye*, not *chhūjiye*. The rule would be equally incorrect if *o* were substituted for *ū*, for *honū* is the only verb of this class that forms its precativē with *jiye*.

hūjiye, هُوَ جِيو *hūjiyo*, مُوَجِيه *mūjiye*. This last, however, also takes the regular forms مَرِيه *mariye*, مَرِيو *mariyo*.

Rem. a. The form of the root employed in the precativè, it may be observed, is generally that which occurs in the perfect participle, and hence we find كِيَجِيه *kījiye*, كِيَجِيه *kīje*, كِيَجِيو *kījiyo*, كِيَجُو *kījo*, as the precativès of كَرْنَا *karnā*, 'to do,' the forms كَرِيه *kariye* and كَرِيو *kariyo*, though occasionally used, being regarded as unchaste. A remarkable exception to this rule, however, is the precativè جَائِيه *jā'iye*, of the verb جَانَا *jānā*, 'to go.'

Rem. b. The affixes يِه *ye* and يُو *yo*, are frequently written يَه *ē* and يُو *ō*, or يَه *ē*, يُو *ō*: e.g. چَلِيَه *chalī'e*, or چَلِيَه *chalī'e*; and when the root ends in *ā*, the initial vowel (*i*) of the affixes may be elided; as فَرْمَائِيَه *farmā'iye*, or فَرْمَائِيَه *farmāye*.

179. The addition of the termination گَا *gā* to the precativè ending in *iye* gives it a *future* signification: e.g. اُنْ كِيَجِيه گَا *un-ke hawāle kījiyegā*, 'you will be pleased to make (them) over to them.'

THE TENSES.

180. The tenses in common use, and which are those allowed by native grammarians, are *nine* in number, exclusive of the Imperative. Of these tenses four relate to an *imperfect* act; viz. 1) the Aorist (مُضَارِع *muzāri'*), which has both a present and a future signification: 2) the Present Imperfect (حَال *hāl*): 3) the Past Continuous or Imperfect (مَاضِي اِسْتِمْرَارِي يَا نَاتِمَام *māzī istimrārī yā nā-tamām*): 4) the Simple Future (مُسْتَقْبِل *mustakbil*): Four relate to a *perfect* or *complete* action, namely: 1) the Past Absolute or Indefinite (مَاضِي مُطْلَق *māzī mutlak*): 2) the Proximate or Present Perfect (مَاضِي قَرِيب *māzī karīb*): 3) the Remote or Past Perfect (مَاضِي بَعِيد *māzī ba'ūd*): 4) the

Future Perfect or Past Potential *मायि शक्ती* *mūzī shakṭī*). Two of these tenses, viz. the Aorist¹ and the Future Perfect, are common to the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods (though the latter is rarely used in the Indicative); the rest pertain to the Indicative Mood. One tense, namely the Past Conditional or Optative, is peculiar to the Subjunctive Mood.

181. The tenses rarely used, and which the native grammarians do not even notice, need not detain the student here: they will be explained hereafter.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

a) THE SIMPLE TENSES.

182. The simple tenses of the Active Voice are *three*; namely, the Aorist, the Past Absolute or Indefinite, and the Past Conditional or Optative.

1) THE AORIST.

183. The Aorist is the only tense that is formed by means of inflectional terminations.² These are:

¹ It is inexplicable to us how Mr. Etherington can say (*Hindī Grammar*, p. 76), "The so-called aorist of the Hindī is not indicative at all; for it never simply asserts, except in ungrammatical *patois*." He must surely have repeatedly heard the expressions *kyā karūnī*, 'What am I to do?' *kahān jā'ūnī*, 'Where shall I go?' *kḥudā jāne*, 'God knows?' And he should have known that the aorist is commonly employed in the indicative mood in proverbs: e.g. *ūnī-chare kuttā kūṭe*, 'the dog bites (or will bite) one mounted on a camel.' To call the tense the *prospective conditional* is to give it a new name, which, so far from being an improvement on the old one, is calculated to mislead. The fact is, this tense is the equivalent of the Prākṛit *present* indefinite, which (since the Sanskrit potential has disappeared from the Prākṛits) also expresses some of the significations of the potential, and hence is used in both the indicative and subjunctive moods.

² The aorist corresponds to the present of the Prākṛit, the personal terminations of which tense are:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1st person	<i>āmi</i> (S. <i>āmi</i>).	{ <i>āno, āmu, āma</i> }	S. <i>āmah</i> .
2nd "	<i>asi</i> (S. <i>asi</i>).	{ <i>amo, amu, ama</i> }	
3rd "	<i>a-di, aī</i> (S. <i>a-ti</i>).	<i>aha</i> (S. <i>a-tha</i>).	
		<i>a-nī</i> (S. <i>a-nī</i>).	

Comparing these terminations with those of the Hindī, we perceive that, in the

SINGULAR.		PLURAL
1st person	وَن ^و <i>ūñ</i> .	يَن <i>eñ</i> .
2nd „	ي <i>e</i> .	و <i>o</i> .
3rd „	ي <i>e</i> .	يَن <i>eñ</i> .

They are added to the verbal root, and are the same for both genders.

184. If the root end in a vowel, certain euphonic changes may be necessary before the terminations are added to it: *e.g.*

1) If the vowel be \bar{a} , \bar{o} , or \bar{i} , the letter *w* may be inserted between it and the terminations *ي* *e* and *يَن* *eñ*; as جَاوِي *jā-w-e*, (thou or he) ‘will go;’ سَوِي *so-w-e*, (thou or he) ‘will sleep;’ جِيوِي *jī-w-eñ*, (we or they) ‘will live.’ In the case of the verb هَوَا *honā*, ‘to be,’ we find, moreover, that the vowels of the terminations are frequently elided, so that we have the forms: 1st person sing. هُوَن *ho-ūñ*, or هُون *hon*; 2nd pers. هَوِي *ho’e*, or هَوِي *ho-w-e*, or هُو *ho*, etc.

Rem. In Urdū, however, *w* is not very generally inserted, *hamza* between the vowels being preferred; *e.g.* جَاوَن *jā’ūñ*, سَوِي *so’e*, جِيئِي *jī’e*; and the form هُوَن *ho’ūñ* is obsolete.

2) If the root end in *ي* *e*, a euphonic *w* may be inserted, as in the case of the other vowels, but the usual practice is, as has been shown in the case of the imperative (§ 175) to drop the root vowel in all the persons: *e.g.* the aorist of دِيْنَا *denā*, ‘to give,’ is دُون *dūñ*, ‘I give or shall give;’ دِي *de*, (thou or he) ‘will give’ . . . دِيَن *den*, (we or they) ‘will give.’

After, the consonants have all been elided (but the letters *m* and *n* have left their mark in the form of the *anusvāra* or nasal), and the vowels *a*, *i* of the second and third persons sing. and the 3rd pers. pl. have coalesced into *e*. In the first person the vowel \bar{a} has been changed to \bar{u} , and final *i* has been elided. In the second person *i* has been elided, and *a* lengthened to *a*.

Rem. a. The personal pronouns may either precede or follow the verb, or they may be omitted. But if any stress is to be laid on the person, the proper pronoun must be expressed, and be placed *before* the verb.

Rem. b. The aorist frequently takes the form of the precativè: *e.g.*
 کیا کیجیے کچھ بن نہیں پڑتی *kyā kī-jīye, kuchh ban nahīn pāṛtī*,
 'what shall I do? nothing is of any avail;' where *kījīye* = *karūn*.
 The subject will be noticed in the Syntax.

2) THE PAST INDEFINITE.

185. The Past Indefinite or Absolute is formed from the perfect participle, which, in the case of an intransitive verb, is inflected to agree in gender and number with its subject or nominative; but if the verb be transitive, a passive construction is employed, the *actor* is put in the Agent case and the *object* of the action becomes the subject or nominative, with which the participle agrees in gender, etc. For example, instead of saying directly, 'the king killed a tigress,' the Urdū uses the form, 'by the king a tigress was killed' (راجائے شیرنی مارے *rājā-ne shernī mārī*). The same construction is employed in all such tenses of the active voice of a transitive verb as are composed of the passive participle, provided the *object* of the act have the *nominative* form; but the object may take the *dative* form, in which case the participle is never inflected.

Rem. This construction is derived from the Sanskrit through the Prākṛit, and would appear to be preferred in Sanskrit to the active construction. In Prākṛit it is very commonly employed, few traces of the Sanskrit preterite tenses remaining in the dialects thereof. The Hindī departs from the Prākṛit, however, in discarding all inflectional terminations, which in the Prākṛit were optionally used.

3) THE PAST CONDITIONAL.

186. The Past Conditional or Optative is formed from the imperfect participle, which is inflected to agree in gender and number with the subject or nominative.

Rem. This tense appears to perplex English writers on Urdū grammar greatly. It is called 'The Indefinite,' 'The Present Indefinite,' 'The Retrospective Conditional,' etc., and rendered mostly by the English present. Now the fact is, it is not a *present* tense at all, but a *past subjunctive*. The error is probably due to the fact that the present tense is sometimes used elliptically without the auxiliary, and so has the appearance of the conditional; but the two should not be confounded. The conditional was, in all probability, a compound tense originally.

b) THE COMPOUND TENSES.

1) THE FUTURE.

187. The Future is formed by adding to the Aorist the participle گā (a contraction of gaā, whence gayā, 'gone'), which is inflected to agree with the nominative in gender and number. The Future is therefore properly a Desiderative, or Intentional: *e.g.* میں چلوں گا main chālūngā, 'I shall go or move,' is literally, 'I am gone (that) I move,' *i.e.* 'I wish to move,' or 'I am going to move,' and hence we occasionally find it so used: *e.g.* میں دیکھوں گا main dekhūngā, 'I wish to see,' 'I would see' = میں دیکھنے چاہتا ہوں main dekhne chāhtā hūn.

188. The remaining compound tenses (with the exception of the Future Perfect) are composed of the imperfect or perfect participle and the following auxiliaries, which are also used alone to express simple existence.

PRESENT.

Singular.

مَیں ہوں *main hūn*, 'I am.'تُو ہے *tū hai*, 'thou art.'وہ ہے *wōh hai*, 'he is.'

Plural.

ہم ہیں *ham haiṅ*, 'we are.'تُم ہو *tum ho*, 'you are.'وہی ہیں *we haiṅ*, 'they are.'

PAST.

مَیں تھا *main thā*, 'I was.'تُو تھا *tū thā*, 'thou wast.'وہ تھا *wōh thā*, 'he was.'ہم تھے *ham the*, 'we were.'تُم تھے *tum the*, 'you were.'وہی تھے *we the*, 'they were.'

If the subject or nominative be feminine, *thā* takes the feminine termination: *e.g.* sing. *thī*, pl. *thīn*.

Rem. These are not "anomalous formations derived from *hona*," as Professor Williams calls them, for *honā* springs from the Sanskrit *dhū*, 'to be or become,' the Prākṛit form of which is *ho* or *huva*; whereas the forms *hūn*, etc., are derived from the present tense of the Sanskrit *as*, 'to be:' *e.g.* *hūn* = P. *amhi* = S. *asmi*; *hai* = P. *asi* = S. *asi*, and so on, the process of transformation in Hindī being analogous to that of the terminations of the aorist; *h*, however (into which the *s* also of *asi*, etc., is changed), being in no instance elided, but transposed. The form *thā* is traceable to the Sanskrit root *sthā*, 'to stand,' which is used even in Sanskrit as a substantive verb with the sense of 'to be.'

2) THE PRESENT IMPERFECT.

189. The Present Imperfect is formed by adding the first of the above auxiliary tenses to the imperfect participle of a verb: *e.g.* masc. چلتا ہوں *chaltā hūn*, fem. چلتی ہوں *chaltī hūn*, 'I am going.'

Rem. a. The present tense is sometimes formed by adding the same auxiliary to the aorist of a verb; as چلے ہوں *chalūn hūn*, 'I go or am going.' This form, which is properly an *indefinite* present, was at one period general; numerous instances of its use occur in the poets,

king has killed three tigresses;’ (اُس لڑکے نے مُجھکو or مُجھے مارا ہے) *us larke-ne mujhko (or mujhe) mārā hai*, ‘that boy has beaten me.’ When the object of the act is represented by a personal pronoun, the participle will always remain uninflected, since such pronouns admit of the *dative* form of the accusative alone.

5) THE REMOTE OR PAST PERFECT.

192. The Past Perfect is formed by adding the auxiliary تہا *thā* to the perfect participle of a verb: *e.g.* مَیں چلا *main chālā thā*, ‘I had gone;’ ہم چلے تھے *ham chale the*, ‘we had gone,’ feminine ہم چلی تھیں *ham chalī thīn*, it being sufficient to add the plural termination to the auxiliary. If the verb be *transitive*, the same construction is employed as in the Past Absolute and Present Perfect: *e.g.* مَیں نے تین گھوڑیاں (یا گھوڑی) خریدی تھیں *main ne tīn ghorīyān (yā ghorī) kharīdī thīn*, ‘I had purchased three mares,’ *lit.* ‘by me three mares had been purchased.’

6) THE FUTURE PERFECT, OR PAST POTENTIAL.

193. This tense is formed by adding the Future of the verb ہونا *honā*, ‘to be or become,’ to the perfect participle of a verb: *e.g.* مَیں چلا ہوں گا *main chālā hūngā*, ‘I shall have gone,’ or, more commonly, ‘I may have gone.’ The termination گا *gā* of the Future is occasionally dropped, or, in other words, the Aorist of the verb *honā* is added to the perfect participle, and then the signification is invariably that of the Past Potential: *e.g.* مَیں چلا ہوں *main chālā hon*, ‘I may have

gone.' If the verb be *transitive*, the construction is the same as in the case of other tenses composed of passive participles.

Rem. It is a mistake to say that this tense "is not of very frequent occurrence," as all English writers on Hindī and Urdū grammar do. It is commonly employed, both colloquially and in writing; not however as a *Future Perfect*, but as a *Past Potential*, expressing the possibility, or uncertainty, of an act.

CONJUGATION.

194. We now proceed to conjugate three verbs: viz. the *transitive-active* verb لکھنا *likhnā*, 'to write;' the *intransitive-active* verb چلنا *chalnā*, 'to move or go,' and the *substantive* verb ہونا *honā*, 'to be.' The masculine forms alone will be given; it will therefore be borne in mind that, in the Future and all tenses composed of the imperfect and perfect participles, the final vowel *ā* of the sing. is changed to *ī* for the feminine, and the final vowel *e* of the plural to *īn*. The verbal nouns and adjectives are declined like other nouns and adjectives ending in *ā*. The arrangement of the moods and tenses differs but slightly from that found in existing grammars; it is necessary therefore to again direct attention to the fact that the Conditional, though classed with the tenses derived from the imperfect participle, is a *past* tense of the *subjunctive* mood. The Imperative, properly speaking, consists of the second person alone, and this is all that is given; the remaining persons are

identical with those of the Aorist, from which indeed they are borrowed.

I. ROOT لَكِه *likh*, 'to write.'

Infinitive or Gerund, لِكْهِنَا *likhnā*, 'to write,' 'writing.'

Noun of Agency, and Future Act. Participle, لِكْهِنِے والا *likhne-wālā*, 'writer,' 'about to write.'

Participle.

Imperfect, لِكْهَتَا *likhtā*, 'writing.'

Perfect, لِكْهَا *likhā*, 'written.'

Progressive, لِكْهَتَا هُوَا *likhtā hū'ā*, 'in the act of writing,' 'one who is in the act of writing.'

Passive, لِكْهَا هُوَا *likhā hū'ā*, 'been written,' 'what has been written.'

Past Conjunctive { لِكْهَ - لِكْهَ كَر - لِكْهَ كَرِے } 'having written.'

Adverbial, لِكْهَتِے هِي *likhte-hī*, 'in the very act, or on the instant, of writing.'

TENSES FORMED FROM THE ROOT.

1). THE IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

تُو لِكْهَ *tū likh*,¹ 'write thou.'

تُمْ لِكْهَو *tum likho*, 'write you.'

Precative, لِكْهِيے *likhiye*, 'write, or be pleased to write.'

لِكْهِيَو *likhiyo*, 'you shall or will write.'

Future لِكْهِيَا *likhi'egā*, 'you will be pleased to write.'

¹ It should be observed that there is no necessity to express the personal pronoun in the Imperative, the Aorist, and the Present Perfect (and, in the case of intransitive verbs, in the Past Perfect, and Past Potential), unless any stress is to be laid on the person; and that, in all the tenses, the pronouns, if expressed, as commonly follow as precede the verb.

2). THE AORIST.

‘I write, or shall write, or should write,’ etc.

SINGULAR.

مَیں لکھوں *main likhūn.*تُو لکھے *tū likhe.*وہ لکھے *wōh likhe.*

PLURAL.

ہم لکھیں *ham likhēn.*تُم لکھو *tum likho.*وہ لکھیں *we likhēn.*

3). THE FUTURE.

‘I shall write,’ etc.

مَیں لکھوں گا *main likhūngā.*تُو لکھے گا *tū likhegā.*وہ لکھے گا *wōh likhegā.*ہم لکھیں گے *ham likhenge.*تُم لکھو گے *tum likhoge.*وہ لکھیں گے *we likhenge.*

TENSES FORMED FROM THE IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

1). THE PAST CONDITIONAL OR OPTATIVE.

‘Had I written,’ or ‘Did I write,’ or (Would that) ‘I had written,’ etc

مَیں لکھتا *main likhtā.*تُو لکھتا *tū likhtā.*وہ لکھتا *wōh likhtā.*ہم لکھتے *ham likhte.*تُم لکھتے *tum likhte.*وہ لکھتے *we likhte.*

2). THE PRESENT IMPERFECT.

‘I am writing,’ etc.

مَیں لکھتا ہوں *main likhtā hūn.*تُو لکھتا ہے *tū likhtā hai.*وہ لکھتا ہے *wōh likhtā hai.*ہم لکھتے ہیں *ham likhte hain.*تُم لکھتے ہو *tum likhte ho.*وہ لکھتے ہیں *we likhte hain.*

3). THE PAST CONTINUOUS OR IMPERFECT.

‘I was writing,’ and ‘I used to write’

مَیں لکھتا تھا *main likhtā thā.*تُو لکھتا تھا *tū likhtā thā.*وہ لکھتا تھا *wōh likhtā thā.*ہم لکھتے تھے *ham likhte the.*تُم لکھتے تھے *tum likhte the.*وہ لکھتے تھے *we likhte the.*

TENSES FORMED FROM THE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

1). THE PAST ABSOLUTE OR INDEFINITE.

'I wrote,' or *lit.* 'By me (it) was written,' etc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

مَیں نے لکھا *main-ne likhā*.¹
 تُو نے لکھا *tū-ne likhā*.
 اُن نے لکھا or اُس نے *us-ne or un-ne*
likhā.

ہم نے لکھا *ham-ne likhā*.
 تم نے لکھا *tum-ne likhā*.
 اُنہوں نے لکھا *unhoñ-ne likhā*.²

2). THE PROXIMATE OR PRESENT PERFECT.

'I have written,' *lit.* 'By me (it) has been written,' etc.

مَیں نے لکھا ہے *main-ne likhā hai*.
 تُو نے لکھا ہے *tū-ne likhā hai*.
 اُن نے لکھا ہے or اُس نے *us-ne or un-ne*
likhā hai.

ہم نے لکھا ہے *ham-ne likhā hai*.
 تم نے لکھا ہے *tum-ne likhā hai*.
 اُنہوں نے لکھا ہے *unhoñ-ne likhā hai*.

3). THE REMOTE OR PAST PERFECT.

'I had written,' *lit.* 'By me (it) had been written.'

مَیں نے لکھا تھا *main-ne likhā thā*.
 تُو نے لکھا تھا *tū-ne likhā thā*.
 اُن نے لکھا تھا or اُس نے *us-ne or un-ne*
likhā thā.

ہم نے لکھا تھا *ham-ne likhā thā*.
 تم نے لکھا تھا *tum-ne likhā thā*.
 اُنہوں نے لکھا تھا *unhoñ-ne likhā thā*.

4). THE FUTURE PERFECT, OR PAST POTENTIAL.

'I shall have written,' (more commonly) 'I may have written,' etc.

مَیں نے لکھا ہوگا *main-ne likhā hogā*.
 تُو نے لکھا ہوگا *tū-ne likhā hogā*.
 اُن نے لکھا ہوگا or اُس نے *us-ne or un-ne*
likhā hogā.

ہم نے لکھا ہوگا *ham-ne likhā hogā*.
 تم نے لکھا ہوگا *tum-ne likhā hogā*.
 اُنہوں نے لکھا ہوگا *unhoñ-ne likhā*
hogā.

¹ It will be understood that the participle takes this form only when the *object* of the act is in the sing. masc., or in the form of the *dative*; in every other case it will be inflected to agree with the object in gender and number: *e.g.* مَیں نے چِٹھی لکھی *main-ne chitṭhī likhī*, 'I wrote a letter.'

² The form اُن نے *un-ne* of the Agent case may also be used; but as this form is generally used for the sing. (not "to indicate respect," as is generally supposed, see § 141), the form اُنہوں نے *unhoñ-ne* is commonly employed for the plural.

Rem. a.—The termination گ *gā* of *hogā* may even be dropped, in which case the signification is invariably that of the Past Potential: *e.g.* اُس نے لکھا ہو *us-ne likhā ho*, 'he may have written.'

Rem. b.—If the root ends in a vowel, the conjugation is effected in the same way: the perfect participle is formed by inserting a euphonic *y* between the root and the termination *ā* (this *y*, however, being generally dropped again in the masc. pl. and in the fem.), and certain optional forms of the Aorist occur (§ 184): *e.g.*

Root کھا *khā*, 'to eat.'

Perf. part. کھایا *khāyā*, 'eaten.'

AORIST.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
میں کھاؤں <i>main khā'ūn</i> .	ہم کھائیں or کھاویں <i>ham khā'en or khāwēn</i> .
تُو کھائے or کھاوی <i>tū khā'e or khāwe</i> .	تُم کھاؤ <i>tum khā'o</i> .
وہ کھائے or کھاوی <i>wōh khā'e or khāwe</i> .	وہ کھائیں or کھاویں <i>we khā'en or khāwēn</i> .

PAST ABSOLUTE.

میں نے کھایا <i>main ne khāyā</i> .	ہم نے کھایا <i>ham-ne khāyā</i> .
تُو نے کھایا <i>tū-ne khāyā</i> .	تُم نے کھایا <i>tum-ne khāyā</i> .
اُن نے کھایا <i>un-ne khāyā</i> .	اُنہوں نے کھایا <i>un-hon-ne khāyā</i> .

II. ROOT چل *chal*, 'to move, or go.'

Infinitive or Gerund, چلنا *chal-nā*, 'to go,' 'going.'

Noun of Agency, and چلنے والا *chalne-wālā*, 'goer,' 'about

Future Active Participle, } to go.'

Participle.	Imperfect	چلتا <i>chal-tā</i> , 'moving or going.'
	Perfect	چلا <i>chal-ā</i> , 'moved or gone.'
	Progressive	چلتا ہوا <i>chaltā hū'ā</i> , 'in the act of moving,' etc.
	Past Perfect	چلا ہوا <i>chalā hū'ā</i> , 'become moved,' 'gone.'
	Past Conjunctive	{ چل - چلکر - چلکر کے } 'having moved,' <i>chal, chal-kar, chal-kar-ke,</i> etc.
	Adverbial	چلتے ہی <i>chalte-hī</i> , 'in the very act, or on the instant of moving,' etc.

THE IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

تُو چل *tū chal*, 'go thou.'

PLURAL.

تُم چلو *tum chalo*, 'go you.'

Precative, چلیے *chaliye*, 'go, or be pleased to go.' } چلیو *chaliyo*, 'you shall or will go.'

Future چلیگا *chali'egā*, 'you will be pleased to go.'

THE AORIST.

'I go, or shall go, or should go,' etc.

میں چلوں *main chalūn*.

تُو چلے *tū chale*.

وہ چلے *wōh chale*.

ہم چلیں *ham chalen*.

تُم چلو *tum chalo*.

وی چلیں *we chalen*.

THE FUTURE.

'I shall go,' etc.

میں چلوں گا *main chalūngā*.

تُو چلیگا *tū chalegā*.

وہ چلیگا *wōh chalegā*.

ہم چلیں گے *ham chalenge*.

تُم چلو گے *tum chaloge*.

وی چلیں گے *we chalenge*.

THE PAST CONDITIONAL OR OPTATIVE.

'Had I gone,' 'Did I go,' (Would that) 'I had gone,' etc.

میں چلتا *main chaltā*.

تُو چلتا *tū chaltā*.

وہ چلتا *wōh chaltā*.

ہم چلتے *ham chalte*.

تُم چلتے *tum chalte*.

وی چلتے *we chalte*.

THE PRESENT IMPERFECT.

'I am going,' etc.

میں چلتا ہوں *main chaltā hūn*.

تُو چلتا ہے *tū chaltā hai*.

وہ چلتا ہے *wōh chaltā hai*.

ہم چلتے ہیں *ham chalte hain*.

تُم چلتے ہو *tum chalte ho*.

وی چلتے ہیں *we chalte hain*.

THE PAST CONTINUOUS OR IMPERFECT.

'I was going,' etc.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
مَیں چلتا تھا <i>main chaltā thā.</i>	ہم چلتے تھے <i>ham chaltē the.</i>
تُو چلتا تھا <i>tū chaltā thā.</i>	تُم چلتے تھے <i>tum chaltē the.</i>
وہ چلتا تھا <i>wōh chaltā thā.</i>	وہ چلتے تھے <i>we chaltē the.</i>

THE PAST ABSOLUTE OR INDEFINITE.

'I went,' etc.

مَیں چلا <i>main chalā.</i>	ہم چلے <i>ham chale.</i>
تُو چلا <i>tū chalā.</i>	تُم چلے <i>tum chale.</i>
وہ چلا <i>wōh chalā.</i>	وہ چلے <i>we chale.</i>

THE PROXIMATE, OR PRESENT PERFECT.

'I have set out, or gone,' etc.

مَیں چلا ہوں <i>main chalā hūn.</i>	ہم چلے گئے ہیں <i>ham chale haiñ.</i>
تُو چلا ہے <i>tū chalā hai.</i>	تُم چلے ہو <i>tum chale ho.</i>
وہ چلا ہے <i>wōh chalā hai.</i>	وہ چلے گئے ہیں <i>we chale haiñ.</i>

THE REMOTE, OR PAST PERFECT.

'I had started or gone,' etc.

مَیں چلا تھا <i>main chalā thā.</i>	ہم چلے تھے <i>ham chale the.</i>
تُو چلا تھا <i>tū chalā thā.</i>	تُم چلے تھے <i>tum chale the.</i>
وہ چلا تھا <i>wōh chalā thā.</i>	وہ چلے تھے <i>we chale the.</i>

THE FUTURE PERFECT, OR PAST POTENTIAL.

'I shall have gone,' or (more commonly) 'I may have gone,' etc.

مَیں چلا ہوں گا or ہوں <i>main chalā hūngā or hōn.</i>	ہم چلے ہوں گے or ہوں <i>ham chale hūnge or hōn.</i>
تُو چلا ہو گا or ہو <i>tū chalā hogā or ho.</i>	تُم چلے ہو گے or ہو <i>tum chale hoge or ho.</i>
وہ چلا ہو گا or ہو <i>wōh chalā hogā or ho.</i>	وہ چلے ہوں گے or ہوں <i>we chale hōnge or hōn.</i>

Rem. The above is the conjugation of an intransitive-active verb, the root of which ends in a consonant. If the root ends in a vowel, the acrist

admits of certain optional forms, and the masculine singular of the perfect participle takes an euphonic *y* between the root and the termination. The following tenses will therefore suffice to show the process of conjugation :

Root \bar{a} , 'to come.'

Pref. Part. $\bar{a}y\bar{a}$, 'come.'

THE AORIST.

'I come, or shall come, or should come,' etc.

SINGULAR.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{m}\bar{a}i'n\ \bar{a}'\bar{u}n$.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{t}\bar{u}\ \bar{a}'e$ or $\bar{a}we$.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{w}\bar{o}h\ \bar{a}'e$ or $\bar{a}we$.

PLURAL.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{h}am\ \bar{a}'en$ or $\bar{a}wen$.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{t}um\ \bar{a}'o$.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{w}e\ \bar{a}'en$ or $\bar{a}wen$.

THE PAST ABSOLUTE, OR INDEFINITE.

'I came,' etc.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{m}\bar{a}i'n\ \bar{a}y\bar{a}$.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{t}\bar{u}\ \bar{a}y\bar{a}$.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{w}\bar{o}h\ \bar{a}y\bar{a}$.

Fem. $\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{m}\bar{a}i'n\ \bar{a}'i$, etc.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{h}am\ \bar{a}'e$.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{t}um\ \bar{a}'e$.

$\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{w}e\ \bar{a}'e$.

Fem. $\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ $\bar{h}am\ \bar{a}'in$, etc.

III. ROOT ho ,¹ 'to be, or become.'

Infinitive or Gerund $hon\bar{a}$, 'to be, or become,' 'being,' etc.

Fut. Act. Part. $h\bar{o}ne-w\bar{a}l\bar{a}$,² 'about to be, or become,'
'one who, or what, is, or is about, to be or become.'

Participle.	Imperfect	$h\bar{o}t\bar{a}$, 'being, or becoming.'
	Perfect	$\bar{h}\bar{u}'\bar{a}$, 'been, or become.'
	Progressive	$\bar{h}\bar{o}t\bar{a}\ \bar{h}\bar{u}'\bar{a}$, 'in the act of being or becoming.'
	Conjunctive	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \bar{h}\bar{o}-\bar{h}\bar{o}k\bar{r}-\bar{h}\bar{o}k\bar{r}\bar{k}\bar{e} \\ \bar{h}\bar{o},\ \bar{h}\bar{o}k\bar{a}r,\ \bar{h}\bar{o}k\bar{a}r-\bar{k}\bar{e}, \end{array} \right\}$ 'having been or become.'
	Adverbial	$\bar{h}\bar{o}t\bar{e}-\bar{h}\bar{z}$, 'in the very act, or in the instant of being,' etc.

¹ Urdū grammarians, after the example of the Arabic, have two names for the verb $hon\bar{a}$, and the other auxiliary verbs with the same signification. When the substantive verb is used to denote simple *being* or *existence*, they term it $f\bar{e}'l\bar{e}\ n\bar{a}k\bar{i}š$, 'the incomplete or defective verb,' because an attribute is required to complete the sense; but when it contains the attribute in itself, and requires no other, they term it $f\bar{e}'l\bar{e}\ t\bar{a}mm$, 'the complete or absolute verb.'

² Urdū also occasionally employs the common Hindī form $hon\bar{h}\bar{a}r$, 'what is to be,' etc., where the affix $\bar{h}\bar{a}r$ is added to the verbal noun $hon\bar{a}$.

THE IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

تُو ہو <i>tū ho</i> , 'be or become thou.'	تُمْ ہو <i>tum ho</i> , 'be or become you.'
Precative ہو جیے <i>hūjiye</i> , 'be pleased to become,' etc.	ہو جیو <i>hūjiyo</i> , 'you shall be or become.'
Fut. ہو جائیگا <i>hūji'egā</i> , 'will you be pleased to become.'	

THE AORIST.

'I am, I shall be, I should be, or become,' etc.

میں * ہوؤں - ہوں <i>main ho'ūn</i> or <i>hoñ</i> . ¹	ہم ہوویں - ہوئیں * ہوں <i>ham hoven</i> , <i>ho'en</i> , or <i>hoñ</i> .
تُو ہووی - ہوئی * ہو - ہو <i>tu howe</i> , <i>ho'e</i> , or <i>ho</i> .	تُمْ ہو <i>tum ho</i> .
وہ ہووی - ہوئی * ہو - ہو <i>wōh howe</i> , <i>ho'e</i> , or <i>ho</i> .	وی ہوویں - ہوئیں * ہوں <i>we hoven</i> , <i>ho'en</i> , or <i>hoñ</i> .

THE FUTURE.

'I shall be, or become,' etc.

میں * ہوؤنگا - ہونگا <i>main ho'ūngā</i> , or <i>hūngā</i> . ³	ہم * ہووینگے - ہونگے <i>ham howenge</i> or <i>honge</i> .
تُو ہووےگا - ہوگا <i>tū howegā</i> , or <i>hogā</i> .	تُمْ ہوگے <i>tum hoge</i> .
وہ * ہووےگا - ہوگا <i>wōh howegā</i> , or <i>hogā</i> .	وی * ہووینگے - ہونگے <i>we howenge</i> , <i>honge</i> .

THE PAST CONDITIONAL OR OPTATIVE.

'Were I,' 'Did I become,' (Would that) 'I were,' etc.

میں ہوتا <i>main hotā</i> .	ہم ہوتے <i>ham hote</i> .
تُو ہوتا <i>tū hotā</i> .	تُمْ ہوتے <i>tum hote</i> .
وہ ہوتا <i>wōh hotā</i> .	وی ہوتے <i>we hote</i> .

¹ The forms marked with an asterisk are now seldom or never used. The forms *ho'egā* and *ho'enge* in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. and the 1st and 3rd pers. plural of the Future, which are given in Forbes' and other grammars, rarely if ever occur in the Urdū of the present period.

THE PRESENT IMPERFECT.

'I am becoming,' etc.

SINGULAR.

میں ہوتا ہوں *main hotā hūn.*
 تُو ہوتا ہے *tū hotā hai.*
 وہ ہوتا ہے *wōh hotā hai.*

PLURAL.

ہم ہوتے ہیں *ham hote hain.*
 تم ہوتے ہو *tum hote ho.*
 وہی ہوتے ہیں *we hote hain.*

THE PAST CONTINUOUS OR IMPERFECT.

'I was becoming,' etc.

میں ہوتا تھا *main hotā thā.*
 تُو ہوتا تھا *tū hotā thā.*
 وہ ہوتا تھا *wōh hotā thā.*

ہم ہوتے تھے *ham hote the.*
 تم ہوتے تھے *tum hote the.*
 وہی ہوتے تھے *we hote the.*

THE PAST ABSOLUTE OR INDEFINITE.

'I became,' etc.

میں ہوا *main hū'ā.*
 تُو ہوا *tū hū'ā.*
 وہ ہوا *wōh hū'ā.*

ہم ہوئے *ham hū'e.*
 تم ہوئے *tum hū'e.*
 وہی ہوئے *we hū'e.*

THE PROXIMATE OR PRESENT PERFECT.

'I have become,' etc.

میں ہوا ہوں *main hū'ā hūn.*
 تُو ہوا ہے *tū hū'ā hai.*
 وہ ہوا ہے *wōh hū'ā hai.*

ہم ہوئے ہیں *ham hū'e hain.*
 تم ہوئے ہو *tum hū'e ho.*
 وہی ہوئے ہیں *we hū'e hain.*

THE REMOTE OR PAST PERFECT.

'I had become,' etc.

میں ہوا تھا *main hū'ā thā.*
 تُو ہوا تھا *tū hū'ā thā.*
 وہ ہوا تھا *wōh hū'ā thā.*

ہم ہوئے تھے *ham hū'e the.*
 تم ہوئے تھے *tum hū'e the.*
 وہی ہوئے تھے *we hū'e the.*

THE FUTURE PERFECT AND PAST POTENTIAL.

‘I shall have become,’ or ‘I may have become,’ etc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

مَیں ہوا ہونگا۔ ہوں
main hū'ā
hūngā, or hon.تُو ہوا ہوگا۔ ہو
tū hū'ā hogā, or ho.وہ ہوا ہوگا۔ ہو
wəh hū'ā hogā, or ho.ہم ہوئے ہونگے۔ ہوں
ham hū'e
honge, or hon.تُم ہوئے ہوگے۔ ہو
tum hū'e hoge,
or ho.وہی ہوئے ہونگے۔ ہوں
we hū'e hongē,
or hon.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

195. We may here notice the tenses not in common use, spoken of in § 181. These are: 1). The *Future Imperfect*, which is formed by adding the *Future* of the verb ہونا *honā* to the imperfect participle of a verb: 2). The *Present Potential*, formed by adding the *Aorist* of the verb ہونا *honā* to the imperfect part. of a verb: 3). The *Past Perfect Continuous* of the *Subjunctive* mood, formed by adding the imperfect participle of the verb ہونا *honā* to the imperfect participle of another verb: 4) the *Past Perfect Subjunctive*, formed by adding the imperfect participle of the verb ہونا *honā*, to the perfect part. of another verb. The first and second of these tenses are both called حالِ مُتَشَکِّی *hāl mutashakkī*, ‘the present potential,’ by native grammarians, because the first is frequently used, the second always, to express *uncertainty* or *possibility*. The third and fourth are both termed ماضیِ شَرْطِی *māzī shartī*, ‘the past conditional.’ They are very seldom used; the shorter form of the *māzī shartī*, given among the tenses in common use, being preferred. The four tenses are subjoined:

1). THE FUTURE IMPERFECT.

‘I shall be going,’ or ‘I may be going,’ etc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

میں چلتا ہوں گا main chaltā hūngā.	ہم چلتے ہوں گے ham chalte hōnge.
تُو چلتا ہو گا tū chaltā hogā.	تُم چلتے ہو گے tum chalte hoge.
وہ چلتا ہو گا wōh chaltā hogā.	وہ چلتے ہوں گے we chalte hōnge.

2). THE PRESENT POTENTIAL.

‘I may be going,’ etc.

میں چلتا ہوں main chaltā hōh.	ہم چلتے ہوں ham chalte hōh.
تُو چلتا ہو tū chaltā ho.	تُم چلتے ہو tum chalte ho.
وہ چلتا ہو wōh chaltā ho.	وہ چلتے ہوں we chalte hōh.

3). THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (SUBJUNCTIVE).

‘Had I been going,’ or ‘I might have been going,’ etc.

میں چلتا ہوتا main chaltā hotā.	ہم چلتے ہوتے ham chalte hote.
تُو چلتا ہوتا tū chaltā hotā.	تُم چلتے ہوتے tum chalte hote.
وہ چلتا ہوتا wōh chaltā hotā.	وہ چلتے ہوتے we chalte hote.

4). THE PAST PERFECT (SUBJUNCTIVE).

‘Had I gone,’ etc.

میں چلا ہوتا main chalā hotā.	ہم چلے ہوتے ham chale hote.
تُو چلا ہوتا tū chalā hotā.	تُم چلے ہوتے tum chale hote.
وہ چلا ہوتا wōh chalā hotā.	وہ چلے ہوتے we chale hote.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

196. Only *transitive* verbs have a passive voice. The tenses of this are regularly formed in all verbs by means of the tenses of the verb جانا *jānā*, ‘to go’ (the perfect participle of which is گیا *gayā*); though every form in which the verb جانا *jānā* is found is not passive: *e.g.* چلا *chalā jānā*, ‘to go away,’ اُٹھا *uthā jānā*, ‘to rise up,’ ‘to be able to rise,’ are active forms of intransitive

verbs. Whether the verb is passive or intransitive is decided not by the presence of the auxiliary *jānā*, but by the nature of the participle prefixed to it. If this be *passive*, so also, generally, is the verb: if it is not passive, but only a perfect participle of an intransitive verb, neither is the verb passive.

197. In the following conjugation of the passive voice of the verb دیکھنا *dekhnā*, 'to see,' the masculine forms alone are given. If the nominative to the verb be feminine, the termination of the passive participle must be changed to *-ī* in both the singular and the plural; and that of all the participial forms, and of the Future, of the auxiliary must be changed to *-ī* in the singular, and *-īn* in the plural.

PASSIVE VERB, دیکھا جانا *dekhā jānā*, 'to be seen.'

Infinitive or Verbal Noun, دیکھا جانا *dekhā jānā*, {'to be seen,'
'being seen.'

Imperfect Participle, دیکھا جاتا *dekhā jātā*, 'being seen.'

Passive Participle, دیکھا گیا *dekhā gayā*, 'been seen.'¹

THE IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

تُو دیکھا جا *tū dekhā jā*, 'be thou seen.' تُم دیکھے جاؤ *tum dekhe jā'o*,
'be you seen.'

THE AORIST.

² 'I am, or shall be, or should be, seen,' etc.

میں دیکھا جاؤں <i>main dekhā jā'ūn</i> .	ہم دیکھے جاویں - جائیں <i>ham dekhe jāwēn or jā'en</i> .
تُو دیکھا جاویں - جائے <i>tū dekhā jāwe or jā'e</i> .	تُم دیکھے جاؤ <i>tum dekhe jā'o</i> .
وہ دیکھا جاویں - جائے <i>wōh dekhā jāwe or jā'e</i> .	وہ دیکھے جاویں - جائیں <i>we dekhe jāwēn or jā'en</i> .

¹ It is needless to give the remaining participles, as none of them, except perhaps the adverbial (دیکھے جاتے ہی) *dekhe jāte-hī*, 'on the instant of being seen,' are ever used.

THE FUTURE.

'I shall be seen,' etc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

میں دیکھا جاؤنگا main dekhā jā'ūngā.

ہم دیکھے جائیگے ham dekhe jā'eṅge.

تُو دیکھا جاویگا۔ جاؤگے tū dekhā jā'wegā, or jā'egā.

تُم دیکھے جاؤگے tum dekhe jā'oge.

وہ دیکھا جاویگا۔ جاؤگے wōh dekhā jā'wegā, or jā'egā.

وِی دیکھے جاویںگے we dekhe jā'wēnge.

THE PAST CONDITIONAL OR OPTATIVE.

'Had I been seen,' 'Were I seen,' etc.

میں دیکھا جاتا main dekhā jātā.

ہم دیکھے جاتے ham dekhe jāte.

تُو دیکھا جاتا tū dekhā jātā.

تُم دیکھے جاتے tum dekhe jāte.

وہ دیکھا جاتا wōh dekhā jātā.

وِی دیکھے جاتے we dekhe jāte.

THE PRESENT IMPERFECT.

'I am being seen,' etc.

میں دیکھا جاتا ہوں main dekhā jātā hūn.

ہم دیکھے جاتے ہیں ham dekhe jāte haiṅ.

تُو دیکھا جاتا ہے tū dekhā jātā hai.

تُم دیکھے جاتے ہو tum dekhe jāte ho.

وہ دیکھا جاتا ہے wōh dekhā jātā hai.

وِی دیکھے جاتے ہیں we dekhe jāte haiṅ.

THE PAST CONTINUOUS OR IMPERFECT.

'I was being seen,' etc.

میں دیکھا جاتا تھا main dekhā jātā thā.

ہم دیکھے جاتے تھے ham dekhe jāte the.

تُو دیکھا جاتا تھا tū dekhā jātā thā.

تُم دیکھے جاتے تھے tum dekhe jāte the.

وہ دیکھا جاتا تھا wōh dekhā jātā thā.

وِی دیکھے جاتے تھے we dekhe jāte the.

THE PAST ABSOLUTE OR INDEFINITE.

'I was seen,' etc.

SINGULAR.

میں دیکھا گیا *main dekhā gayā.*تُو دیکھا گیا *tū dekhā gayā.*وہ دیکھا گیا *wōh dekhā gayā.*

PLURAL.

ہم دیکھے گئے *ham dekhe ga'e.*تُم دیکھے گئے *tum dekhe ga'e.*وِی دیکھے گئے *we dekhe ga'e.*

THE PROXIMATE OR PRESENT PERFECT

'I have been seen,' etc.

میں دیکھا گیا ہوں *main dekhā gayā hūn.*تُو دیکھا گیا ہے *tū dekhā gayā hai.*وہ دیکھا گیا ہے *wōh dekhā gayā hai.*ہم دیکھے گئے ہیں *ham dekhe ga'e hain.*تُم دیکھے گئے ہو *tum dekhe ga'e ho.*وِی دیکھے گئے ہیں *we dekhe ga'e hain.*

THE REMOTE OR PAST PERFECT.

'I had been seen,' etc.

میں دیکھا گیا تھا *main dekhā gayā thā.*تُو دیکھا گیا تھا *tū dekhā gayā thā.*وہ دیکھا گیا تھا *wōh dekhā gayā thā.*ہم دیکھے گئے تھے *ham dekhe ga'e the.*تُم دیکھے گئے تھے *tum dekhe ga'e the.*وِی دیکھے گئے تھے *we dekhe ga'e the.*

THE FUTURE PERFECT, OR PAST POTENTIAL.

'I shall have been seen,' or more commonly, 'I may have been seen,' etc.

میں دیکھا گیا ہوں گا۔ ہوں *main dekhā gayā hūngā, or hoñ.*تُو دیکھا گیا ہو گا۔ ہو *tū dekhā gayā hogā, or ho.*وہ دیکھا گیا ہو گا۔ ہو *wōh dekhā gayā hogā, or ho.*ہم دیکھے گئے ہوں گے۔ ہوں *ham dekhe ga'e hōnge, or hoñ.*تُم دیکھے گئے ہو گے۔ ہو *tum dekhe ga'e hōge, or ho.*وِی دیکھے گئے ہوں گے۔ ہوں *we dekhe ga'e hōnge, or hoñ.*

DERIVATIVE VERBS.

198. Derivative verbs may be classed under the three heads of *Causals*, *Denominatives*, and *Compound Verbs*.

I. CAUSAL VERBS.¹

199. From nearly every verb in the language a causal may be derived. This causal will be *transitive* if formed from an *intransitive* verb, *doubly transitive* or *causative* if formed from a *transitive* verb. From most causals again a second or *double* causal may be formed.

200. Simple verbal roots are generally changed into causal bases by the addition of the increment ۱- *ā*, and into those which are doubly causal by means of the increment ۱, *wā*,² and the root is then treated as a primitive root ending in *ā*. But in some verbs the causal characteristic *ā* becomes ۱ *lā*; and in others it is inserted in the root itself: hence three cases arise:

a) The causal may, generally speaking, be formed by adding ۱- *ā* to the root of a primitive verb, whether it be transitive or intransitive, and the double causal by inserting *w* before the increment *ā* of the causal: *e.g.*

PRIMITIVE VERB.	CAUSAL.	DOUBLE CAUSAL.
پَرَهَنَ <i>parh-nā</i> , 'to read.'	پَرِهَانَا <i>parhā-nā</i> , 'to cause to read,' 'to teach.'	پَرِهَوَانَا <i>parhwā-nā</i> , 'to have or get(one) taught(some- thing by some one).'
گِرِنَا <i>girnā</i> , 'to fall.'	گِرَانَا <i>girā-nā</i> , 'to cause to fall,' 'to fell,' etc.	گِرِوَانَا <i>girwā-nā</i> , 'to get or have (a thing) thrown down (by some one).'
اُتَهِنَا <i>uṭhnā</i> , 'to rise.'	اُتِهَانَا <i>uṭhā-nā</i> , 'to raise.'	اُتِهَوَانَا <i>uṭhwā-nā</i> , 'to have (a thing) raised (by some one).'

¹ A causal verb is termed by the native grammarians *fe'lē muta'addī bi'l wāsiṭa*, 'a verb which passes on (to an object) by means of (an increment),' in contradistinction to 'a verb which is transitive *per se*,' or *fe'lē muta'addī bi nafsihi*.

² In a few verbs *w* would appear to be inserted before the causal increment *ā* for the sake of euphony alone.

Subordinate to this rule are the two following:

1) If the root of the primitive verb be dissyllabic, the vowels of both syllables being short and that of the second *fatḥa* (*a*), this *fatḥa* is dropped in the first causal (*cf.* § 34, 4, *Rem. c.*): *e.g.*

PRIMITIVE VERB.	CAUSAL.	DOUBLE CAUSAL.
سَمَّجِنَا <i>samajh-nā</i> , 'to understand.'	سَمَّجِنَا <i>samjhā-nā</i> , 'to explain.'	سَمَّجِنَا <i>samajhwā-nā</i> , 'to have (a thing) explained (to one person by another).'
پِگِھَلْنَا <i>pighal-nā</i> , 'to melt' (intrans.).	پِگِھَلْنَا <i>pighlā-nā</i> , 'to melt' (trans.).	پِگِھَلْنَا <i>pighalwā-nā</i> , 'to have (a thing) melted (by some one).'

2) If the root of the primitive verb be monosyllabic and enclose a long vowel or diphthong, the vowel or diphthong is changed in both causals into the corresponding short vowels, or, in other words, the letters of prolongation *ا, و, ی*, are dropped: *e.g.*

جَاگْنَا <i>jāg-nā</i> , 'to be awake.'	جَاگْنَا <i>jagā-nā</i> , 'to wake.'	جَاگْنَا <i>jagwā-nā</i> , 'to cause (one) to be awakened.'
بِهِيگْنَا <i>bhīg-nā</i> , 'to become wet.'	بِهِيگْنَا <i>bhigā-nā</i> , ¹ 'to wet.'	بِهِيگْنَا <i>bhigwā-nā</i> , 'to have (a thing) wetted.'
دُبْنَا <i>dūbnā</i> , 'to sink' (intrans.).	دُبْنَا <i>dubā-nā</i> , 'to sink,' 'to immerse.'	دُبْنَا <i>dubwā-nā</i> , 'to have (a thing) sunk.'
بُولْنَا <i>bol-nā</i> , 'to speak.'	بُولْنَا <i>bulā-nā</i> , 'to call (one) to (come and) speak.'	بُولْنَا <i>bulwā-nā</i> , 'to have (one) called.'
بَیٹْنَا <i>baiṭh-nā</i> , 'to sit down.'	بَیٹْنَا <i>biṭhā-nā</i> , ¹ 'to seat.'	بَیٹْنَا <i>biṭhwā-nā</i> , 'to cause (one) to be seated.'

b) If the root of the primitive verb end in a long vowel (*ā, ī, e, ū, o*), the increment generally takes the form *ا* *lā* in the causal, and *وا* *lwā* in the double causal; and the long vowel of the root is shortened as in the preceding rule: *e.g.*

¹ The causals of *bhīg-nā* and *dūbnā* may also take the forms *bhigonā* and *dubonā* (See *Rem.* § 202), and that of *baiṭh-nā* other forms, which are given under Rule c.

PRIMITIVE VERB.	CAUSAL.	DOUBLE CAUSAL.
کھانا <i>khā-nā</i> , 'to eat.'	کھلانا <i>khilā-nā</i> , ¹ 'to give to eat,' 'to feed.'	کھلوانا <i>khilwā-nā</i> .
پینا <i>pī-nā</i> , 'to drink.'	پلانا <i>pilā-nā</i> , 'to give to drink.'	پلوانا <i>pilwā-nā</i> .
دینا <i>de-nā</i> , 'to give.'	دلانا <i>dilā-nā</i> , 'to cause to give.'	دلوانا <i>dilwā-nā</i> .
چھونا <i>chhū-nā</i> , 'to touch.'	چھلانا <i>chhulā-nā</i> , 'to cause to touch.'	چھلوانا <i>chhulwā-nā</i> .
سونا <i>so-nā</i> , 'to sleep.'	سلانا <i>sulā-nā</i> , 'to put to sleep.'	سلوانا <i>sulwā-nā</i> .

A few verbs take the form of the double causal alone :
e.g. کھونا *khonā*, 'to lose,' causal کھوانا *khuwā-nā*; گانا *gānā*,
'to sing,' causal گوانا *gawānā*; لینا *lenā*, 'to take,' causal
لوانا *liwā-nā*.

Some verbs, the roots of which end in consonants
(chiefly *h*, *kh* *ṭh*), may take the increment *lā* in the causal,
as well as *ā*; but in the double causal the increment is
always *wā*: e.g.

کہنا <i>kah-nā</i> , 'to say,'	causal کہلانا <i>kahlā-nā</i> , or کہانا <i>kahā-nā</i> .
دیکھنا <i>dekh-nā</i> , 'to see,'	,, دیکھلانا <i>dikhlā-nā</i> , or دیکھانا <i>dikhā-nā</i> .
سیکھنا <i>sīkh-nā</i> , 'to learn,'	,, سیکھلانا <i>sikhlā-nā</i> , or سیکھانا <i>sikhā-nā</i> .
سُکھنا <i>sūkh-nā</i> , 'to dry,'	,, سُکھلانا <i>sukhlā-nā</i> , or سُکھانا <i>sukhā-nā</i> .
بیٹھنا <i>baiṭh-nā</i> , 'to sit,'	,, بیٹھلانا <i>biṭhlā-nā</i> , or بیٹھالنا <i>biṭhāl-nā</i> , بیٹھانا <i>biṭhā-nā</i> , and بیٹھانا <i>baiṭhā-nā</i> .

پھانڈنا *phāṇḍ-nā*, 'to ensnare,' ,, پھنڈلانا *phandlā-nā*.

Rem. The same causal forms are also found in cases where the roots
of the primitive verbs (which have become obsolete) end in *t* (*d*), and *s*:
as بتلانا *batlā-nā*, 'to tell,' 'to point out,'; پھسلانا *phuslā-nā*, 'to wheedle,'
'to coax.'

¹ The instances of radical *ā* changing to *i* in the causal are not numerous; and even
the example given above takes the form *khalānā* in Southern India.

c) Intransitive roots enclosing short vowels are frequently made transitive by the insertion of *ā* in the root itself, this *ā* coalescing with radical *a* into *ā*, with radical *i* into *e*, and with radical *u* into *o*: (final *t* of the root, it may be observed, is frequently changed into *r* in the transitive verb):¹ *e.g.*

دَبْنَا <i>dabnā</i> , 'to be pressed,'	transitive دَابَّنَا <i>dābnā</i> , 'to press.'
كَتْنَا <i>katnā</i> , 'to be spun,'	,, كَاتْنَا <i>kātnā</i> , 'to spin.'
كَتْنَا <i>kaṭnā</i> , 'to be cut,'	,, كَاتْنَا <i>kāṭnā</i> , 'to cut.'
پَشْتْنَا <i>phaṭnā</i> , 'to be torn,'	,, پِهَارْنَا <i>phārṇā</i> , 'to tear.'
لَدْنَا <i>ladnā</i> , 'to be laden,'	,, لَادْنَا <i>lādṇā</i> , 'to load.'
بَنْدْهْنَا <i>bandhnā</i> , 'to be bound,'	,, بَانْدْهْنَا <i>bāndhnā</i> , 'to bind.'
مَرْنَا <i>marnā</i> , 'to die,'	,, مَارْنَا <i>mārṇā</i> , 'to kill.'
گَرْنَا <i>gaṛnā</i> , 'to be buried,'	,, گَارْنَا <i>gārṇā</i> , 'to bury.'
پَلْنَا <i>palnā</i> , 'to be protected,'	,, پَالْنَا <i>pālṇā</i> , 'to protect.'
نِکَلْنَا <i>nikalnā</i> , 'to come out,'	,, نِکَالْنَا <i>nikālṇā</i> , 'to take out.'
تَهْمْنَا <i>thamnā</i> , 'to be held,	تَهَامْنَا <i>thāmnā</i> , 'to hold,
تَهْمْبَلْنَا <i>thambhnā</i> , 'or supported,'	تَهَامْبَلْنَا <i>thāmbhnā</i> , 'or support.'
رَتْنَا <i>ritnā</i> , 'to be filed,'	,, رِيتْنَا <i>retnā</i> , 'to file.'
چَهْدْنَا <i>chhidnā</i> , 'to be perforated,'	,, چِهْدْنَا <i>chhednā</i> , 'to perforate.'
بِکْنَا <i>biknā</i> , 'to be sold,'	,, بِيچْنَا <i>bechnā</i> , ² 'to sell.'
پھٹْنَا <i>phuṭnā</i> , 'to burst,	
پھوٹْنَا <i>phūṭnā</i> , 'or split asunder,'	,, پھوڑْنَا <i>phoṛṇā</i> , 'to break.'
کھُلْنَا <i>khulnā</i> , 'to become open,'	,, کھولْنَا <i>kholnā</i> , 'to open.'

¹ The softening of the tenuis *t* into the media *ḍ* (*r*), and of *ṭh* into *rḥ*, occurs most commonly after the letters *p*, *ph*, *ch*, *chh*, and *gh*: *e.g.* *paṛhnā*, 'to read' = Sanskrit *paṭhanam*; *pīṛhā*, 'a stool' = S. *pīṭha*; *phorā*, 'a boil' = S. *sphoṭaka*; *chīṛiyā*, 'a bird' = S. *chāṭaka*; *chhakṛā*, 'a cart' = S. *śakaṭa*; *ghara*, 'an earthen pot' = S. *ghaṭa*; *ghorā*, 'a horse' = S. *ghoṭaka*. If *ph* and a long vowel precede *t*, it generally passes into *r*.

² This change of *k* into *ch* is almost inexplicable. I can find no mention of such a change in the *Prākṛita-Prakāśa*. But there would appear to be in Sanskrit some connection between the guttural class of letters and the palatal; for when a verb beginning with a guttural is reduplicated, the corresponding palatal is used; and, reversely, final *ch* of nominal bases is changed into *k* before certain case-endings.

Rem. a. In a few transitive verbs the root vowels of the corresponding intransitives are simply lengthened: *e.g.* ^{पिसना} *pīsnā*, 'to grind,' from ^{पिना} *piṣnā*; ^{पिटना} *pīṭnā*, 'to beat,' from ^{पिना} *piṭnā*; ^{चिहिलना} *chihīlnā*, 'to peel,' from ^{चिहिलना} *chhīlnā*; ^{गुथना} *gūthnā*, 'to plait,' from ^{गुथना} *guthnā*.

Rem. b. Under this class of verbs (which are strangely termed "anomalous") existing grammars place the verb ^{रक्खना} *rakhnā*, 'to keep,' as the causal of ^{रहना} *rahnā*, 'to remain;' but this is a mistake: the two verbs are derived from distinct Sanskrit forms.

201. These verbs, though derived (as we shall presently see) from Sanskrit causals, have in many, if not most, cases lost the causal signification, and become simply transitive. Hence we find that some of the intransitive verbs of this class, as well as their transitive derivatives, have also regular causals (and double causals) formed from them; but these, as a rule, retain the true causal character; and where the primitive intransitive verb has various significations, it will often be found that some of them are peculiar to the transitive and some to the causal derivative: *e.g.* from the verb ^{पहुतना} *phūṭnā* is formed the transitive ^{पहोरना} *phorṇā*, and the causal ^{पुतना} *phuṭānā*;¹ but the former signifies 'to break,' and the latter 'to make (water, etc.) boil,' a sense which *phorṇā* never has.

¹ This common word, strange to say, is not found in Shakespear's Dictionary, and, though given in Forbes', is said to mean 'to increase,' etc. But the dictionaries make sad confusion among the causal verbs. ^{गारना} *garānā*, for example, is given as the causal of ^{गारना} *garṇā* alone; but there can be no doubt of its being the causal of ^{गारना} *gārṇā* also: in the first case it signifies 'to prick,' 'to thrust in,' etc.; in the second, 'to have or get (a thing or person) buried.' Similarly ^{कातना} *kaṭānā* is the causal of both ^{कातना} *kaṭnā* and ^{कातना} *kāṭnā*, but more commonly that of the latter. We may here observe that in some verbs the *first* causal derived from a transitive verb is sometimes identical in meaning with the *second*: *e.g.* *kaṭāna* = *kaṭwāna*; *rakṣānā* = *rakṣwānā*.

202. The following sentences will exemplify the use of the primitive and causal forms of a verb :

مکان گرتا ہے *makān girtā hai*, 'the house is falling :'

وہ آدمی مکان کو گراتا ہے *wōh ādmī makān-ko girātā hai*, 'that (or the) man is throwing (or pulling) down the house :'

مکان کو گرواتا ہے اُس آدمی سے اپنے *mālik us ādmī se apne makān-ko girwātā hai*, 'the owner is having his house pulled down by that man.'

میں عربی پڑھتا ہوں *main 'arabī parhātā hūn*, 'I am reading Arabic :'

اپنے لڑکے کو عربی پڑھاتا ہوں *apne larke-ko 'arabī parhātā hūn*, 'I am teaching my boy Arabic :'

مولاوی صاحب سے اپنے لڑکے کو عربی پڑھواتا ہوں *maulavī ṣāhib-se apne larke-ko 'arabī parhwātā hūn*, 'I am having my boy taught Arabic by the Maulavī-ṣāhib.

Rem. The causal affix of the Sanskrit is *ay*, which in many verbs (chiefly when the verbal root ends in a long vowel) takes the form *āpay*. The Prākṛit changes *ay* into *e*, and *āpay* into (*ābe*, and then) *āve*, and uses both forms without any apparent distinction. In Hindi and its sister dialects the first affix is not used, and the second is changed to *āū*, by elision of final *e*, and weakening of *v* to *u*; and from *āū*, by elision of *u*, is derived the causal characteristic *ā* of the modern Hindī. But in a few verbs the vowels *ā*, *u*, would appear to have coalesced into *o* : e.g. *bhīgonā*, *ḍubonā*, *garonā*, etc., the causals of *bhīgnā*, *ḍubnā*, and *garṇā*.

The modern dialects also use *lā* as a causal characteristic, and in this form the *l* is generally supposed to be inserted for the sake of euphony. But in this opinion we cannot concur; for when these languages desire to avoid a hiatus (and we may observe in passing that they are by no means averse to a hiatus), they generally insert *y*, or *h*, and not *l*. Besides, we find *lā* used as the causal affix even in

cases where the verbal root ends in a consonant, and no insertion of euphonic *l* is called for. It seems more probable that *lā* is derived from the Sanskrit causal affix *ay*, which was first changed to *āl*, or *ār* (the two letters *l* and *r* being commonly interchangeable), and then to *lā*, or *rā*. Hindī and Panjābī show a preference for *lā*, while Sindhī and Gujarātī prefer *rā*. We can only call to mind one example of the form *āl* of the increment in Hindī, namely *biṭhālnā*; but numerous examples of the form *ār* are to be found in Sindhī. That *y* is occasionally changed into *l* is seen from the Prākṛit *laṭṭhi* (the Hindī *lāṭhī*, ‘a stick,’ or *laṭh*, ‘a column’) = Sanskrit *yashṭi* (*Prākṛita-Prākūśa*, ed. Cowell, sect. ii. 32).

As regards the verbs given under Rule *c.*), it may be mentioned that their bases are not formed in Hindī in the manner described; but the rule is an attempt to explain the modification which a verbal root undergoes in Sanskrit before it receives the causal affix. These verbs are incorrectly called “anomalous:” they are simply derived from the verbal nouns of Sanskrit causals: *e.g.* the verbal noun *maraṇam* of the Sanskrit root *mṛi*, is the source of the Hindī intransitive verb *marnā*, ‘to die;’ in the causal the root *mṛi* takes the form *mār*, and the verbal noun is *māraṇam*, whence the Hindī transitive verb *mārnā*, ‘to kill.’ In not a few cases a process the reverse of that described in the rule takes place; namely, the *intransitive* verb is formed from the *transitive* in Hindī itself: *e.g.* the Sanskrit causal form *pālanam* = Hindī *pālnā*, ‘to protect,’ whence is formed *palnā*, ‘to be protected;’ the Sanskrit *māpanam* = Hindī *māpnā*, ‘to measure,’ whence *mapnā*, ‘to be measured.’ Some transitive verbs, it may be observed, have no corresponding intransitive, and retain no trace of their being causals; as *bhejñā*, ‘to send’ = S. *bhedanam*, ‘dividing.’

II. DENOMINATIVE VERBS.

203. Denominatives may be conveniently noticed under the two following heads:—

1) DENOMINATIVES FORMED FROM VERBAL NOUNS.

These are formed by adding the infinitive increment *ū* *nā* to a Persian or Arabic verbal noun; e.g. بخشنا *bakhshnā*, 'to forgive,' from the Persian بخش *bakhsh*; خریدنا *kharīd-nā*, 'to purchase,' from the Persian خرید *kharīd*; بدلنا *badalnā*, 'to change,' from the Arabic بدل *badal*; قبولنا *kabūlnā*, 'to accept,' from the Arabic قبول *kabūl*. In some words ending in two quiescent consonants, the penultimate letter is made movent with *fatha* (*a*) before the termination *nā* is added: e.g. ترسنا *tarasnā*, 'to fear,' from ترس *tars*, 'fearing,' 'fear'; بحثنا *bahasnā*, 'to dispute,' from بحث *bahs*, 'controversy.'

2) DENOMINATIVES DERIVED FROM OTHER NOUNS.

These are formed by adding the termination انا *ānā* to a substantive or adjective, final *ی* *ī* being changed to *ی* *iy* before the termination is added, and a long vowel in a dissyllabic noun shortened: e.g. شرمنا *sharmānā*, 'to be bashful,' from شرم *sharm*, 'shame'; گرمنا *garmānā*, 'to be heated,' 'to become warm or angry,' from گرم *garm*, 'hot'; پانیانا *paniyānā*, 'to water, or irrigate,' from پانی *pānī*, 'water'; مکیانا *mukiyānā*, 'to hit with the fist,' 'to knead dough,' from مکی *mukī*, 'the fist.' If the noun or adjective end in *ā*, the termination *nā* alone is added; as چورانا *chaurānā*, 'to widen,' from چور *chaurā*, 'wide'; لنگرانا *langrānā*, 'to go lame,' 'to limp,' from لنگر *langrā*, 'lame.' A few Persian nouns also, which are monosyllabic and enclose a long vowel, take the termination *nā* instead of *ānā*: e.g. داغنا *dāgnā*, 'to brand, or cauterize,' from داغ *dāg*, 'a spot or mark.'

Rem. Denominatives are not of very common occurrence in Urdū, compound forms being generally preferred; e.g. بخش دینا *bakhsh denā*,

'to forgive,' کَرْنَا *kaḥūl karnā*, 'to accept,' مَکِّي مَارْنَا *mukki mārṇā*, 'to hit with the first,' دینا پَانِي *pānī denā*, 'to water,' چَوڑا *chaurā karnā*, 'to widen.'

III. COMPOUND VERBS.

204. Compound verbs, or what are commonly regarded as such, are very numerous in Hindūstānī. They are generally divided into Nominals, Intensives, Potentials, Completives, Continuatives, Staticals, Frequentatives, Desideratives, Inceptives, Permissives, Acquisitives, and Reiteratives; but not a few of these are, strictly speaking, not compound verbs, but phrases, as we shall show in noticing them.

NOMINALS.

205. These are formed by prefixing a noun (substantive or adjective) to a verb: *e.g.*

جَمع ہونا *jam' honā*, 'to be or become collected,' 'to collect.'

جَمع کَرْنَا *jam' karnā*, 'to make collected,' 'to collect.'

دَم مَارْنَا *dam mārṇā*, 'to breathe a word,' 'to speak,' 'to boast.'

دَم دینا *dam denā*, 'to wheedle or deceive.'

مَول لینا *mol lenā*, 'to take by purchase,' 'to buy.'

پَانِي دینا *pānī denā*, 'to give water,' 'to irrigate.'

چَوڑا کَرْنَا *chaurā karnā*, 'to make wide,' 'to widen.'

Such forms, it is clear, are not compound verbs; the noun in every instance simply serves to complete the notion of the verb, forming the *predicative noun* in the *Nominative* when the verb is *intransitive*, and in the *Accusative* when the verb is *transitive*. It is even (as we shall show in the Syntax) in not a few instances separated from the verb by other words.

206. Similar in character to the Nominal verbs are the

few compounds formed by prefixing a Persian preposition or adverb to a Hindī verb : *e.g.*

برآنا *bar-ānā*, 'to come up or forth,' 'to succeed.'

لانا *bar-lānā*, 'to bring up or forth,' 'to accomplish.'

آنا بهم *ba-ham-ānā*, 'to come together,' 'to be acquired.'

آنا بهم پہنچنا *ba-ham pahunchnā*, 'to arrive or come together,' 'to be procured.'

آنا باز *bāz-ānā*, 'to come back,' 'to decline,' 'to abstain.'

آنا باز رکھنا *bāz-rakhnā*, 'to keep or hold back,' 'to restrain.'

آنا پیش *pesh-ānā*, 'to come before,' 'to present (itself),' 'to treat,' etc.

آنا در *dar-ānā*, 'to come in,' 'to enter.'

207. The remaining compound verbs may be arranged under four classes, according as they are formed with the *verbal root*, the *imperfect participle*, the *perfect participle*, or the *conjunctive participle*.

a) COMPOUNDS FORMED WITH THE ROOT.

These are the Intensives, Potentials, and Completives.

1) INTENSIVES.

208. Intensives are formed by prefixing the root of a verb to another verb, which is regularly conjugated, the root remaining unchanged. The signification of the compound is that of the root intensified by the second member. In many cases however the effect produced by the second member of the compound is not obvious. Examples are :—

آنا پی *pī-jānā*, 'to drink up or off.'

آنا بول *bol-uṭhnā*, 'to speak or call out.'

آنا کات *kāt-dālnā*, 'to cut up or off.'

آنا کھا *khā-jānā*, 'to eat up.'

آنا گر پڑنا *gir-parṇā*, 'to tumble down.'

Rem. The appropriate verb for intensifying another, like the appropriate adverb in English, is determined by usage. Not a few verbs, which existing grammars call *intensives*, have nothing intensive in their signification; some of them are properly *completives*; others simply *transitives*, formed by prefixing the root form of the conjunctive participle of the verb لینا *lenā* to an intransitive verb (§ 215): e.g. ہو جانا *ho-jānā* = ہو چُکنا *ho-chuknā*; کاغذ ہو گیا *kāgaz ho-gayā* = کاغذ ہو چُکا *kāgaz ho-chukā*, 'the paper is finished'; میں ہو گیا *main naukār ho-gayā*, 'I have become an employée,' i.e. 'my becoming an employée is an accomplished fact'; لے آنا *le-ānā*¹ = لیکر آنا *lekar-ānā*, 'having taken, to come,' i.e. 'to come with,' or 'to bring.' Similarly سو جانا *so-jānā*, and سو رہنا *so-rahnā*, are not intensives, any more than their English equivalents 'to go to sleep,' and 'to be asleep' are.²

2) POTENTIALS.

209. These verbs express the ability to perform an action. They are formed by adding the verb سگنا *saknā*, 'to be able,' to the root form of another verb: e.g.

جا سگنا *jā-saknā*, 'to be able to go.'

دیکھ سگنا *dekh-saknā*, 'to be able to see.'

کر سگنا *kar-saknā*, 'to be able to do.'

میں کر سکتا ہوں *main-kar saktā hūn*, 'I can do.'

وہ دیکھ سکا *wōh dekh-saka*, 'he could see.'

¹ A recent writer on Urdū Grammar observes: "The verbs *le-ānā*, *le-jānā*, *khā-jānā*, etc., are *neuter*, because the verbs *ānā* and *jānā* are *neuter*." This is simply incorrect. They are *transitive*, and are so called by native grammarians; but, like a few other transitive verbs, they do not take the passive construction in the tenses composed of the past participle because a passive participle cannot be formed from them.

² The same grammarian tries to "discriminate" between the forms *ho-jānā* and *ho-rahnā*; *so-jānā* and *so-rahnā*; but his remarks show that he is not aware of the fact that the verbs *jānā* and *rahnā* are frequently synonymous, and are commonly used in the sense of *honā*, and are called by the native grammarians 'the sisters of *honā*.' Had he lived in India, he would have often heard the expression *so raho* used in the sense of 'go to sleep,' and *ṣṭhib so rahā hai*, in the sense of both 'the master is sleeping,' and 'the master has gone to sleep.' So, in the *Khīrad Afroz*, p. 74, *nahā rahī hai* = *nahātī hai*.

Rem. It is very probable that the first part of these compounds is the *apocopated infinitive*, and not the root. Indeed we occasionally find the full form of the infinitive (always inflected however) expressed; as وَه دیکھنے سکتا ہے *wōh dekhne saktā hai*, 'he can see.' It may be observed that the verb *saknā* occurs only in compounds.

3) COMPLETIVES.

210. These are obtained by adding the verb چُکنا *chuknā*, 'to come to an end,' 'to be finished,' to the root of a verb; as

بول چُکنا *bol-chuknā*, 'to have done speaking.'

پڑھ چُکنا *parh-chuknā*, 'to have done reading.'

In the past tenses the compound may also imply that the act is really finished in agreement or disagreement with what preceded it, or just a little before the time of speaking; as میں کر چُکا *main kar-chukā*, 'I have already done' (it or so). The Past Indefinite tense is often used most idiomatically to express the utter improbability of the speaker's performing an act, or of his belief in the improbability of another's performing it; as میں کر چُکا *main kar-chukā*, 'I am not at all likely to do' (in vulgar English 'catch me doing it!'); وَه جا چُکا *wōh jā-chukā*, 'he is gone (as much as he is ever likely to go),' i.e. 'he is not gone at all, and is not likely to go.' The Future of the compound may serve the purpose of a Future Perfect; میں جا چُکوں گا *main jā-chukūngā*, 'I shall have gone.'

Rem. The verb *chuknā*, like the verb *saknā*, occurs only in compounds.

b) COMPOUNDS FORMED WITH THE IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

211. These are the Continuatives and Staticals of existing grammars. They are not compound verbs, but phrases wherein the participle is used adjectively or adverbially to denote a حال *hāl*, or circumstance.

1) CONTINUATIVES.

212. Continuatives are formed by prefixing an imperfect participle to one of the verbs جانا *jānā* or رہنا *rahnā*, used as synonymous with ہونا *honā*; the participle which always takes the inflected masculine form conveying the idea of a *continuous* or *habitual* act or state: *e.g.*

جانا بکتے *bakte jānā*, 'to be continually prating,' 'to go on prating.'
 رہنا گھومتے *ghumte rahnā*, 'to be ever revolving,' 'to keep revolving.'
 جانا پڑھتے *parhte jānā*, }
 رہنا پڑھتے *parhte rahnā*, } 'to continue or go on reading.'

Rem. The participle in these forms is in the locative case, and is used adverbially.

2) STATICALS.

213. In these the imperfect participle of a verb, or rather the elliptical form of the *active* or *progressive* participle, precedes another verb, and, as in English, agrees in gender and number with the subject or object of which it forms the attribute. There is nothing approaching to a compound verb in such forms: *e.g.* موہن ہنستا (or ہنستا ہوا) *mohan haṁstā (or haṁstā hūā) jūtā hai*, 'Mohan is going along laughing;'
 وہ لڑکی جو گاتی (or گاتی ہوئی) آتی ہے *wōh lar̥kī jo gātī (or gātī hūī) ātī hai*, 'the girl who is coming along singing;'
 وہ پڑھتی رہتی ہے *wōh parhtī rahtī hai*, 'she remains or continues reading' (in this example the idea of *duration* or *continuity* is implied in the verb);
 میں نے اُسکو سوتا دیکھا *main-ne usko sotā dekhā*, 'I saw him sleeping' (here the concord of the participle is interrupted, because the object is in the *dative* form of the accusative;

but) بگڑا دَوڑتے میں نے اُسکو *main-ne usko daur̥te pakr̥ā*, 'I caught it (while I was) running.'

Rem. The so-called Staticals differ from Continuatives in denoting a *temporary* or *accidental* state. The two forms are clearly distinguished in most native grammars, but are strangely misunderstood by European grammarians, who teach that *the participle is inflected in Staticals, and not inflected in Continuatives!* Now, the fact is, that it is just to indicate *duration* or *continuity* (and, occasionally, a *habitual* state) that the particle or verbal adjective is changed into an adverb and inflected. This is evident from such forms as چلتے چلتے تھک گیا *chalte chalte thak gayā*, 'I wearied through much or continued walking;'; چلتے چلتے ایک جزیرے میں پہنچے *chalte chalte ek jazīre meñ pahunche*, 'Keeping on our way we reached an island;'; ہم گاتے *ham gāte* گاتے سیتے ہیں *gāte sītī hain*, 'We stitch singing the while,' or 'We keep on singing whilst we stitch.'

c) COMPOUNDS FORMED WITH THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

214. A perfect participle, used as an *abstract substantive* in the *Accusative* or the *Formative*, is prefixed to one of the verbs کرنا 'to make,' جانا 'to go,' and چاہنا 'to desire,' and the compound verb thus formed assumes an *intransitive* character.¹ Such compounds are of two kinds:

¹ Hence these verbs are never constructed *passively* with the Agent case in the tenses formed with the perfect participle (see § 185): e.g. *wōh chupke but-kī tarāh baithe sunā kī*, 'she seated silent, like a statue, continued to listen;'; *ek muddat talak us gam-meñ royā kiye*, 'for a long period they continued to mourn in that affliction;'; *main tamām dīn aur tamām rāt pānī-meñ hāth pā'cī mārā kiya*, 'I kept striking (out) my hands and legs in the water the whole day and the whole night.' Similarly if any verbal noun be combined with a transitive verb in the same way, the compound verb is intransitive: e.g. *do ādmī dekhō'ī diye*, 'two men appeared' (gave an appearance); *ādmī kī āwāz sunā'ī dī*, 'a man's voice was heard.' This, it may be observed, is directly opposed to the teaching of European grammarians. If however the grammarians simply confined themselves to laying down incorrect or unsound rules, the offence might be pardoned; but when they pronounce the composition of standard authors "ungrammatical" because it does not conform to those rules (as a recent writer does in more than one instance), the offence becomes unpardonable. We may here remark that if there is one point about which an educated native is not likely to be mistaken, it is the use of the Agent case.

1) FREQUENTATIVES OR CONTINUATIVES.

These denote the *frequent, continual, or habitual* performance of an act, and are formed: *a*) by adding the verb کرنا to a perfect participle, which (being the direct object of the verb) retains the nominative form of the masculine singular under all circumstances: *e.g.*

جایا کرنا *jāyā karnā*, 'to go frequently,' 'to keep going' (*lit.* 'to make the going').

بیچا کرنا *bechā karnā*, 'to sell habitually.'

رویا کرنا *royā karnā*, 'to weep perpetually,' 'to continue weeping.'

سُنا کرنا *sunā karnā*, 'to continue listening.'

وہ سُنا کی *wōh sunā kī*, 'she kept listening.'

b) By adding the verb جانا 'to go,' to a perfect participle used as an abstract substantive; but in this case the verb being *neuter*, the participle is put in the Formative: *e.g.*

چلے جانا *chale jānā*, 'to keep moving or walking on' (*lit.* 'to go on *with* or *in* walking').

کیے جانا *kiye jānā*, 'to continue or go on doing.'

Rem. The verb جانا added to an *uninflected* perfect participle has occasionally the signification of ہو سکتا *ho saknā*, 'to be possible.' Such forms, however, are not compound verbs, nor is the construction a *passive* one, as some grammarians mistakenly suppose; but the participle is used as a verbal noun, and forms the *subject* or *nominative* of the verb: *e.g.* آج کھانا کھایا گیا *mujh se āj khānā khāyā gayā* (= *khānā-khā khānā āj mujh se ho sakā*), 'I was able to eat my food to-day,' or *lit.* 'by me eating food to-day was possible;' تقدیر سے *takdīr-se* لڑا نہیں جاتا *larā nahīn jātā*, 'there is no fighting against what is predestined,' or *lit.* 'fighting against destiny is impossible.'

2) DESIDERATIVES.

These are formed by adding the verb چاہنا *chāhnā*, 'to wish or desire,' to a perfect participle used as a verbal noun in the Accusative, and hence uninflected. They express the desire to perform the act or enter the state signified by the participial noun : *e.g.*

جاہنا جایا *jāyā-chāhnā*, 'to wish to go.'

جاہنا دیکھا *dekhā-chāhnā*, 'to wish to see.'

جاہنا پڑھا *parhā-chāhnā*, 'to wish to read.'

جاہنا مرا *marā-chāhnā*, 'to wish to die.'

The same forms are also commonly employed to express the fact of an act or state being imminent : *e.g.* وہ جایا چاہتا *wōh jāyā-chāhtā hai*, 'he is about to go;' وہ مرا چاہتی *wōh marā chāhtī hai*, 'she is about to die;' وہی بھاگا چاہتے *we bhāgā-chāte the*, 'they were on the point of running away.'

Rem. a. In these compounds the participles of the verbs جانا *jānā*, 'to go,' and مرنا *marnā*, 'to die,' always take the regular forms جایا *jāyā* and مرا *marā*.

Rem. b. The perfect participle is said by some grammarians to be prefixed to another verb to form *intensives*; and some of the examples given are : وہی چلے جاتے تھے *we chale jāte the*, 'they were going along;' لومڑی پڑی پھرتی تھی *lomrī parī phirtī thī*, 'the fox was prowling about;' خجالت سے موتا جاتا ہے *khijālat se mū'ā jātā hai*, 'he is dying with shame.' But in these and all similar cases, there is no intensive signification whatever, nor is there an approach to a compound verb : the perfect participle is simply used as an attributive (as we have shown that the imperfect participle is), to denote a state, and agrees in gender and number with the noun it qualifies. The literal translation of the first of the above sentences is, 'they were

going walking' (the perfect part. may in most cases be conveniently rendered into English by the imperfect); that of the second, 'the fox, lying in wait, was moving about;' and in the third sentence *jānā* is used in the sense of *honā*, so that the translation is, 'I was becoming dead,' etc., *i.e.* 'I was dying,' etc. As in the case of the imperfect participle, the inflected form of the perf. part. denotes a *prolonged* or *continued* act or state: *e.g.* چلے جانا *chale-jānā*, 'keep walking on' (*vide* §. 213).

d) COMPOUNDS FORMED WITH CONJUNCTIVE PARTICIPLES.

215. These are formed by prefixing a conjunctive participle, commonly لے *le*, of the verb لینا *lenā*, 'to take,' to an intransitive verb of motion: *e.g.*

آنا لے *le-ānā* (by contraction, لانا *lānā*), 'to come with,' 'to bring'
(*lit.* 'having taken, to come').

جانا لے *le-jānā*, 'to go away with,' 'to take away,' 'to remove.'

اڑنا لے *le-urnā*, 'to fly away with'

بھاگنا لے *le-bhāgnā*, 'to run away with.'

پہنچنا لے *le pahunchnā*, 'to arrive or come with,' 'to bring.'

Rem. That the first member in these compounds is the conjunctive participle, and not the verbal *root*, as English writers on Urdū grammar call it, is evident enough from the examples given above. Another error of existing grammars in respect of these compounds is the calling them "neuter." We need only point out that the native grammarians do not countenance this view, but term them مُتَعَدِّي بیک مفعول *muta'addī ba-yak maf'ul*, 'transitives with one object;' and that in other languages—*e.g.* Latin and Arabic—such verbs are classed under the head of transitive verbs. That they cannot take the passive construction in the tenses formed with the perfect participle, is simply owing to the fact that the last member of the compound (which alone is conjugated), being intransitive, cannot form a *passive* participle:

this, however, is not the criterion of a transitive, but of a *directly* transitive verb.

216. Some verbs invariably take an inflected infinitive before them, the infinitive or verbal noun being either in the locative or dative case. These forms, which cannot be regarded as compound verbs, are termed by the grammarians Inceptives, Acquisitives, and Permissives. To these may also be added *Desideratives*.

1) INCEPTIVES,

in which an inflected infinitive precedes the verb لگنا *lagṇā*, 'to come in contact (with),' 'to take to,' and hence 'to begin:' e.g. بھاگنے میں لگا *bhāgne meṇ lagā* (= لگا *bhāgne-meṇ lagā*), 'he took to, or began running;' وہ رونے لگتی ہے *wōh rone lagtī hai*, 'she takes to, or begins, crying.'

2) PERMISSIVES,

An inflected infinitive is followed by the verb دینا *denā* 'to give or grant,' and (with the infinitive, as in Sanskrit), 'to allow or permit:' e.g. اُسے جانے دو *use jāne do* (= اُسے *use jāne-ko do*), 'allow him to go,' 'let him go;' وہ مجھے آنے دیا *wōh mujhe āne diyā*, 'he allowed me to come.'

3) ACQUISITIVES,

An inflected infinitive is followed by the verb پانا *pānā*, 'to get or obtain,' and (with the infinitive), 'to obtain permission,' 'to be allowed;' e.g. آئے پایا *āne pāyā* (= آئے *āne-ko pāyā*), 'he was allowed, or got permission, to come;' جانے پاویگا *jāne pāwegā*, 'he will be allowed to go.'

4) DESIDERATIVES.

An inflected infinitive precedes one of the verbs چاہنا *chāhnā*, 'to wish or desire,' مانگنا *māṅnā*, 'to request permission,' 'to want or desire:' e.g. وہ پینے چاہتا ہے *wōh pīne chāhtā hai*, 'he wishes to drink,' جانے مانگتا ہے *jāne māṅtā hai*, 'he wishes, or requests permission, to go.'

REITERATIVES.

217. It remains to notice the compound forms termed *Reiteratives* by European grammarians. These consist in the asyndetic connection of two verbs, or participles (most commonly of two conjunctive participles, or two imperfect participles followed by the auxiliary verb), the second of which usually rhymes with the first, and is either synonymous with it, or without any signification: e.g. سوچ ساچ کر *soch sāch kar*, 'having reflected;' بول چال کر *bol chāl kar*, 'having conversed;' سمجھا بُجھا کر *samjhā bujhā kar*, 'having explained,' or 'having reasoned;' بغیر پوچھے گچھے *ba-gair pūchھے gachھے*, 'without asking or enquiring;' اُن دونوں زخمیوں کو گاڑنے دابنے کی فکر میں رہا *un donoṃ zakhmiyōṃ ko gārṇe dābne kī fīkr meṃ rahā*, 'he was busy with the thought of burying the two murdered persons;' کچھ پیس *kuchh pīs* کچھ پاس رہے تھے *kuchh pīs pās rahe the*, 'they were pulverizing something;' میں ہارا تھکا تھا *main hārā thakā thā*, 'I was worn out (and) tired;' اور وہ اپنا گھر دیکھے بھالے *aur wōh apnā ghar dekھے bhāle*, 'and he shall look after his own house.' In such constructions the last verb may sometimes be one which, although possessing a signification of its own, is rarely used except in combination with another

verb or particle; *e.g.* بھالنا *bhālnā* (from the Sanskrit root *bhṛi*), in the last example, and in the word سنبھالنا *sambhālnā*, 'to support,' etc. Similarly دھو دھا کر *dho dhā kar*, 'having washed,' where the form دھا *dhā* (which sometimes occurs alone) has the same signification as دھو *dho*, and, like it, is derived from the Sanskrit root *dhāv*, 'to wash.' Under no circumstances, however, can Reiteratives be regarded as compound verbs.

218. It is evident then from the preceding remarks that the compound verbs are, strictly speaking, of seven kinds; namely, Intensives, Potentials, Completives, Continuatives, Frequentatives, and Desideratives formed with the perfect participle, and Transitives formed by prefixing a past conjunctive participle to a verb denoting motion. In these the second member alone is conjugated, the first undergoing no change.

CHAPTER IV.

PARTICLES OR INDECLINABLE WORDS (حرف *harf*).

I. ADVERBS.

219. Adverbs are used to qualify any attribute. As in other languages, they may be classified according to their meaning and logical connection, or according to their origin. In the few adverbs which we purpose noticing we shall adopt both these principles of classification, giving the preference however to the latter. Persian and Arabic adverbs will, as far as possible, be kept distinct from those of the Hindī.

220. Original Hindī adverbs are not numerous. The following are some of the most common:

1. Time: آج *āj*, 'to-day' (Sanskrit *adya*).

کل *kal*, 'yesterday, or to-morrow' (S. *kalya*).

پرسوں *parson*, 'the day before yesterday,' or 'the day after to-morrow' (S. *paras + śvas*).

تِرسوں *tarson*, 'three days ago, or hence' (S. *tri + śvas*)

نِرسوں *narson*, 'four days ago, or hence' (David. *nal*, 'four' + *son* = *śvas*).

جہت *jhat*, 'instantly,' 'in a moment' (S. *jhaṭiti*).

2. Manner: تُوڑت *turt*, } 'swiftly,' 'quickly' (S. *tvaritam*).
تُوڑنت *turant*, }

(Assent or ہاں *hān*, 'yes' (S. *ām*).

negation). نہ *na*, 'not' (S. *na*).

 نہیں *nahīn*, 'no,' 'not' (S. *nahī*).

 مت *mat* (used as a prohibitive with the imperative),
 'do not' (S. *mā*).

(Emphasis). تو *to*, 'indeed' (S. *tu*).

 بھی *bhī*, 'also,' 'too,' 'even' (S. *api*).

221. Some adverbs are originally nouns or adjectives in the locative case: *e.g.*

 آگے *āge*, 'in front,' 'before,' 'ahead' (S. *agre*).

 پار *pār*, 'on the opposite side,' 'across' (S. *pāre*).

 پاس *pās*, 'at the side,' 'near' (S. *pārśve*).

 دھیری *dhīre*, 'gently' (S. *dhīra*).

 سامنے *sāmne*, 'in front' (S. *sam + mukha*).

 سویری *sawere*, 'early' (S. *sa + vela*).

 نیچے *nīche*, 'below' (S. *nīche*).

222. Nouns in the ablative case may also be used as adverbs (تَمِیز *tamīz*, 'the specification'):

 بھولے سے *bhūle-se*, 'by mistake,' 'forgetfully.'

 پھرتی سے *phurtī-se*, 'with agility,' etc., 'actively,' 'nimbly.'

 خوشی سے *khushī-se*, 'with pleasure,' etc., 'gladly,' 'willingly.'

 زور سے *zor-se*, 'with or by force,' 'perforce,' 'forcibly,'
 'strongly,' 'hard.'

223. Adjectives in the *uninflected* form (*i.e.* in the nom. sing. masc.) are also employed as adverbs, generally when it is intended to express rather the quality of the agent as seen in the act, or after the act, than the quality of the act itself: *e.g.*

وہ بڑا سیانا ہے *wōh barā siyānā hai*, 'he is very knowing, or cunning.'
 وہ بہت اچھا لکھتا ہے *wōh bahut achchhā likhtā hai*, 'he writes very well.'

224. The following useful series of adverbs are formed from pronominal bases by means of certain affixes:¹

PRONOMINAL BASES.

	PROXIMATE DEMONSTRATIVE. <i>a, i</i> or <i>y, ya.</i>	REMOTE DEMONSTRATIVE. <i>u</i> or <i>w, wa.</i>	INTERROGATIVE. <i>ka, ki</i> or <i>ky.</i>	RELATIVE. <i>j, ja</i> or <i>ji</i> or <i>jy.</i>	CORRELATIVE. <i>t, ta, ti</i> or <i>ty.</i>
1. Time. . .	اب <i>ab</i> , 'now.'	. . . . .	کب <i>kab</i> , 'when?'	جب <i>jab</i> , 'when.'	تب <i>tab</i> , 'then.'
2. Place. . .	یہاں <i>yahān</i> , 'here.'	وہاں <i>wahān</i> , 'there.'	کہاں <i>kahān</i> , 'where?'	جہاں <i>jahān</i> , 'where.'	تہاں <i>tahān</i> , 'there.'
3. Direction	ادھر <i>idhar</i> , 'hither.'	اُدھر <i>udhar</i> , 'thither.'	کدھر <i>kidhar</i> , 'whither?'	جدھر <i>jidhar</i> , 'whither.'	تدھر <i>tidhar</i> , 'thither.'
4. Manner. .	یوں { <i>yūn</i> , <i>yon</i> , 'thus,' etc.	ووں { <i>wūn</i> , <i>won</i> , 'thus,' 'so.'	کیوں { <i>kyūn</i> , <i>kyon</i> , 'how? why?'	جیوں { <i>jyūn</i> , or <i>jyon</i> , or <i>jon</i> , 'as.'	تیوں { <i>tyūn</i> or <i>tyon</i> , or <i>ton</i> . 'so.'

¹ The grammarians would have us believe that these series of adverbs are formed in Hindī or Urdū itself from the pronouns *yēh*, *wōh*, etc., by adding the affixes *b*, etc.: but there can be no doubt that they are all derived from the Sanskrit, or that, at least, one or two of a series are derived from the corresponding Sanskrit series, and the rest formed after the same model. In the first series, for example, *jab* and *tab* spring, most probably, from the Sanskrit *yāvat* and *tāvat*, through the Prākṛit *jāva*, *tāva*; and *ab* and *kab* were similarly formed afterwards. That this series is derived from *jad*, *tad*, etc., as some suppose, by change of *d* into *b*, is highly improbable, for *d* does not pass into *b*.

The termination *hān* of the second series corresponds to the Sanskrit *sthāne*, the loc. of *sthāna*, 'place:' e.g. *tahān*=*tatsthāne*. *Hān*, it may be observed, is in common use at the present day as a noun in the locative, signifying 'place,' 'house:' e.g. *mere hān ānā*, 'come to my place or house;' *ṣāhib ke hān jānū*, 'go to the gentleman's house;' not *mere yahān*, and *ṣāhib ke yahān*.

The termination of the third series is not easy to trace. It would appear to correspond to the Sanskrit *tas* (*idhar*=*itas*), or to the Sanskrit affix *ha* (*dha*); e.g. *idhar*=*iha*; most probably to the latter, for the Persian word corresponding to *idhar* is *idar*=Zend *idha*=Sanskrit *iha*.

The termination of the fourth series is supposed to spring from the Sanskrit affix *thā* or *tham*: e.g. *iṭham*=Prākṛit *ia*=Hindī *yon*; but we prefer to derive it from the Sanskrit *evam* (the Prākṛit *ēvvaṃ*), and to suppose that the other adverbs of the series are formed after the model of it.

Rem. Instead of the forms *kab*, *jāb*, *tab*, in the first series, the forms *kad*, *jad*, *tad*, are occasionally used (in Hindī commonly), and the first vowel of the series *idhar*, etc., is occasionally lengthened, *e.g.* *jīdhar*. etc.

225. The adjectives derived from the same pronouns (§ 156) are also employed (in the inflected form generally) as adverbs of *manner* and *degree* (measure, quantity): *e.g.*

ایسے <i>aise</i> , 'like this,' 'thus,' 'so.'	اُتنے or اِتنے <i>itne or itte</i> , 'as much as this,' 'so much.'
وِیسے <i>waise</i> , 'like that,' 'so.'	اُتنے or اِتنے <i>utne or utte</i> , 'as much as that,' 'so much.'
کِیسے <i>kaise</i> , 'in what way?' 'how?'	کِتنے or کتنے <i>kitne or kitte</i> , 'how much or many?'
جِیسے <i>jaise</i> , 'in what way,' 'as.'	جِتنے or جتنے <i>jitne or jitte</i> , 'as much as.'
تِیسے <i>taise</i> , 'in that way,' 'so.'	تِتنے or تتنے <i>titne or titte</i> , 'so much.'

Occasionally however, like other adjectives (§ 223), they are used in the uninflected (masc.) form.

Rem. Of the double forms *itne* or *itte*, etc., the first are more generally used.

226. The pronominal adverbs, like most other adverbs, may be intensified by the addition to them of the emphatic particle *hī* or *hīn*, the latter form being employed with those of the second and fourth series. *E.g.* 1) from the first series we get:

- اَبھی *abhī*, 'this very instant,' 'just now,' 'immediately.'
 کبھی *kabhī*, 'ever' (کبھی نہیں *kabhī nahīn*, 'never').
 جابھی *jabhī*, 'hence,' 'for such a reason' (frequently used for *tabhī*).
 تابھی *tabhī*, 'at that very time,' 'thence,' 'for that reason.'

Rem. *Hū* would appear to be an old form of *hī*; but it is now only

used, occasionally, with the derivatives from the interrogative pronoun: *e.g.* کَبھُو *kabhū* = کَبھِی *kabhī*.

2) In the second series, the termination *hān* is elided before the emphatic particle *hīn* is added; in some cases though the nasal of *hān* is retained: *e.g.*

یہیں *yahīn* (or *yanhīn*), 'this very place,' 'just here.'

وہیں *wahīn* (or *wanhīn* or *wunhīn*), 'that very place,' 'just there.'

کہیں *kahīn*, 'anywhere' (*kahīn nahīn*, 'nowhere').

جہیں *jahīn*, 'wheresoever.'

تہیں *tahīn*, 'that same or very place.'

Rem. These forms are all contractions, and the two nasals, though not usually written, may often be distinctly heard in the pronunciation of a native, especially in the words *yanhīn* and *wunhīn*; it is not correct therefore to say that they are formed "by changing *hān* (or *ān*) into *hīn* (or *īn*)."
It may be observed further, that, with the exception of کہیں 'somewhere, somehow,' they are never used as adverbs of manner, as some grammarians say they are.

3) Examples of the fourth series are:

یوںہیں *yūnhīn* or *yōnhīn*, 'just this way,' 'without any ground or reason.'

وُنہیں *wūnhīn* or *wōnhīn*, 'in that very way,' 'on that very instant.'

جوںہیں *jōnhīn*, 'as,' 'as soon as.'

Rem. These forms never convey a *local* signification, as the grammarians assert.

4) The remaining series take *hī* after them for emphasis; as اِدھرہی *idhar-hī*, 'in this very direction,' 'to this place;' اِیسےہی *aise-hī*, 'precisely like this;' کِیسےہی *kaise-hī*, 'in whatever way,' 'however,' 'how—soever;' کِتنےہی *kitne-hī*, 'how much soever.'

227. Adverbs of *time* and *place* may be used as nouns, and put in the genitive and ablative cases. With the

genitive postposition they become adjectives: *e.g.* اب کی *ab-kī* *daf'a*, 'this time;' *yahān-ke bā-shinde*, 'the people of this place.' An adverb of *time* in the ablative changes its signification from a *point* to *duration* of time; as *کل سے* *kal-se*, 'since yesterday;' *کب سے* *kab-se*, 'since when?' *تب سے* *tab-se*, 'since then:' and an adverb of place changes its signification from *rest in*, or *motion to*, to *motion from* a place: *e.g.* یہاں سے *yahān-se*, 'from this place,' 'hence.'

Rem. Adverbs of *degree* are said by some writers on Urdū grammar to be used in the locative case, and to change their signification to that of *relative time*, *e.g.* اُنہ میں *itne-men*, 'meanwhile.' It is however more correct to regard *itne*, etc., in such cases as adjectives qualifying a noun of time understood: *e.g.* *itne* 'arṣe men. Similarly, when *itne-men* signifies 'for so much' (*men* being here used for *ko*, as it often is), *itne* is an adjective qualifying a noun of price or value understood.

228. Adverbs of time may also take the postposition *تک* *tak* ('till,' 'up to') after them, to signify the point up to which something lasts or continues: *e.g.* *کل تک* *kal-tak*, 'up to yesterday,' *اب تک* *ab tak*, 'till now,' 'as yet;' *کب تک* *kab tak*, 'till when?' 'how long?'

229. The same postposition after an adverb of place gives it the signification of *motion towards* the place, and also of *degree*: *یہاں تک* *yahān tak*, 'up to, or as far as, this place,' 'to this degree,' 'so much so;' *کہاں تک* *kahān-tak*, 'up to where,' 'to what extent?' 'how far?'

230. The locative case of the demonstrative and relative pronouns may be used adverbially: *e.g.* *اس پر* *is-par*, 'on this,' 'hereupon;' *جس پر* *jis-par*, 'whereupon.'

231. The pronouns, followed by the postpositions *لیے* *liye*, and *واسطے* *wāṣṭe*, may be used as *causal* adverbs: *e.g.* *اس لیے* *is liye*, or *اس واسطے* *is wāṣṭe*, ‘on account of this,’ ‘therefore;’ *کس لیے* *kis liye*, ‘on account of what?’ ‘wherefore?’

232. The conjunctive participle is sometimes used adverbially: *e.g.* *جان بوجھ کر* *jān-būjh-kar*, ‘wittingly,’ ‘of set purpose.’ This participle in many other cases also may be conveniently rendered by an English adverb.¹

233. Compound adverbs are of frequent occurrence in Urdū. They generally consist of a repeated adverb or noun (the negative *na* being sometimes inserted between them to add indefiniteness, etc., to the idea), or of two similar nouns or adverbs, or of elliptical phrases.

The following are a few examples:

دھیری دھیری *dhīre dhīre*, ‘gently.’

گھڑی گھڑی *ghaṛī ghaṛī*, ‘every moment,’ ‘constantly.’

دن دن *din din* (= *دن بہ دن* *din ba din*), ‘from day to day,’ ‘daily.’

جہاں جہاں *jahān jahān*, ‘wherever.’

کبھی کبھی *kabhī kabhī*, ‘now and again,’ ‘sometimes.’

کبھی نہ کبھی *kabhī na kabhī*, ‘sometime or other.’

کہیں نہ کہیں *kahīn na kahīn*, ‘somewhere or other.’

آج کل *āj-kal*, ‘now-a-days,’ ‘in a day or two.’

جہاں کہیں *jahān kahīn*, ‘wherever.’

جون توں *jon-ton*, ‘in any way,’ ‘somehow or other.’

¹ We may here point out that *چپکے* *chupke* is not a *conjunctive participle*, as some of the grammarians term it, but the inflected form of the adjective *chupkā*, ‘silent.’ As there is no such verb as *chupnā*, there can be no conjunctive participle of the form *chupke*.

پت *jhaṭ-paṭ*, 'instantly.'

رات و دین *rāt-o-dīn*, } 'night and day,' 'incessantly.'

دین رات *dīn-rāt*,

هاں تو *hān to*, 'yes, indeed.'

نہیں تو *nahīn to*, 'no, indeed.'

For the adverbs formed from the numerals see § 62 *et seq.*

PERSIAN ADVERBS.

234. Persian adverbs are not to be distinguished from other parts of speech by termination or form; and only a few of them are genuine adverbs. They may be classed according to their origin, as—

a) NOUNS IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE:

1) Simple Substantives, in the singular or plural: *e.g.*

باز *bāz*, 'back,' 'again.'

پس *pas*, 'after,' 'then,' 'therefore,' 'hence.'

بار *bār*, 'time' (بار بار *bār bār*, 'repeatedly,' 'constantly').

باری *bāre* (*e* being the suffix of *unity*), 'once,' 'at length.'

بارہا *bārḥā* (*hā* being the plural suffix), 'many times,' 'often.'

تنہا *tanhā*, 'alone.'

قضا *qazā-rū* (= از قضا *az qazā*), 'by the will of God,' 'providentially.'

2) Compound Substantives; as

قضا کار *qazā-kār* (= از کار *az kār*), 'by the work of God,' 'providentially.'

ناگہاں *nāgahān*, or ناگاہ *nāgāh*, 'suddenly.'

شب و روز *shab-o roz*, 'night and day,' 'always.'

ہر روز *har roz*, 'daily.'

سراسر *sar-ā-sar*, 'altogether,' 'throughout.'

حاصل کلام *ḥāṣilē kalām*, 'the gist of the matter,' 'in brief.'

b) SUBSTANTIVES WITH A PREPOSITION.

The preposition most commonly met with in Urdū is *ba*, 'with or by;' but others also occur: *e.g.*

بزور *ba-zor* (Urdū *zor-se*), 'perforce,' 'forcibly.'

بجبر *ba-jabr*, 'violently.'

بخوبی *ba-khūbī*, 'well,' 'excellently.'

در حال *dar hāl*, 'just now,' 'immediately.'

c). ADJECTIVES, SIMPLE OR COMPOUND.

تیز *tez*, 'quickly,' 'swiftly.'

جلد *jald*, 'quickly.'

دیر *der*, 'late.'

دُور *dūr*, 'far.'

بلند *baland*, 'high.'

چنانچہ *chunānchi* (= *chūn* + *ān* + *chi*), 'so,' 'accordingly.'

d). GENUINE ADVERBS.

جدا *judā*, 'separately.'

نیز *nīz*, 'even,' 'also.'

هرگز *hargiz*, 'ever' (with neg. 'never').

هم *ham*, 'even.'

همیشه *hamesha*, 'always.'

هنوز *hanoz*, 'hitherto,' 'as yet.'

e). INTERROGATIVE: *e.g.* آیا *āyā*, 'whether?' (Lat. *num?*).

Rem. The adverb of *probability* and *doubt* (which is most commonly used in Urdū) is شاید *shāyad*, 'may-be,' 'perhaps.' It is the third pers. sing. of the aorist of the verb *shāyistan*, 'to be suitable.' For the adverbs formed by means of the affix اِنـَـا *āna*, and the numeral adverbs, see the section on Persian Constructions.

ARABIC ADVERBS.

235. The adverbs borrowed from the Arabic may be classed under five heads: 1) Particles; 2) Substantives in the nominative case; 3) Substantives (simple or compound) in the accusative case; 4) nouns in the genitive case governed by a preceding preposition; 5) Phrases.

1) PARTICLES.

Extremely few of these occur in Urdū. Examples are: فقط *fakāt*, 'only,' 'merely' (*lit.* 'and enough'); لا *lā* 'not' (used in composition alone).

2) SUBSTANTIVES IN THE NOMINATIVE.

These are not numerous in Urdū. Examples are: بعد *ba'd*, and مِن بَعْدِ *mim-ba'd*, 'afterwards;' قَبْلَ *kabl*, 'before.'

3) SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE.

The accusative is notably the adverbial case in Arabic, and hence such adverbs are of common occurrence in Urdū: *e.g.*

إِنِّفَاقًا <i>ittifākan</i> , 'fortuitously,' 'by chance.'	دَفْعَةً <i>daf'atan</i> , 'all at once.'
خُصُوصًا <i>khusūṣan</i> , 'particularly,' 'specially.'	مَثَلًا <i>maṣalan</i> , 'for example.'

Rem. Occasionally the *tanwīn* is changed to *fathā*, the accusative taking the *pausal* form of the Arabic: *e.g.* ظَاهِرًا *zāhirā*, 'apparently.'

If the noun is determined by having the article *al* prefixed, or by being put in the construct state, it loses the *tanwīn*, and (in Urdū and Persian) in the first case, the final vowel also: *e.g.*

- الْبَتَّة *al-batta* (for الْبَتَّة *albatata*), 'decidedly.'
 الْحَال *al-hāl*, 'at the present time,' 'just now.'
 الْغَرَض *al-garaz*, 'the gist or purport (of it),' 'in short.'
 الْقِصَّة *al-kisṣa*, 'the story,' 'in short.'
 آخِرَ الْأَمْرِ *ākhirā'l amr*, 'at last,' 'finally.'
 حَاصِلُ الْكَلَامِ *hāṣila'l kalām* (or, more commonly, after the Persian, حَاصِلِ الْكَلَامِ *hāṣilē kalām*), 'the gist of the matter,' 'to sum up,' 'in brief.'

Rem. In some cases, even where the noun is not defined, the *tanwīn* is dropped in Urdū: e.g. آخِر *ākhir*, 'at last,' for آخِرًا.

4) NOUN GOVERNED BY A PREPOSITION.

عَنْقَرِيبَ <i>anḡarīb</i> , 'nearly,' 'al- most.'	فِي الْفَوْرِ <i>fi'l faur</i> , 'instantly.'
فِي الْجُمْلَةِ <i>fi'l jumla</i> , 'on the whole,' 'altogether.'	بِالْآن <i>bi'l fē'l</i> , 'for the present,' 'at present,' 'just now.'
فِي الْحَالِ <i>fi'l hāl</i> , 'at present,' 'just now.'	بِالْكُلِّ <i>bi'l kull</i> , 'in the totality,' 'totally,' 'altogether.'

5) PHRASES:

Such as مِنْ وَعَنْ *min wa* 'an, 'circumstantially.'

فِيهَا *fabihā* (the conj. *fa* + prep. *bi* + pron. *hā*), 'well and good.'

يَعْنِي *ya'ne* (properly *ya'nē*; third pers. sing. masc. Imperf. of the verb 'and'), 'that is to say,' 'to wit,' 'namely' (*lit.* 'it signifies').

كَمَائِنِغِي *ka-mā-yambagī* (prep. *ka* + pron. *mā* + verb *yambagī*), 'as is proper,' 'fittingly' (*lit.* 'like that which is proper').

II. PREPOSITIONS AND POSTPOSITIONS.

236. The Urdū prepositions are, for the most part, originally adverbs (that is to say, Hindī nouns in the locative or ablative case, determined by a following genitive), or Persian and Arabic nouns used adverbially in the construct accusative: hence the use of the form *ke* of the genitive affix when the preposition (or governing noun) is masculine.

237. The genuine *prepositions* are nearly all Persian or Arabic, and invariably precede the noun they govern.

The other prepositions as commonly follow as precede the governed noun.

238. The following are real *postpositions*, which invariably *follow* the noun they govern, and for the most part require that noun to be in the Formative :

بِنا *binā*, 'without' (Sanskrit *vinā*).

پر *par*, 'on,' 'upon' (S. *uparī*).

تک *tak*, 'till,' 'up to,' 'as far as,' 'inclusive' (S. *daghna*?).

تا'یں *ta'in*, 'up to,' 'to' (S. *sthāne* :—*ta'in* governs the genitive).

سُدھان *suddhān*, 'along with' (S. *sārddham*).

سمیت *saṁet*, 'together with,' 'having' (S. *saṁeta*).

سے *se*, 'from,' 'with,' 'by' (S. *sachā*, or perhaps the Prāk. gen. affix *he*).

کر *kar*, 'by means of,' 'on account of,' 'by the name of,' (S. *kṛite*).

کو *ko*, 'to,' 'for the sake of,' 'for,' etc. (S. *kṛite*).

کے *ke* (= کو *ko*), 'to' (S. *kṛite*?).

لیئے *lī'e*, 'for the sake of,' 'for' (from the S. root *rā*, 'to give:' it generally governs the genitive).

میں *men*, 'in' (S. *madhye*).

Rem. The postposition بِنا *binā*, as also its contraction بن *bin*, may either precede or follow the noun in the Formative : e.g. بن دانے پانی *bin dāne pānī*, 'without food.' The word کر *kar*, as a postposition (in which character it is not noticed by the grammarians), is distinct from the affix کر *kar* of the past conjunctive participle; examples of its use are : گھر ہمارا خانۃ اللہ کر مشہور تھا *ghar hamārā khāna'ē allāh-kar mashhūr thā*, 'my (*lit.* our) house was famous on account of the house of God;' جس نے اپنے تئیں سوداگر بچہ کر مشہور کیا تھا *jis-ne apne ta'in saudāgar-bacha-kar mashhūr kiya thā*, 'who had made himself known by (the title of) a merchant's son;' مچھے کٹو کر پکارا کرتے ہیں *maṛhe kṭo kar pākara kartē hīn*.

mujhe kallū-kar pukārā-karte haiñ, 'they are in the habit of calling me by (the name of) Kallū.' The postposition *کے* *ke* is generally supposed to be, in every instance, merely the inflected form of the genitive affix *کا* *kā* with one of the postpositions *پاس* *pās*, *تہیں* *ta'īñ*, or *ہاں* *hāñ*, understood. It appears however to be more correct to regard it, with the native grammarians, as a distinct postposition, when it is employed in such constructions as *اُسکے سخت چوٹ لگی ہے* *us-ke sakht choṭ lagī hai*, 'he has received a severe injury,' wherein its signification is precisely that of *کو*, with which it is no doubt connected (*cf.* § 318 *Rem.*).

239. The following postpositions¹ (and perhaps others besides), when they follow a noun, may optionally govern it in the Formative or the Genitive :

باہر *bāhir*, 'without,' 'outside' (S. *vahis*).

بغیر *ba-gair*, 'without' (governs the Formative of pronouns and verbal nouns).

پار *pār*, 'on the other side of,' 'across.'

پاس *pās*, 'near,' 'at the side of.'

پیچھے *pīchhe*, 'behind' (S. *paśchāt*).

تِلے *talē*, 'under,' 'underneath' (S. *talē*).

مُوافِق *muwāfiq*, 'suitable,' 'according' (to).

E.g. *دروازے کے باہر* *darwāze bāhir* (or *باہر کے دروازہ* *darwāze ke bāhir*); 'outside the door;' *اُس کے بغیر* *us bagair*, 'without him;' *نَدی پار* *nadī pār*, 'across the river;' *بادشاہ پاس* *bādshāh pās*, 'near or with the king;' *مجھ پاس* *mujh pās*, 'near or

¹ In such constructions as *اِس سبب* *is li'e*, *اِس واسطے* *is wāṣṭe*, *اِس سبب* *is sabab*, etc., signifying *for this reason* or *cause*, the pronoun is used as an adjective qualifying the postposition in its character of a noun, and hence must necessarily occur in the Formative; but if any other noun, expressed or understood, is qualified by the pronominal adjective, or if the pronoun be *personal*, it must be put in the genitive; as *اُس کے سبب* *us-ke li'e*, 'for him,' *اُس کے سبب* *us-ke sabab*, 'on account of him.'

with me; پیچھے *pīth pīchhe*, 'behind (one's) back;'
تِلے پاؤں *pā'ōn tale*, 'under foot;'
مُوافِقِ حاجتِ *hājat muwā-fik*, 'suitable to (one's) need.'

But if they *precede* the noun, they invariably govern the Genitive: *e.g.* میری پاس *mere pās*; باہر دروازی کے *bāhir darwāze ke*; بغیر اُسکے *ba-gair uske*; تِلے پاؤں کے *tale pā'ōn ke*; مُوافِقِ حاجت کے *muwāfik hājat ke*.

Rem. When, however, بغیر *ba-gair* governs a verbal noun or an abstract substantive with the force of a verbal noun, this is put in the Formative, even if the postposition precedes: as بغیر تحقیق کیے *ba-gair tahkik-kiye*, 'without having ascertained,' بغیر پروانگی *ba-gair parwā-nagī*, 'without permission.'

240. The following are the principal *prepositions*, or *postpositions*, which, being *masculine* nouns in the Locative, Ablative, or Accusative case,¹ require the affix کے to be used with the Genitive they govern:

1) HINDĪ.

آگے *āge*, 'before,' 'in front' (Sanskrit *agre*).

اوپر *ūpar*, 'on,' 'upon' (S. *upari*).

بہروسے *bharose*, 'in reliance on,' 'trusting to' (S. *bhadra + āsā*).

بہل *bhal*, or بل *bal*, 'with—downwards or foremost' (S. *bhara*).

بیچ *bīch*, 'in the midst of,' 'among.'

پری *pare*, 'beyond' (S. *pāra*).

ساتھ *sāth*, 'with,' 'along with' (S. *sārdham*).

سامنے *sāmne*, 'in front of,' (S. *sam + mukha*).

¹ It will be seen from the examples given that many Persian and Arabic nouns are treated like Hindī nouns, and put in the Locative or Ablative case to form postpositions: *e.g.* حوالے *hawāle*, ذریعے *zariye*, ذمے *zimme*, etc. In some instances moreover the Ablative or Locative postposition is expressed.

ہاں *hān*,¹ 'at or to a place or house' (S. *sthāne*).

We may add that in the matter of this use of *hāi*, the people of Lakhnau are at one with their brethren of Dehlī, and hence its uniform usage in all parts of Hindūstān proper.

رُؤِو *rū-ba-rū*, 'face to face with,' 'facing' (*rū*, 'face' + prep. *ba + rū*).

سِپَرْد *sipurd*, 'in charge or keeping.'

گِرد *gird*, } 'near,' 'about.'

چَوِگِرد *chau-gird*, } 'round about.'

نَزْدِیْک *nazdik*, 'near,' 'close to' (frequently corrupted into *nagich*).

The more common form in which the Persian prepositions occur is that of an inseparable (and genuine) preposition prefixed to a Persian or Arabic noun; the compound in such cases being equivalent to the Hindī ablative or locative case: *e.g.*

از رُؤِی *az-rū'ē*, 'by reason of,' = *rū se* (*lit.* from the face or appearance').

بَاوُجُود *bā-wujūd*, 'notwithstanding' (*lit.* 'along with the existence').

بَاوَصْف *bā-waṣf*, 'notwithstanding' (*lit.* 'with the attribute').

بِجَاي *ba-jā'ē*, 'in place of,' 'instead of.'

بِجُز *ba-juz*, 'with the exception.'

بِرَاي *ba-rā'ē*, 'for the sake of,' 'on account of.'

بِسَبَب *ba-sabab*, 'by reason of,' 'on account of.'

بِطُور *ba-ṭaur*, 'by way of.'

بِمُوجِب *ba-mūjib*, 'in accordance with,' 'according to.'

بِرُخْلَاف *bar-khilāf*, 'in opposition to,' 'contrary to.'

بِرُعْکَس *bar-'aks*, 'on the contrary of,' 'in spite of.'

دِرِپَی *dar-pai*, 'in quest of,' 'in pursuit of.'

دِرِپِش *dar-pesh*, 'in front of.'

دِرِوِیَان *dar-miyān*, 'in the midst of,' 'among.'

3) ARABIC.

بَاعْث *bā'is*, 'because of.'

بَدْلَ *badle*, 'in exchange for.'

بَعْد *b'ad*, 'after.'

حَوَالِے *hawāle*, 'in the charge or care of.'

خِلَاف *khilāf*, 'in opposition to.'

ذَرِیْعَے *zariye*, 'by means of,' 'through the medium of.'

زِمْمَے *zimme*, 'under the charge or responsibility of.'

سَبَب *sabab*, 'because of,' 'by reason of.'

سِوَا ¹*siwā*, } 'over and above,' 'besides.'

سِوَا *siwā'ē*, }

عِلَآوَه *'alāwa*, 'in addition to,' 'besides.'

عِوَاض *'iwāz*, 'instead of,' 'for.'

قَبْل *kabl*, 'before.'

قَرِيب *karīb*, 'near.'

لَآئِق *lā'ik*, 'suitable for,' 'worthy of.'

مُتَعَلِّق *muta'allik*, 'depending on,' 'connected with.'

مُشَابِه *mushābih*, 'like,' 'resembling.'

مُوجِب *mūjib*, 'because of,' 'by reason of.'

مُطَابِق *mutābiq*, 'in conformity to.'

مُؤَافِق *muwāfiq*, 'agreeable or suitable to' (also governs the Formative).

241. A few of them are compounds, consisting of an inseparable preposition prefixed to a noun in the genitive, or of a preposition following a pronoun: *e.g.*

بِدُون *bidūn*, 'without' (prep. *bī* + *dūn*).

بِغَیْرِ *bigair* (or with pers. prep. *ba-gair*), 'without.'

مَا بَیْن *mā-bain*, 'what is between' (from *mā* + prep. *bain*).

مَا تَحْتَ *mā-taht*, 'that which is under' (*mā* + prep. *taht*).

¹ *Siwā* is regarded by native grammarians as an *exceptive* particle, united as *muzūf*, or determined noun, to another noun. The same is the case with the words *وَرَا* *warā* and *مَآوَرَا* *mā-warā*, 'beyond,' 'except.'

242. The following are a few examples of prepositions or postpositions which are originally *feminine* nouns, and hence require the affix *کی* *ki* with the genitive they govern :

- 1) *Hindī* : اور *or*, 'towards,' 'in the direction of.'
جگہ *jagah*, 'in place of,' 'in the room of.'
- 2) *Persian* : بابت *bābat*, 'concerning,' 'for,' 'on account of.'
زبانی *zabānī*, 'from the mouth of.'
بجہت *ba-jihat*, 'on account of,' 'by reason of.'
بدولت *ba-daulat*, 'by means of.'
- 3) *Arabic* : جانب *jānib*, 'in the direction of,' 'towards.'
جہت *jihat*, 'on account of.'
خاطر *khāṭir*, 'for the sake of.'
سمت *simt*, } 'in the direction of,' 'towards.'
طرف *ṭaraf*, }
طرح *ṭarah*, 'in the manner of.'
معرفت *ma'rifat*, 'by means of.'
نسبت *nisbat*, 'in reference to,' 'in respect of.'

243. The feminine prepositions, when they *precede* the governed noun, require *کے* *ke* for the genitive affix of that noun: *e.g.* طرف جہاز کے *ṭaraf jahāz-ke*, 'in the direction of the ship' (but جہاز کی طرف *jahāz kī ṭaraf*, when the word *ṭaraf* follows the governed noun): similarly مانند لڑکے کے *mānind larke ke*, 'like a child,' 'بمدد اُسکے' *ba-madad uske*, 'with his help,' 'مِثْل شیر کے' *miṣl sher-ke*, 'after the likeness of a tiger,' although the words *mānind*, *madad*, and *miṣl* are feminine. This construction will be more fully noticed in the Syntax.

GENUINE PREPOSITIONS.

244. These are borrowed from the Persian and Arabic.

a) PERSIAN.

از *az*, 'from,' 'by,' 'with.'

ب or به *ba*, 'with,' 'by,' 'in,' etc. (the former being the *inseparable* form).

با *bā*, 'with,' 'along with.'

بدون *be*, 'without.'

بر *bar*, 'on,' 'upon' (= Sanskrit *upari*).

تا *tā*, 'till,' 'up to,' 'as far as.'

در *dar*, 'in' (contracted from *andar*).

Rem. To these some add پیش *pesh*, 'before,' زبر *zabar*, 'over,' and زیر *zer*, 'below;' but the first is an adverb, and generally takes the prep. *az* after it; as *pesh az in*, 'prior to this,' 'before this;' and the two last are compounds: e.g. *zabar = az or zi + bar*; *zer = zi + ir*.

b) ARABIC.

245. The Arabic prepositions are of two kinds; *separable* and *inseparable*.

1) INSEPARABLE.

ب *bi*, 'in,' 'at,' 'by,' 'with,' etc. (*bilā = bi + neg. lā*, 'not,' = 'without').

ل *li*, 'to,' 'for,' 'on account of,' (before pronom. suffixes it becomes *la*).

ك *ka*, 'as,' 'like.'

2) SEPARABLE.

إلى *ilā*, 'to.'

حتى *hattā*, 'till,' 'upto,' 'as far as.'

على *alā*, 'over,' 'above,' 'upon.'

عن *an*, 'from,' 'after,' 'for.'

عند *ind*, 'beside,' 'near,' 'by.'

في *fī*, 'in,' 'into,' 'among,' 'about.'

مع *ma* or معا *ma'a*, 'with,' 'along with.'

من *min*, 'out of,' 'from.'

246. These prepositions generally occur in Arabic and Persian phrases, but they are occasionally prefixed to Hindī nouns, which are then put in the Formative or the Genitive: *e.g.* پشاور سے تا کلکتے *peshāwar-se tū kalkatte*, 'from Peshāwar to Kalkattā (Calcutta);' مع ہاتھی کے *ma' hāthi ke*, 'together with the elephant.'

III. CONJUNCTIONS.

247. Conjunctions may be divided into the following classes :

1) CONNECTIVE.

اور <i>aur</i> , 'and.'	کیا—کیا <i>kyā—kyā</i> , 'whether—or.'
بھی <i>bhī</i> , 'also.'	نہ—نہ <i>na—na</i> , 'neither—nor.'
چاہو <i>chāho</i> , 'or;' <i>chāho—chāho</i> , 'either—or.'	نیز <i>nīz</i> , 'also.'
خواہ <i>khwāh</i> , 'or;' <i>khwāh—khwāh</i> , 'either—or.'	و <i>wa</i> or <i>o</i> , 'and.'
کہ <i>ki</i> , 'that;' 'or.'	یا <i>yā</i> , 'or;' <i>yā—yā</i> , 'either—or.'

2) ADVERSATIVE.

امّا <i>ammā</i> , 'but,' 'as for.'	تاہم <i>tā-ham</i> , 'so also,' 'yet,' 'still,' 'notwithstanding.'
بلکہ <i>bal-ki</i> , 'but rather,' 'on the contrary.'	تو بھی <i>to bhī</i> , 'even then,' 'still.'
پر <i>par</i> , 'but.'	لیکن <i>lekin</i> , 'but,' 'yet.'

3) EXCEPTIVE.

مگر *magar*, 'unless,' 'except,' 'save' (= *ma*, 'not' + *gar*, 'if').
 الا *illā*, 'except,' 'save' (= *in*, 'if' + *lā*, 'not').

4) CONDITIONAL.

اگر <i>agar</i> , } 'if,'	تو نہیں <i>nahīn to</i> , 'if not,' 'otherwise.'
جو <i>jo</i> , }	وگرنہ <i>wa-gar-na</i> , 'and if not,' 'otherwise.'

5) CONCESSIVE.

اگرچہ <i>agar-chi</i> , 'although.'	تو <i>to</i> , 'then.'
پس <i>pas</i> , 'then.'	گوکہ <i>go-ki</i> , 'although.'

6) CAUSAL.

ازبسیکہ <i>az-bas-ki</i> , 'inasmuch as.'	چونکہ <i>chūn-ki</i> , 'whereas,' 'since.'
بدانیکہ <i>ba-d-ān-ki</i> , 'forasmuch as.'	کیونکہ <i>kyūn-ki</i> , 'because.'

7) CONCLUSIVE.

بنابرائے <i>banā-bar-ān</i> , 'on that account,' 'therefore.'	پھر <i>phir</i> , 'then,' 'therefore.'
پس <i>pas</i> , 'hence.'	لہذا <i>li-hāzā</i> , 'for this reason,' 'therefore.'

8) FINAL.

تا *tā*, and تاکہ *tā-ki*, 'to the end that,' 'in order that.'
 مبادا *ma-bād-ā*, 'lest,' *lit.* 'may it not be.'

IV. INTERJECTIONS.

248. Interjections are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion. They may be divided into the following classes:

1) ASSENT.

E.g. ہاں *hān*, or ہوں *hūn*, 'yes!' اچھا *achchhā*, 'very well!' جی *jī*, 'yes!' (respectful).

2) APPROVAL;

as شاباش *shābāsh* (= شاد باش *shād bāsh*, 'be happy!'), 'bravo!' واہ واہ *wāh wāh*, 'well done!' 'bravo!'

3) SORROW OR PAIN;

as اری *are*, 'Oh!' ری *re*, 'Oh!' (always used as an affix); آہ *āh*, 'ah!' ہائے *hā'e*, 'alas!' وائے *wā'e* and وایلا *wā-wailā*,

‘woe!’ ‘alas!’ افسوس *afsos*, ‘pity!’ ‘alas!’ حيف *haif*,
 ‘ah!’ ‘alas!’ (chiefly used in poetry).

4) SURPRISE;

as آها *āhā*, or اوهو *ohō*, ‘Ha!’ ‘Ho!’ ‘Strange!’ وا *wāh*
wā, ‘How fine!’ ‘strange!’ کیا خوب *kyā khūb*, ‘How ex-
 cellent!’ سبحان الله *subhān allāh*, ‘Good God!’

5) AVERSION OR CONTEMPT;

as چھی *chhī*, ‘fie!’ دُر *dur*, ‘away!’ ‘avaunt!’ اری *are*,
 ‘O!’ اَبے *abe*, ‘O!’ (you fellow).

6) LONGING;

as کاشکے *kāsh-ki*, or کاشکے *kāsh-ke*, ‘would that’ (*utinam!*).

7) DESIRE FOR THE PRESENCE OR ATTENTION OF A PERSON;

as آئی *ai*, ‘O!’ او *o*, ‘O!’ هوت *hot*, ‘Ho!’ (vulgar,—
 always follows the object of address) اری *are*, ‘O!’ ‘Ho!’
 لے *le*, or لو *lo*, ‘there!’ ‘enough!’ ‘peace!’

CHAPTER V.

DERIVATION OF WORDS.

249. We purpose, in this chapter, to treat of such Hindī themes as have been derived by modifying forms obtained from the Sanskrit through the Prākṛit, as also such as are derived by rules peculiar to the Hindī.¹ With unmodified Sanskrit forms, such as *pālak*, *ānandit*, *balwān*, *gopāl*, etc., which occur in modern Hindī, we have little or no concern. For Persian and Arabic themes we must refer the reader to the section on Persian and Arabic constructions.

250. Derivative words may be classed under the two heads of *primary* and *secondary* formations, according as they are derived from *verbal roots*, or from *nouns*.

I. ABSTRACT NOUNS.

a) PRIMARY FORMATIONS.

251. The simple root of a verb is, in many cases, used as an abstract substantive: *e.g.*

مار <i>mār</i> , 'beating;'	Inf. مارنا <i>mārnā</i> , 'to beat.'
لُٹ <i>lūt</i> , 'plunder;'	,, لُٹنا <i>lūṭnā</i> , 'to plunder.'
چمک <i>chamuk</i> , 'glitter,' 'flash;'	,, چمکنا <i>chamaknā</i> , 'to shine,' etc.

¹ Nothing like an attempt to give *all* the themes occurring in Hindī is here made. This would be an almost impossible undertaking, so great is the change which the wear and tear of centuries, so to speak, has effected in most Hindī words. The affixes noticed are mostly those of frequent occurrence, respecting which there can be no doubt, whatever difference of opinion may exist as to the sources from which they are derived. We would observe also that, as in the case of the pronominal series *ab*, *kab*, *jab*, etc., it is highly probable that one derived affix has, in each case, served as a model for others, and that these have been used even with words of non-Aryan origin.

In a few words the root vowel is lengthened: *e.g.*

أُتَار <i>utār</i> , 'descent;'	Inf. أُتَرْنَا <i>utarnā</i> , 'to descend.'
چَال <i>chāl</i> , 'motion,' 'gait,' etc.;	,, چَلْنَا <i>chalnā</i> , 'to move or go.'
مِل <i>mel</i> , 'mingling,' 'intimacy;'	,, مِلْنَا <i>milnā</i> , 'to mingle,' etc.

252. Other abstract nouns are formed from the root, with or without lengthening the root vowel, by means of the following affixes:

1) اَ (= S. affix *a*); as—

پھیرا <i>pherā</i> , 'turning,' etc.;	Inf. پھیرْنَا <i>phernā</i> , 'to turn.'
جھگڑا <i>jhagrā</i> , 'quarrel;'	,, جھگڑْنَا <i>jhagarnā</i> , 'to quarrel.'
چھاپا <i>chhāpā</i> , 'stamp,' 'print;'	,, چھاپْنَا <i>chhāpnā</i> , 'to print,' etc.
مِلا <i>melā</i> , 'a gathering,' 'a fair;'	,, مِلْنَا <i>milnā</i> , 'to meet together.'

Rem. In some instances the *masc.* termination *ā* is changed to the *fem.* *ī*, to express some slight difference of signification; as پھیری *pherī*, 'going about,' 'hawking.'

2) نا *nā*, اَن *an*, اَنَّا *ān* (= S. affix *ana*).

The first of these is found in infinitives. Examples of the second are:

چَلان <i>chalan</i> , 'gait,' 'conduct;'	Inf. چَلْنَا <i>chalnā</i> .
مَران <i>maran</i> , 'dying;'	,, مَرْنَا <i>marnā</i> .
مِلان <i>milan</i> , 'mixing with,' 'meeting;'	,, مِلْنَا <i>milnā</i> .

In the third the vowel of the affix *an* is lengthened: *e.g.*

اُٹھان <i>uṭhān</i> , 'act of appearing;'	Inf. اُٹھْنَا <i>uṭhnā</i> , 'to rise.'
اُڑان <i>uṛān</i> , 'act of flying,' 'flight;'	,, اُڑْنَا <i>uṛnā</i> , 'to fly.'
لگان <i>lagān</i> , 'contact,' 'fastening,' etc.;	,, لگْنَا <i>lagnā</i> , 'to be in contact.'

Here may also be noticed the affix یِ *ī*, which is added to the roots of causal verbs to signify 'cost of,' 'expense for,' etc.; for the sister

dialects afford proof of this affix being a mere contraction of نِي *nī*, the fem. form of the affix نَا *nā* : e.g.

پسواڻي *piswā'ī*, 'price paid for grinding' (پيسنا *pīsnā*).

چراڻي *charā'ī*, 'price paid for grazing' (چارانا *charānā*).

دھلاڻي *dhulā'ī*, 'price paid for washing' (دھلانا *dhulānā*).

3) ت *t*; تـ *at*; تِي *tī*; (= S. affix *tī*); as—

بچت *bachat*, 'residue;'

Inf. بچنا *bachnā*, 'to be left.'

بڙھڻي *barḥtī*, 'increase;'

„ بڙھنا *barḥnā*, 'to increase.'

بھرتي *bhartī*, 'filling,' 'completion,' etc.;

„ بھرنا *bharnā*, 'to fill.'

رنگت *rangat*, 'colouring,' 'colour;'

„ رنگنا *rangnā*, 'to colour.'

Rem. The affix *tī*, as will appear further on, is also employed in secondary formations.

4) ات *āt*, اھت *āhat*, اوات *āwat*, او *ā'o*.

The original of all these forms is the Sanskrit affix *ātu* (which Bopp traces to the infinitive affix *tu*): the first, though common in the Urdū and Hindī of Southern India, is rarely used in the North, where the second and third (in which *h* and *w* are euphonic) are very common. Examples are :

چمکاھت *chamkāhat*, 'glitter,' 'brilliancy;'

Inf. چمکنا *chamaknā*,
'to shine.'

ببلاھت *bilbilāhat*, 'wailing,' 'moaning;'

„ ببيلانا *bilbilānā*,

'to moan,' etc. (the *ā* of the affix coalesces with final *ā* of the root).

گھبراھت *ghabrāhat*, 'confusion,' 'perturbation;'

„ گھبرانا *ghabrānā*,
'to be alarmed.'

بناوت *banāwat*, 'invention,' 'fabrication;'

„ بنانا *banānā*,
'to make.'

رکاوٲ *rukāwat*, 'hindrance,' 'obstacle;'

„ روکنا *roknā*, 'to
hinder.'

سجاوت *sajāwat*, 'preparation,' 'arrangement;'

„ سجانا *sajānā*, 'to
arrange.'

In the case of the affix *ā'o*,¹ the *t* of the affix *atu* has been elided, and the final vowel lengthened. It is an affix of very frequent occurrence. Examples are :

بچاؤ <i>bachā'o</i> , 'protection,' 'defence;'	Inf. بچنا <i>bachnā</i> , 'to escape.'
چڑھاؤ <i>charhā'o</i> , 'ascent;'	چڑھنا <i>charhnā</i> , 'to ascend.'
چھڑکاؤ <i>chhirkā'o</i> , 'sprinkling;'	چھڑکنا <i>chhiraknā</i> , 'to sprinkle.'
چھوڑاؤ <i>chhorā'o</i> , 'release;'	چھوڑنا <i>chhornā</i> , 'to let go.'

Rem. a. Many masculines in *ā'o* have corresponding feminines in *ā'ī*, with the same signification; as چڑھائی *charhā'ī*, 'ascent.'

Rem. b. The affix *āhaṭ* (differently derived however) is also employed in secondary formations, as will be shown further on.

Rem. c. The affix *ā'o* often takes the form *āwā* in rustic speech : e.g. چھوڑاوا *chhorāwā*, 'release.'

Rem. d. Native grammarians add *āp* or *p* to the affixes forming abstract nouns from verbal roots; but we cannot find this termination in any word except *mīlāp* (the only example adduced by them), and this is in all probability a mere modification of the Sanskrit *melāpaka*.

b) SECONDARY FORMATIONS.

253. Abstract nouns are derived from substantives and adjectives by means of the following affixes :

1) اِیّی *ā'ī*, (= S. affix *yam*, neuter).

This forms a large class of abstract nouns : e.g.

برائی *burā'ī*, 'badness,' 'wickedness,' from بُرا *burā*, 'bad.'

چوری *chorī*, 'theft,' from چور *chor*, 'a thief.'

تہاگی *thagī*, 'the practice of a *thag*' (تہگت); 'robbery,' etc.

پندتائی *panditā'ī*, 'the learning of a *pandit*,' 'learning.'

گولائی *golā'ī*, 'roundness,' from گول *gol*, 'round.'

¹ This affix is incorrectly written *āw* by some of the grammarians. It is usual in Hindī, no doubt, to represent final *o*, after a vowel, by **व**, but this is a mere *compendium scripturæ*; the letter is pronounced *o* all the same.

2) تى *tī* (= S. affix *tī*).

This affix, as we have shown, occurs in primary formations; an example of a secondary formation is—

کمّتی *kamtī*, 'deficiency,' from کم *kam*, 'less.'

Rem. It is possible however that the origin of this affix is the Sanskrit affix *tā*.

3) انـ *ān* (= S. affix *īman*).

This affix is derived by eliding the initial *i* and the *m* of the Sanskrit affix *īman*. It forms abstract nouns from adjectives denoting an inherent quality, but it rarely occurs in Urdū; one example is—

اونچان *ūnchān*, 'height,' from اونچا *ūnchā*, 'high.'

Rem. In a few Hindī words the affix *īman* takes the form *mā*: e.g. *garimā*, 'weight,' 'importance.'

4) پا *pā*, پن *pan*, پنّا *panā*; اتـ *āt*, اہتـ *āhat*.

The origin of all these affixes is the Sanskrit affix *tva*; e.g. 1) *tva* = *vva* = *ppa* = *pā*: 2) *tva* = Prākṛit *tvana* = *vvana* = *ppana* = *pan* and *panā*: 3) *tva* = *tta* = *ṭṭa* = *āt*, whence *āhat*, by insertion of *h* for euphony. They are all of frequent occurrence. A long vowel in the base may be shortened, and a final vowel dropped, before the affixes *pā*, *pan*, *panā* are added: e.g.

بڑھا پا *burhā-pā*, } 'old age,' from بڑھا *burhā*, 'old,' 'an old man.'

بڑھاپن *burhā-pan*, }

چھوٹا پن *chhoṭā-pan*, } 'littleness,' 'infancy,' 'childhood,' from چھوٹا *chhoṭā*, 'little.'

چھوٹا پا *chhoṭā-pā*, }

چھوٹا پن *chhoṭā-panā*, }

لڑکپن *larāk-pan*, } 'childishness,' 'childhood,' from لڑکا *larkā*, 'a

لڑکا پن *larkā-pan*, } 'child.'

چکنّاہٹ *chiknāhat*, 'greasiness,' 'smoothness,' from چکنا *chiknā*, 'greasy,' etc.

کڑواہٹ *karwāhat*, 'bitterness,' from کڑوا *karu'ā* or *karwā*, 'bitter.'

Rem. The word لَرَكْپَن is generally pronounced *larḱpan* by the natives of India; but the dictionaries all give the pronunciation as *larakpan*.

5) كَـ *ak* (= S. affix *ika*).

The original affix *ika* is employed in Sanskrit to form adjectives; but in Hindī and Urdū it is occasionally used to form abstract substantives: *e.g.*

تھنڈک *thandak*, } 'coolness,' *lit.* 'that which makes coolness'
 تھنڈھک *thandhak*, } (تھنڈھ).

6) اَسَـ *ās*.

The origin of this affix is probably the Sanskrit noun *āśū*, 'desire.' It is added to a few nouns to form abstract substantives, a long vowel in the base being shortened before the affix is added, and final *ā* coalescing with the *ā* of the affix: *e.g.*

میٹھاس *miṭhās*, 'sweetness,' from میٹھا *mīṭhā*, 'sweet' (S. *mishṭāśā*).
 کھٹاس *khaṭās* (or *khaṭās*), 'acidity,' from کھٹا *khaṭṭā*, 'sour.'

II. NOUNS OF AGENCY, ATTRIBUTIVES, POSSESSIVES, APPELLATIVES.

a) PRIMARY FORMATIONS.

1) اَـ *ā*, وَاَ *wā*, or هَا *hā*; اِیَّـ *aiyā*, or وِیَّـ *waiyā*.

254. The original of these affixes is the Sanskrit affix *aka*; whence by elision of *ka*, and compensatory lengthening of the preceding vowel, the affix *ā* is derived; thence *wā* and *hā* by prefixing *w* and *h* for euphony. Again, by elision of *k*, the form *ayā* is obtained, and this is changed, through the influence of *y*, into *aiyā*, in which *ai* is pronounced more like *aī* than as the diphthong *ai*: from *aiyā*, by prefixing a euphonic *w*, the affix *waiyā* is obtained. They are all added to verbal roots to form *nouns of agency*, and *attributives*: *e.g.*

بھونجا *bhūnjā*, 'a parcher' (of grain), as in بھڑ بھونجا *bhar-bhūnjā*,
from an obsolete بھانجا *bhānjā*, 'to parch.'

گھیرا *gherā*, 'a fence' (S. *grāhaka*, 'inclosing,' etc.), from گھیرنا *ghernā*, 'to surround.'

دیوا *dewā*, 'giving,' 'a giver' (S. *dāyaka*), from دینا *denā*, 'to give.'

لبوا *lewā*, 'taking,' 'a taker,' from لینا *lenā*, 'to take.'

چرواہا *charwā-hā*, 'a grazier,' from چروانا *charwānā*, 'to pasture.'

بٹنویا *baṭwaiyā*, 'a sharer or divider,' from بٹوانا *baṭwānā*, 'to
portion out.'

گویا *gawaiyā*, 'a singer,' from گانا *gānā*, 'to sing.'

In a few words the Sanskrit affix is preserved intact: e.g. گایک *gāyak*, 'a singer;' گاہک *gāhak* (S. *grāhaka*), 'a taker or seizer.'

2) ۛ ۛ̄, ۛ̄ ۛ̄ā.

These affixes correspond to the Sanskrit affix *uka*, the *k* of which is elided, and the preceding vowel lengthened by way of compensation. They are used to form *nouns of agency* and *attributives*: e.g.

بگاڑو *bigārū*, 'a spoiler,' 'a ruiner,' from بگاڑنا *bigārṇā*, 'to spoil.'

بھلاؤ *bhulā'ū*, 'misleader,' 'misleading,' from بھلانا *bhulānā*, 'to mislead.'

پھسلاؤ *phuslā'ū*, 'a coaxer,' from پھسلانا *phuslānā*, 'to coax.'

کماؤ *kamā'ū*, 'earning much,' 'laborious,' from کمانا *kamānā*, 'to earn.'

ریتوا *retū'ā*, 'a filer,' 'a polisher,' from ریتنا *retnā*, 'to file.'

3) ۛ ۛ̄ or ۛ̄ ۛ̄ā, ۛ̄ ۛ̄ā.

The original of these affixes is the Sanskrit affix *āku*, the *k* of which is elided in the last, and the *u* lengthened. They form *nouns of agency* and *attributives*: e.g.

پیراک *pairāk*, 'a swimmer,' from پیرنا *pairnā*, 'to swim.'

لڑاک *larāk*, } 'quarrelsome,' 'a brawler,' from لڑنا *larṇā*, 'to fight.'

لڑاکا *larākā*, }

بِڪَاوُ *bikā'ū*, 'for sale,' from بِڪُنَا *biknā*, 'to be sold.'
 ڪَسَاوُ *kasā'ū*, 'astringent,' from ڪَسُنَا *kasnā*, 'to bind or tighten.'

4) اَرِي *ārī*, or اَرِي *ārī*.

These affixes probably spring from the Sanskrit affix *āru*. They form verbal adjectives (few in number) denoting habitual action or occupation: *e.g.*

پُوڄاري *pūjārī*, 'a worshipper,' from پُوڄنا *pūjnā*, 'to worship.'
 ڪِهَلار *khilār*, } 'given to playing,' 'playsome,' from ڪِهَلنا *khelnā*,
 ڪِهَلاري *khilārī*, } 'to play.'

Rem. The affix *ārī* may perhaps be derived from the Sanskrit *kārī* (*kārin*); in which case the above words would be secondary formations from the substantives *pūjā*, 'worship,' and *khel*, 'play.'

5) اَن *an*, نا *nā* (fem. ني *nī*).

These affixes, which correspond to the Sanskrit affix *ana*, form *attributives*, or *instrumental nouns*: *e.g.*

بيِلن *belan*, }
 بيِلنا *belnā*, } 'a rolling pin,' *lit.* 'that which rolls.'
 بيِلني *belnī*, }
 اوڙهي *orhnī*, 'a covering,' 'a veil,' *lit.* 'that which covers.'
 جهڙهي *jhunjhunā*, }
 جهڙهي *jhunjhunī*, } 'a rattle,' *lit.* 'that which rattles.'
 دھونڪي *dhaunknī*, 'bellows,' or 'that which blows.'
 ڪٽرنِي *katarnī*, 'scissors,' or 'that which clips.'

6) تا *tā* (= S. affix *at*).

This affix is used to form imperfect participles: *e.g.*

هَنسَتا *hanstā*, 'laughing,' from هَنسَنا *hanšnā*, 'to laugh.'
 ڏيکَتا *dekhtā*, 'seeing,' from ڏيکَنا *dekhnā*, 'to see.'

اَ ā (= S. affix *ta* or *ita*).

This is used to form perfect or passive participles: *e.g.*

لِکھا *likhā*, 'written,' from لِکھنا *likh-nā*, 'to write.'

ہارا *hārā*, 'lost,' 'overcome,' from ہارنا *hār-nā*, 'to lose,' etc.

b) SECONDARY FORMATIONS.

1) یا *iyā*, or یان *iyān*.

255. The original of this affix is the Sanskrit affix *ika*, the *k* of which is elided, and *y* inserted for euphony. It is used to form *nouns of agency* and *attributives*: *e.g.*

بکھیریا *bakheriyā*, 'quarrelsome,' 'a brawler,' from بکھیرا *bakherā*, 'a dispute,' etc.

گداریا *gaḍariyā*, 'a shepherd,' from گادرا *gādar*, 'sheep.'

مکھنیا *makkhaniyā*, } 'a butterman,' from مکھن *makkhan*, 'butter.'
مکھنیاں *makkhaniyān*, }

Rem. The Sanskrit affix is preserved intact in the word کھٹک *khaṭṭik*, or کھٹیک *khaṭīk*, 'one who kills and sells game,' (but now generally applied to) 'one who rears and sells poultry.'

2) ی *ī*.

This affix, which is one of frequent occurrence, springs from at least three different sources: namely—

a) ی *ī* = S. affix *ika*,

forming *nouns of agency*, *attributives*, and *appellatives*: *e.g.*

جھولی *jholī*, 'a wallet' (S. *jhaulika*).

حلوائی *halwā'ī*, 'a confectioner,' from حلوا *halwā*, 'a sweetmeat.'

قصابی *qaṣā'ī*, 'a butcher,' (Arabic قصاب *qaṣṣāb*).

b) ی *ī* = S. affix *īya* or *iya*,

forming *nouns denoting origin*, *relationship*, etc.: *e.g.*

بہاگلپوری *bhāgalpurī*, 'of, or made at, Bhāgalpūr.'

سَمُنْدَرِي samundarī, 'pertaining to the sea' (*samundar*), 'marine.'
 پَهَارِي pahārī, 'produced in mountains' (*pahār*), 'a mountaineer.'

ع) يَ = S. affix *in*,

forming *attributives* and *possessives*: e.g.

بَرْهَنِي barha'ī, 'a carpenter' (S. *varddhakin*).
 بَهَارِي bhārī, 'having weight,' 'weighty,' 'heavy,' from بَهَار bhār, 'a weight,' 'a load.'
 بَیپَارِي baipārī, 'a merchant,' from بَیپَار baipār, 'traffic.'
 تِلِي telī, 'an oil-man,' from تِل tel, 'oil' (S. *tailika* and *tailin*).
 مَالِي mālī, 'a gardener' (S. *mālin*).

3) اَ u or اُ ā, اَو ā'ū.

These affixes correspond to the Sanskrit affix *uka*. They are added to substantives to form *attributives* and *nouns of agency*, as in the case of primary formations: e.g.

دَهَالُو dhālū, 'slant,' 'sloping,' from دَهَال dhāl, 'slope.'
 مَچھُو machhū'ā, 'a fisherman,' ,, مَچھ machh, 'fish.'
 شَرْمَاو sharmā'ū, 'bashful,' ,, شَرْم sharm, 'shame.'

4) اَ ā, S. affix *a*.

This affix forms adjectives from substantives: e.g.

پیارا pyārā, 'dear,' 'beloved,' from پیار pyār, 'affection.'
 جھوٹا jhūṭhā, 'false,' 'a liar,' ,, جھوٹ jhūṭh, 'a lie.'
 سچا sachā or sachchā, 'true,' ,, سچ sach, 'truth.'

5) اَ ā, یا yā, or اِ iyā, = S. affix *ta* or *ita*.

This affix is used primarily to form perfect participles; but it is also added to substantives to form adjectives or attributives: e.g.

بھوکھا bhūkhā, 'hungry,' from بھوکھ bhūkh, 'hunger.'

پِیاسا *piyāsā*, 'thirsty,' from پیاس *piyās*. 'thirst.'

دُکھیا *dukhiyā*, 'wretched,' 'afflicted,' from دُکھ *dukh*, 'sorrow,' 'pain.'

6) لُو *lū*, ل *l* = S. affix *lu*:

Forms adjectives or attributives from substantives: *e.g.*

جھگڑالُو *jhagrālū*, 'quarrelsome,' 'a brawler,' from جھگڑا *jhagrā*,
'quarrel.'

دِیال *dayāl*, 'compassionate,' from دِیا *dayā*, 'pity,' 'mercy.'

7) اَل *āl*, اَلَا *ālā*.

This affix, which corresponds to the Sanskrit affix *āla*, is used to form possessives: *e.g.*

بہاڻیاں *bhāṭhiyāl*, 'with, or having, the stream' (بہاڻیا *bhāṭhā*).

جوالا *jawālā*, 'grain mixed with barley as food for cattle,' *lit.* 'containing barley' (جو *jav*).

لاڻیاں *laṭhiyāl*, 'having a stick,' 'one armed with a stick' (لاڻ *laṭhī*).

In a few words the original possessive signification is lost: *e.g.*

گھڑیاں *ghariyāl*, 'a gong,' *lit.* 'containing the hour' (گھڑی *gharī*).

8) لَ *lā* = S. affix *ra*.

This affix forms adjectives from substantives: *e.g.*

اڱلا *aglā*, 'preceding,' 'former,' from آڱا *āgā*, 'the front,' etc.

پڇھلا *pichhlā*, 'hindmost,' 'latter,' from پڇھيا *pichhā*, 'hindermost,' etc.

دھندھلا *dhundhlā*, 'hazy,' 'misty,' from دھندھ *dhundh*, 'haze,' etc.

ریتلا *retlā*, 'sandy,' from ریت *ret*, 'sand.'

9) یرا *irā*, یرلا *ilā*, یرا *erā*, یرل *el* or *aīl*, یرلا *elā* or *aīlā*.

These affixes, which are of very common occurrence, correspond to

the Sanskrit affixes *irā*, *īla*, *ura* (*ula*), or *ūra*.¹ They form *attributives* and *possessives*, often signifying the possession of a quality in an intensive degree: *e.g.*

رسيلا *rasīlā*, 'juicy,' from رس *ras*, 'juice.'

شرميلا *sharmīlā*, 'bashful,' from شرم *sharm*, 'shame.'

نوكيلا *nokīlā*, 'pointed,' from نوك *nok*, 'a point.'

دانتیلا *dāntīlā*, } 'having large tusks,' 'tusked,' from دانت *dānt*,
دانتیل *dāntel*, } 'a tooth' (S. *dāntura*).

کامیرا *kamerā*, 'a worker,' 'industrious,' from کام *kām*, 'work.'

بوجھیل *bojhel*, 'loaded,' from بوجھ *bojh*, 'a load.'

دودھیل *dudhail*, 'giving milk,' 'milch,' from دودھ *dūdḥ*, 'milk.'

10) ول — *ol*, or وڑ — *or*.

The original form of this affix is probably *ula* (*ura*). It is used to form *attributives* denoting *habit* or *disposition*, and is found in a few words only; *e.g.*

تھتھول *thathol*, 'a jester,' 'a wag,' from تھتھا *thathṭhā*, 'fun.'

ھنسور *hansor*, 'facetious,' 'merry,' 'a wag,' from ھنسا *hansā*, 'laughter.'

11) سار *sār*.

The origin of this affix is the Sanskrit adjective *sāra*, which occurs at the end of compounds. It signifies 'full of,' 'pervaded with,' and is employed in both Hindī and Persian to form *possessives* or *attributives*: *e.g.*

¹ The terminations *erā*, *elā*, etc., are not always affixes; they often result from the elision of one or more letters in an original Sanskrit word, and lengthening of a short vowel on which the accent falls: *e.g.* *saṇṭerā* (i.e. *saṇṭ-hirā*), 'a snake-catcher,' from the Sanskrit *sarpa-hāra*. The word *banela* or *banailā*, 'wild,' is probably derived in a similar way; it may, however, be formed by adding the affix *elā* to the noun *ban*, 'a forest.' These remarks apply to other terminations also: for example, *āl* in the word *susrāl*, and *ālā* or *wālā* in the word *gwālā*, are not *affixes*, but the result of elision of one or more letters: *susrāl* = Sanskrit *śvaśru* + *ālaya*, 'father-in-law's house,' *gwālā* (i.e. *go'ālā*) = S. *go-pāla*, 'a cowherd,' and not *gau-wālā*, as Mr. Etherington (Hindī Grammar, p. 128) makes it out to be.

مِلَنَسَار *mīlan-sār*, 'sociable,' 'affable,' from مِلَن *mīlan*, 'mixing with.'
 شَرْمَسَار *sharm-sār*, 'bashful,' from شَرْم *sharm*, 'shame.'

12) أَشَا *āshā*, أَسَا *āsā* (= S. affix *śa*).

The signification of this affix is 'full of.' It occurs in a few adjectives, some of which are used as substantives: *e.g.*

بَتَاشَا *batāshā*, } 'a kind of sweetmeat,' 'a bubble,' *lit.* 'filled with air'
 بَتَاسَا *batāsā*, } (*bāt*).

13) أَر *ār*.

This affix is derived from the Sanskrit adjective *kāra*, signifying 'making,' 'doing,' by elision of *k*, and is added to substantives to form *nouns of agency*, or nouns denoting *trade or occupation*: *e.g.*

سَوَنَار *sonār*, 'a goldsmith,' from سَوَنَا *sonā*, 'gold.'
 لَوَهَار *lohār*, 'a blacksmith,' from لَوَهَا *lohā*, 'iron.'
 كُمَهَار *kumhār*, 'a potter,' from كُمْبَه *kumbh*, 'an earthen pot.'

14) هَارَا *hārā*, هَار *hār*.

This affix also, like the preceding, is derived from the Sanskrit *kāra*. It is added to inflected infinitives and to nouns to form *nouns of agency*, and, affixed to verbal nouns, forms *future active participles* (§ 160, 2): *e.g.*

مَرْنَه هَارَا *marne-hārā*, } 'one who is dying,' 'one about to die,' from
 مَرَن هَار *maran-hār*, } مَرْنَا *marnā*, 'to die.'
 لَكْرَهَارَا *lakaṛ-hārā*, 'a wood-cutter,' 'a wood-man,' from لَكْر *lakaṛ*,
 a contraction of لَكْرِي *lakraī*, 'wood.'

15) وَلَا *wālā*, or وَال *wāl*, or وَارَا *wārā*.

The original of this affix is the Sanskrit affix *vala*. It is most commonly employed in Hindī and Urdū to form nouns denoting *agency*, *possession*, *origin*, and numerous other relations. Added to infinitives, it often forms *future active participles*: *e.g.*

چلنے والا *chalne-wālā*, 'a goer,' 'one about to go,' from چلنا *chalnā*.

گاڑی والا *gārī-wālā*, 'a carter,' from گاڑی *gārī*, 'a cart.'

گھر والا *ghar-wālā*, 'the master or owner of a house' (*ghar*).

مکھن والا *makkhan-wālā*, 'a butter-man,' from مکھن *makkhan*, 'butter.'

دلی والا *dillī-wālā*, 'an inhabitant of Dillī' (Dehlī).

Rem. Hindī nouns ending in *ā* must be inflected before the affix is added: e.g. کپڑی والا *kapre-wālā*, 'a cloth-merchant.'

16) واری *wārī*, واڑ *wār*, or وار *wār*.

This is not so much an affix as the latter part of a compound, signifying, 'place,' 'inclosure,' 'house,' 'garden,' etc. It is derived from the Sanskrit *wāṭī*. Examples are:

پنواڑی *pan-wārī*, 'a betel-garden,' from پان *pān*, 'betel-leaf.'

پھلواڑی *phul-wārī*, 'a flower-garden,' from پھول *phul*, 'a flower.'

ستیوار *satī-wār*, 'the place where a *satī* is burnt.'

ہڑوار *har-wār*, 'a place where bones (ہار *hār*) are laid.'

III. DIMINUTIVES.

256. Diminutives are of frequent occurrence in Hindī and Urdū; in not a few cases, however, though the form is preserved, the diminutive signification is lost. In some instances, moreover, the original from which the diminutive is derived has become obsolete.

257. The idea of diminutiveness is frequently expressed by substituting the feminine termination for the masculine: e.g.

اُپلی *uplī*, 'small cakes of dried cow-dung,' from اُپلا *uplā*.

ٹوکرِی *ṭokrī*, 'a small basket,' from ٹوکر *ṭokrā*.

رَسِی *rassī*, 'a string or cord,' from رَسا *rassā*, 'a rope.'

Various affixes also are employed to form diminutives from nouns, as:

1) يا — *iyā*.

This corresponds to the Sanskrit diminutive affix *ka*, the *k* of which is elided, and the final vowel lengthened. The connecting vowel of this affix is always *i*, which takes the place of a final vowel in the base, and a long vowel in the base is shortened before the affix is added: *e.g.*

بِيتِيَا *biṭiyā*, 'daughter,' from بَيْتِي *betī*, 'daughter.'

پَهْرِيَا *phuriyā*, 'a small boil,' 'a pimple,' from پَهْرَا *phorā*, 'a boil.'

چِرِيَا *chiriyā*, 'a bird,' from چِرِي *chirī*, 'a bird.'

کِهَاتِيَا *khatiyā*, 'a small bedstead,' from کِهَات *khāt*, 'a bedstead.'
(Sanskrit *khattika*).

Rem. In the towns, and especially by Mohammadans, the connecting vowel *i* is dropped, and such words are pronounced *phuryā*, *chiryā*, etc.

2) اُو — *ū'ā* or *wā*.

This affix, like the last, is derived from the Sanskrit affix *ka*, the difference consisting in the connecting vowel, which in this case is *u* (changeable to *w*); and hence the difference of gender in words formed by means of the two affixes, those with *iyā* being *feminine*, and those with *ū'ā* *masculine*. A long vowel in the base is shortened before the affix is added: *e.g.*

بَاتُوَا *batū'ā* or *batwā*, 'a small bag' (original not in use).

بِتُوَا *biṭū'ā* or *biṭwā*, 'son,' 'dear son,' from بَيْتَا *betā*, 'son.'

مَرْدُوَا *mardū'ā*, 'a manikin,' 'a contemptible man' (*mard*).

The Sanskrit affix is preserved unchanged in a few words: *e.g.*
دَهْلَاک *dholak*, 'a small drum' (*dhol*).

3) رَا *rā* or رِي *rī*, رِي *rī*, رِي *rī*, or لِي *lī*, يَلَا — *elā*, وَلَا — *olā*.

These affixes are all derived from the Sanskrit diminutive affix *ra*, *r* and *l* being interchangeable in Hindī. In the first two no connecting

vowel is used; but in the last two the connecting vowels are *i* and *u* respectively, which are lengthened to *e* and *o* on account of the accent. A long vowel in the base is generally shortened before the affixes are added. Examples are:

تھکرا *thikrā*, 'a fragment of an earthen vessel' (original, *thīk*,
تھیکرا *thīkrā*, } obsolete).

تکڑا *tukrā*, 'a small piece,' 'a bit,' from *tūk*, 'a piece.'

پلنگڑی *palangrī*, 'a small bedstead,' from *palang*, 'a bedstead.'

ٹنگڑی *taṅgrī*, } 'a leg,' from ٹانگ *tāṅg*, 'leg.'
ٹنگری *taṅgrī*, }

کھجلی *khujlī* (for *khajulī*), 'itch,' from کھاج *khāj*, 'itch.'

گھنٹالی *ghaṇṭālī*, 'a small bell,' from *ghaṇṭā*, 'a bell.'

مُریلا *murelā*, 'a pea-chick,' 'a pea-fowl,' from مور *mor*, 'a peacock.'

بگھیلا *baghelā*, 'a tiger's cub,' 'a young tiger,' from باگھ *bāgh*, 'a tiger.'

کھٹولا *khaṭolā*, 'a small, or rickety, bedstead' (*khāṭ*).

گڑولا *garolā* (for *garholā*), 'a small, or dilapidated, fort,' 'a place with such a fort,' from گڑھ *garḥ*, 'a fort.'

گھڑولا *gharolā*, 'a small earthen pot' (*gharā*).

Rem. Some grammarians mention *eṭā*, and *oṭā*, as diminutive affixes, but these are simply contractions of the words *beṭā*, 'son,' and *poṭā* (from *pūt*) 'son,' 'young:' e.g. *brahman-eṭā* = *brahman-beṭā*, 'a brahman's son,' 'a young brahman;' *hiran-oṭā* = *hiran-poṭā*, 'a young deer,' 'a fawn.'

IV. COMPOUNDS.

a) NOUNS WITH A PARTICLE PREFIXED.

1) Negative Prefixes : ا *a*, آن *an*, نا *nā*, نیر *nir*, نی *ni*.

258. The prefix *a* is used with adjectives, *an* chiefly with participles and gerunds, *nā* with adjectives or abstract nouns derived from adjectives. Examples are:

اچل <i>a-chaḷ</i> , 'immovable.'	اٲیا <i>a-thā</i> , 'unfordable.'
اچیت <i>a-chaṭ</i> , 'thoughtless.'	الگ <i>a-lag</i> , 'apart,' 'separate.'
انٲڑھا <i>an-parhā</i> , 'unread,' 'illiterate.'	انڊیکھا <i>an-dekhā</i> , 'unseen.'
انجانا <i>an-jāna</i> , 'unknowing,' 'ignorant.'	انسنا <i>an-sunā</i> , 'unheard.'
ناکارا <i>nā-kārā</i> , 'useless.'	ناسمجھ <i>nā-samajh</i> , 'unintelligent.'
نیراس <i>nir-ās</i> , 'hopeless.'	نڊھڑک <i>ni-dharak</i> , 'unhesitatingly.'
نڊر <i>ni-ḍar</i> , 'fearless.'	نکما <i>ni-kammā</i> , 'useless,' 'good for nothing.'

Rem. These particles are all of Sanskrit origin, and have the same signification as in Sanskrit, but a slight difference is observable in the use of the particle *an*, it being prefixed in Hindī to nouns beginning with either a vowel or a consonant. For other particles, such as *dur* or *dush*, etc., which rarely occur in Urdū, and in Hindī only in words borrowed directly from the Sanskrit, we must refer the student to the Dictionary.

2) Qualificative Particles: س *su*, 'well,' ک *ku*, 'ill,' 'badly:' *e.g.*

سڊول <i>su-ḍaul</i> , 'well-shaped.'	کڊھب <i>ku-ḍhab</i> , 'ill-shaped.'
سچیت <i>su-chaṭ</i> , 'attentive.'	کڊھنگ <i>ku-ḍhang</i> , 'ill-mannered.'

3) Possessive Particle: س *sa*, 'with,' 'having.' (= S. *saha*).

Examples of this affix are not numerous in Urdū; the following are a few :

سويرا <i>sa-werā</i> , 'morning,' 'dawn' (= S. <i>sa</i> + <i>vela</i> , 'time').
ساڑھ <i>sāṛhe</i> , 'with a half' (= S. <i>sa</i> + <i>arddha</i> , 'half').
سچیت <i>sa-chaṭ</i> , 'with caution,' 'mindful,' 'cautious.'

259. Compound nouns, though not nearly so numerous as in Sanskrit and Persian, are by no means few in number; but in no instance is a compound formed of more than two nouns. They may be classed under five

heads : Collective (corresponding to the Sanskrit *Dvandva*), Dependent Determinative (the Sanskrit *Tatpurusha*), Appositional Determinative (the Sanskrit *Karmadhāraya*), Numeral Determinative (the *Dvigu* of the Sanskrit), Attributive, or Possessive (corresponding to the *Bahuvrihi* of the Sanskrit).

1) COLLECTIVE COMPOUNDS.

These consist of two words that would naturally be connected by a conjunction : *e.g.*

بہلا چنگا *bhalā-chaṅgā*, 'hale and hearty.'

دین رات *din-rāt*, 'day and night.'

کمّتی بڑھتی *kamtī-barhṭī*, 'deficiency and excess,' 'more or less.'

کھا کھی *kaḥā-kaḥī*, 'altercation.'

ما باپ *mā-bāp*, 'father and mother,' 'parents.'

In many instances the conjunction is expressed : *e.g.*

آب و ہوا *āb-o-hawā*, 'climate.'

رات و دین *rāt-o-din*, 'night and day.'

رات و رات *rāt-o-rāt*, 'in the middle of the night,' 'all night long.'

And in some cases the place of the copulative conjunction is supplied by the Persian conjunctive particle *ā* : *e.g.*

بیچا بیچا *bīch-ā-bīch*, 'in the very middle.'

جہڑا جہڑا *jhaṛ-ā-jhaṛ*, 'heavily' (raining).

Under this head may also be classed the compounds in which one of the words is a meaningless one, used merely to rhyme or jingle with the other : as

ادلا بدلا *adlā-badlā*, 'exchange,' 'alteration.'

اڑوس پڑوس *aṛos-paros*, 'neighbourhood.'

اُلٹ پُلٹ *ulaṭ-pulaṭ*, 'higgledy-piggledy,' 'topsy-turvy.'

بہڑ بہڑ *bhīr-bhār*, 'crowd,' 'bustle.'

2) DEPENDENT DETERMINATIVE COMPOUNDS.

This class comprises compounds in which the last word governs the first, which is therefore always in the Formative. Such compounds are of frequent occurrence: *e.g.*

انٹا گھر *anṭā-ghar*, 'a billiard room.'

آنکھ مچولی *ānkh-michaulī*, 'blindman's buff,' *lit.* 'covering the eyes.'

انگ رکھا *angarkhā* (i.e. *ang-rakhā*), 'a coat,' *lit.* 'body-protector.'

باگدور *bāg-dor*, 'a long rope by which horses are led,' *lit.* 'bridle-rope.'

بھڑ بھونجا *bhar-bhūnjā*, 'a parcher of grain,' *lit.* 'one who parches (grain) in an oven' (*bhaṭ*).

تل چٹا *til-chatṭā*, 'a cockroach,' *lit.* 'oil (*tel*)-licker.'

دیس نکالا *des-nikālā*, 'banishment.'

پنچگی *pan-chakkī*, 'a water-mill.'

ریل گاڑی *rel-gārī*, 'a railway carriage.'

بھوجپور *bhoj-pūr*, 'name of a town,' *lit.* 'the city of Bhoj.'

لکھپتی *lakḥ-patī*, 'rich,' 'a millionaire,' *lit.* 'owner of a *lac*.'

3) APPositionAL DETERMINATIVE COMPOUNDS.

In these compounds the first word stands as the predicate of the second: *e.g.*

بھل مَنَسائی *bhal-mansā'ī*, 'humanity,' 'benignity.'

چور بالو *chor-bālū*, 'a quicksand.'

راتالو *rat-ālū*, 'a yam,' *lit.* 'a red (or purple) root.'

ماجھدھار *mājḥ-dhār*, 'midstream.'

مہاجن *mahājan*, 'a banker,' *lit.* 'a great man.'

مہاراج *mahā-rāj*, 'majesty,' 'excellency,' *lit.* 'great king.'

4) NUMERAL DETERMINATIVE COMPOUNDS.

In these the first word is a numeral, which stands as a predicate of the following noun: *e.g.*

دوپہر *do-paḥar*, 'midday,' 'noon.'

دُپٹا *du-paṭṭā*, 'a kind of veil,' *lit.* 'two breadths.'

پچھل *pach-maḥall*, 'five stories.'

چار آنکھیں *chār-āṅkhen*, 'the eyes of two people meeting,' *lit.* 'four eyes.'

چوماسا *chau-māsā*, 'the rainy season,' *lit.* 'four months.'

چوراہا *chaurāhā*, 'a cross road,' 'a place where four roads meet.'

5) ATTRIBUTIVE OR POSSESSIVE COMPOUNDS.

These always stand as predicate to a subject. The various determinative compounds may be used as possessives by changing them into adjectives. Examples are :

ادھموا *adh-mū'ā*, 'half-dead.'

بارہ سینگا *bāra-singā*, 'a stag,' 'twelve-tined.'

پچھلا *pach-maḥallā*, 'five-storied.'

ٹوپي پٹا *topī-phaṭā*, 'having a torn cap.'

دونالِي *do-nālī*, 'double-barrelled.'

Possessives may also be formed from such compounds as have a particle for the first member : *e.g.*

سا لونا *sa-launā*, 'salted,' 'seasoned,' 'beautiful,' 'piquant.'

کڈھنگا *ku-dhangā*, 'unmannerly,' 'rude.'

PART III.—SYNTAX

CHAPTER VI.

I. OF THE PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

260. Every sentence (جمله *a sum or total of words*) consists necessarily of two principal parts, *the subject*, or that of which something is asserted, and *the predicate*, or that which is asserted of the subject.

261. The subject of a sentence is either a *noun* (substantive, or adjective used as a substantive, pronoun, or infinitive), or a *pronoun implied in the verb*; the predicate is either a verb alone, or a verb with an adjective or substantive annexed as a predicative noun, by which the subject is defined and described: *e.g.*

PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.
کاتتا ہے <i>kāttā hai</i> ,	کُتا <i>kuttā</i> , 'the dog bites.'
جاؤنگا <i>jā'ūngā</i> ,	میں <i>main</i> , 'I will go.'
مریو <i>mariyo</i>,	..... 'die!' or 'may you die.'
حاضر ہے <i>hāzīr hai</i> ,	بیمار <i>bīmār</i> , 'the sick man is present.'
بُرا ہے <i>burā hai</i> ,	ہنسنا <i>haṁsnā</i> , 'laughing is bad.'
بیمار تھا <i>bīmār thā</i> ,	وہ <i>wōh</i> , 'he was sick.'

Rem. Urdū grammarians call the predicate of a sentence the مُسند *that which leans upon (the subject)*, or *the attribute*; and the subject, the مُسندِ اِلَیْہ *that upon which (the predicate) leans, or that to which something is attributed.*

262. The verbs which are generally used in connection with a predicative noun subjoined, are *ہوں*, *ہے*, etc., and *تھا*, etc., *ہونا* or *جانا* 'to be,' or 'become,' and others which add some modifying idea (as *duration*, *continuity*, *permanence*, etc.) to the simple one of existence: *e.g.* *نکلنا* 'to come out,' 'turn out to be;' *نظر آنا* 'to appear,' 'seem' (to be); *رہنا* 'to continue or remain;' *بیٹھنا* 'to sit down,' 'to be fixed or settled;' *تھہرنا* 'to stay,' 'stand,' 'last,' and such like; as also the passives of verbs which signify to *name*, *make*, *call*, *hold* for anything, etc. (§§ 349, 351), to which the words which denote what a thing is named, what it is made, and for what it is held, are subjoined without any further addition: *e.g.*

وہ بھپی برہمن ہو گیا 'even he became an idolater.'

تُو دوست کبھی کا نہ ہوا تھا 'you did not become any one's friend.'

آخر وہی سوچنا میرا صحیح نکلا 'eventually that same thought of mine proved correct.'

زندگی دشوار نظر آتی ہے 'living appears difficult.'

وہ دوپہر بجے تک حاضر رہا 'he was (remained) present till twelve o'clock.'

میرا منصوبہ ٹھیک بیٹھا 'my surmise proved correct.'

جس سے ہمارا کام عداوت کرنا 'whereby our business proves to be bearing enmity.'

گاڑی کپڑی کی گئی 'the carriage was made stationary.'

نام اُسکا کلاو رکھا گیا 'he was named Kallu.'

وہ ایک ایسی زبان نہیں سمجھی گئی 'it was not considered (held to be) such a language.'

263. Instead of being joined to a predicative noun in the nominative, the verbs *ہے*, *تھا*, etc., may be combined with some other expression which serves to describe or

define them; as with a genitive, وَهُ بَرِّي قِيَمَتِ كَا هِي 'it is of great price;' or with a locative case, كَلَامِ چَار طَرَحِ كَا هِي 'discourse is of four kinds;' or with a postposition and the noun it governs, زَيْدِ كے پاس اِيك چِيَمِٹَا هِي 'there is a leopard in Zaid's possession;' or with an adverb of place, to denote the place or relation in which a thing is, وَهُ يِهَاں هِي 'he is here,' شَہَرِ قَرِيبِ تہَا 'the city was near;' or with an adverbial phrase which denotes *way* or *manner*, *state* or *condition*, جو بَانَبِہِي كے اَنَدَر سے سِر نِکَالے تہے 'which were with their heads out of (their) holes.'¹ The following are used impersonally: خَيْرِہِي 'it is well,' اَيَسَا دُوا 'it happened thus.'

264. The same verbs, as also ہونا and the other verbs above cited, may also be used as *self-subsistent* (or *attributive*) verbs: as—

اُورُوں پَر ہِي وَ ظَلَمِ جو مُجھ پَر
نہُوا تہَا 'on others has fallen (exists) the
tyranny which did not fall on me.'
شَکِيبِ کِي جب تِلکِ تہِي
طاقتِ 'as long as the power of endurance
existed.'

نَاصِحِ کو سَوَدَا ہُوا 'madness has happened to Nāsih.'

Rem. A sentence of which the predicate is a self-subsistent verb is called by Urdū grammarians a *verbal sentence* (جُمْلَہٴ فِعْلِیَّہ), the subject of which they term فاعِل, *the agent*, and the predicate, فِعْل, *the action* or *verb*; whereas a sentence whose predicate consists of a

¹ Mr. Dowson (*Urdū Grammar*, page 113) finds fault with this sentence because it is not constructed thus: *jīn-ne bān̄bhī-ke andar-se sir nikāle the*. The sentence is, however, quite correct. The mistake is Mr. Dowson's in supposing that the verb *the* is here used as an auxiliary. The phrase *bān̄bhī-ke andar-se sir-nikāle (hū'e)* is the adverbial complement of the verb *the*, and shows the *state* or *condition* (*hāi*) of the subject. Numerous examples of the same construction are to be found in the *Khirād Afroz*, as also in more modern works.

non-attributive verb (فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ an incomplete or defective verb), is called a *nominal sentence* (جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ), and its subject is termed مُبْتَدَأٌ, the *inchoative*, its predicate, خَبَرٌ the *enuntiative* or *announcement*. An affirmative sentence is called جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ خَبَرِيَّةٌ or جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ خَبَرِيَّةٌ according as it is a *verbal* or a *nominal* sentence; an imperative or interrogative sentence is called جُمْلَةٌ اِنْشَائِيَّةٌ, a sentence expressing a *command* or *wish*.

265. The predicate may be more accurately defined by adverbs and by substantives (or words used substantively) in certain cases (and by postpositions with their nouns) which denote the *object* of the action asserted, and the circumstances attending it: as—

رَعِيَّتْ كِي دَادِ رِنِي مِيں خُوب (he) used to apply his mind intently
دِل لگاتا to dispensing justice to his subjects.'

266. A substantive may be connected in a certain relation with another substantive, in order to define it more accurately: *e.g.* خَاکِ کا قَالِب 'an earth-mould.' Substantives may also be defined or characterized more closely by adding to them other substantives descriptive of the same person or thing: as—

طَائِروں کا بادشاہ شاہ مُرَغ 'the king of the birds, Shāh-murg.'
حکیم بیدپائے برہمن 'the sage, Bedpā'e, the Brāhman.'

The subjoining of these is called *apposition*, and that which is subjoined, the *appositive* (تابع 'the follower').

Every substantive may also be defined by having an adjective (participle, or genitive) added to it: an adjective which is immediately connected with the substantive is called *attributive* (جُلْتِي آگ 'a good man,' اچھا آدمي), to distinguish it from 'burning fire,' میري کتاب 'my book'),

that which is used as a predicative noun with a non-attributive verb: as كِتَابٌ اَچْهِي هَي 'the book is good.'

267. If a *determined* noun (اِسْمٌ مَعْرِفٍ—i.e. a proper name, a personal, demonstrative, or relative pronoun, or a noun governing the genitive of any of these) and an *undetermined* noun (اِسْمٌ نَكِرَه) are placed in juxtaposition, a non-attributive verb following, the mere fact of the former being determined and the latter undetermined shows that the latter is the predicate: *e.g.* 'مُوْهَنْ اَحْمَقُ هِيَ' 'Mohan is a fool,' 'مِيْرَا بِيْمَارْ هِيَ' 'my brother is sick.' But if the two nouns in juxtaposition are both determined, or both undetermined, either may be subject or predicate: *e.g.* 'يِهْ تُمْهَارِي كِتَابْ هِيَ' 'this is your book,' or 'your book is this;' 'آدَمْيِ اِنْسَانْ هِيَ' 'man is a human being,' or 'a human being is man.'

268. The predicate verb هَي (or the verb and predicative noun) is sometimes omitted, especially in poetry, and in brief proverbial sentences: *e.g.*

no one either has any concern with the benefiting, or anything to do with the injuring, of another.’

(ہماری بلا کے ساتھ کسی ہماری بلا سے علاقہ ہی =) ہماری بلا سے

‘it rests with (concerns) my evil destiny.’

269. The predicate is also omitted in sentences which contain an imprecation; as—

‘may sorrow befall thee’ (*lit.* ‘dust on thy head’).

In such sentences the predicate is generally the Aorist of the verb **بَعَثَ** 'to befall,' 'to alight on.'

II. OF THE ORDER OF THE WORDS IN A SIMPLE SENTENCE.

270. The most simple arrangement of the words is this, that the subject, with its adjuncts, stands first, and the predicate follows in such a way that the verb usually stands last, in order to combine the whole proposition (کلام تام), while the object and the object of relation, or the predicative noun, with the other definitions of the verb (the ablative or locative case, postpositions with their nouns, adverbs), are placed in the middle, the object generally preceding: *e.g.*

زید کا بیٹا بڑا عالم ہے 'Zaid's brother is very learned.'
 وہ گھر کے اندر بے خبر سوتا تھا 'he was sleeping soundly in the house.'
 ایک ایک فقرہ ہزار مطلب کو حاوی ہے 'each single sentence involves a thousand meanings.'
 خیانت اور چوری کی بُرائی دِل پر ایسی ثابت کی ' (I) so convinced my mind of the evil of perfidy and dishonesty.'
 بیٹائی برادروں کا خوف اُنکو تلاش اور تحقیق سے مانع ہے 'the fear of their brethren prevents them from seeking and ascertaining the truth.'

But if the object be so closely connected with the verb as to form with it a so-called nominal compound, or if the other words used to define the predicate are considered of greater importance, or are first thought of, the object is placed nearest the verb: as—

وہ رعیت کی داد رسی میں خوب دِل لگاتا 'he used to apply his mind intently to dispensing justice to his subjects.'
 ہمارا علم سب کاموں سے ہمکو مانع ہے 'our knowledge hinders us from (progress in) all affairs.'

271. If the verb has two objective complements expressed, one direct and the other indirect (§ 348), the latter generally precedes the former; but if the latter be the antecedent of a following relative, or in any way closely connected with what follows, or any stress be laid on the direct object, this is placed first: as—

مَوْضُوعِ عِلْمِ کَا اُسے کہتے ہیں ‘that thing which is treated of in a
جس چیز کا حال اُس عِلْمِ science is termed (*lit.* they term)
میں بیان کیا جاوی the subject-matter of that science.’
وہ تہمیلے اُسکو دکھلائی ‘I showed him that bag.’

272. The simple arrangement of the words may however be so far departed from that the object may lead off the sentence, and this not only for the sake of emphasis, as is generally supposed, but even where no emphasis is desired: as کَلُّو کو موہن مارتا ہے ‘Mohan is beating Kallū.’ This is especially the case if the predicative noun be in the locative, or if a noun in the dative or other case be used with one of the verbs ہوا, تھا, etc., to denote possession (§ 340): as—

گھر میں کوئی آدمی ہے ‘is there any one in the house?’
نَاصِح کو سَوْدَا ہوا ‘madness has happened to (possessed) Nāṣiḥ.’
زید کے پاس ایک چیتا ہے ‘there is a leopard in Zaid’s possession.’

The following are examples of a predicative noun, or an object being placed first for the sake of emphasis:

اَحْمَقُ ہے زید ‘Zaid is a fool.’
اُن کِتابوں کو تُو کہاں لے گیا ہے ‘where have you taken those books to?’
جو تُو کہیگا وہی کرونگا ‘whatever you say, that same (I) will do.’

The relative pronoun however, as objective complement, usually precedes the subject.

Rem. The object may even take the last place in a sentence if that be the most strikingly emphatic, or if it be desired to contrast it (or make it rhyme) with another object in a co-ordinate sentence: *e.g.* جاہل طلب کرتا ہے مال کو اور عاقل کمال کو 'A fool seeks wealth, and a wise man perfection.' This construction, however, is generally regarded as irregular and feeble, and should not be imitated.

273. The arrangement of the words in an interrogative sentence is not generally different from that in an affirmative sentence: as گھر میں کون ہے 'who is in the house?' یہ کیا بات ہے 'where is my book?' میری کتاب کہاں ہے 'what matter is this?' The interrogative particle کیا is often placed at the beginning of an interrogative sentence, as کیا توپ دگ گئی 'what! has the gun fired?' or simply, 'has the gun fired?' But it is more commonly omitted (unless used simply to express *surprise*, *reproof*, etc.), and then, in the absence of an interrogative, the context alone must decide whether the sentence is interrogative or not. In conversation, the tone of the voice is always a certain indication.

Rem. The poetical arrangement of words is distinguished from that followed in prose by a much greater freedom, and also by the circumstance that it is regulated not only by the sense and emphasis, but often by the necessity of the verse. The freedom is shown in the circumstance, that words which are connected together in meaning, and in prose would stand together, are often separated, and words which in prose have a definite place assigned to them, are transposed to another part of the sentence. The following are examples:

‘هُوَ جب کُفر ثابت ھی’ when unbelief (what constitutes unbelief) has
 وَہ تمغائے مُسلمانِی been proved (impressed on the mind,
 realized), it is a sign of true belief (Saudā).’
 ‘شکِیب کی جب تلک’ as long as the power of endurance existed,
 تِبی طاقتِ نہاہ کا جب as long as the force of restraint lasted
 تلک تبہ یارا (Mūmin Khān).’

274. A *Substantive* or *Adjective in Apposition* (تابع *the follower*, or *appositive*) follows the noun to which it refers (the متبوع, *that which is followed*), and is put in the same number and case, the two nouns being treated as a compound phrase, and the governing postposition (if the nouns be in an oblique case) placed after the last alone : as—

‘لڑکے سب آئے ھیں’ the boys are all come.’
 ‘کَلُّو تیرا بھائی باہر کھڑا ھی’ Kallū, your brother, is standing outside.’
 ‘ہماری آقا سِنْدَبَاد نے’ by my (*lit.* our) master Sindbād.’
 ‘اُسنے موھن کے بیٹائی کَلُّو کو مارا’ he beat Mohan’s brother, Kallū.’
 ‘حکیم بیدپائے برھمن کی’ the counsel of the sage Bedpā’e, the
 نصیحت Brāhman.’
 ‘طائروں کے بادشاہ شاہ مُرغ کے’ having gone to the bird-king, Shāh-
 پاس جاکر murg.’

275. Similarly if two or more nouns are connected by asyndeton, or by an expressed conjunction, they are regarded as in apposition, and the postposition governing them in an oblique case is placed after the last alone : as—

‘اُسکی بُرائی بھلائی میں’ between the evil and the good of it.’
 ‘خِیانت اور چوری کی بُرائی’ the evil of perfidy and dishonesty.’
 ‘رعایا کے خاص و عام کو’ to (both) high and low of (your) subjects.’

276. If the nouns so connected be in an oblique case of the plural, the last alone is commonly (but not invariably) put in the Formative plural, the others taking the form of the Formative singular: as—

چھوٹے بڑوں نے خوشیاں کیں ‘by the small and the great rejoicings were made.’

پہاڑوں کے غار اور ویرانوں میں ‘in mountain caves and desolate places.’

Rem. Urdū grammarians, it may be observed, recognize six kinds of appositives (توابع): 1) تَاكِيدُ the *strengthening* or *corroboration*, which is of two kinds; a) تَاكِيدِ مَعْنَوِي the *corroboration in meaning*, and b) تَاكِيدِ لَفْظِي the *verbal corroboration*, which consists in the emphatic repetition of the word itself, whether that word be a noun, verb, or particle. Examples of the first are: زید خود آیا, or زید آپ آیا ‘Zaid himself came,’ لڑکے سب آئے ہیں ‘the boys are all come,’ کتاب کو بجنسہ آپ کے پاس بھیجتا ہوں ‘I will (immediately) send the book itself to you.’ The appositive in this case may be any word that strengthens the idea of totality or of self already contained in the مَتَّبِع or noun that is followed. Examples of the second kind are: زید آیا زید ‘Zaid is come, Zaid;’ جو جو باتیں ‘whatever words;’ ایک ایک فقرہ ‘each single sentence;’ مارا مارا زید نے ‘Zaid beat (him), beat (him);’ ہاں ہاں میں نے کیا ‘Yes! Yes! I did (it).’—2) نَعْتُ the *description*, or the *qualification*. This may refer to the *matbū* either directly, in which case it is a simple adjective, or indirectly, in which case it is an adjective sentence (a qualificative or relative clause), as وہ کتاب جسکا ‘the book, the leaf of which is torn.’—3) بَدَلُ the *substitution*, or *permutative*, which is of four kinds; a) بَدَلِ کُلُ the *substitution of the whole* (for the whole); as کٹوتیرا بیائی میری ہاں آیا تھا ‘Kallū, your brother, came to my place;’ b) بَدَلِ بَعْضُ the *substitution of the part* (for the whole), as یہ کتاب میں نے اُسکا ورق پھاڑ ڈالا ‘this

book—I tore a leaf of it;’ c) بدلِ اِشْتِمَالِ *the comprehensive substitution*, as یہ کتاب اُسکا جُزدان اچھا ہے ‘this book, its wrapper is good;’ d) بدلِ غلطِ *the permutative of error*, as گھر کو مدرسہ کو چلنا چاہیئے ‘we ought to go home, (I mean to say), to school.’ The last three kinds of permutatives are common in colloquial speech, and the second and third in poetry also.—4) عطفِ بیان *the explanatory apposition*, which consists in the connection of a substantive with another which it more closely defines, as سِرَاجُ الدِّینِ بہادر شاہ ‘Sirāju’ddīn (alias, or better known as) Bahādur Shāh.’—5) عطفِ بحرفِ *apposition by means of a conjunction*, as کَلُو اور موہن ‘Kallū and Mohan.’—6) تابعِ مہمل *the meaningless apposition*, as دانا دُنکا ‘bread,’ روٹی روٹی ‘grain.’

277. A *Genitive* may either precede or follow the substantive by which it is governed: as—

اَصْل و نَفْع اُسکا ‘the principal and the profit thereof.’

اخبارِ کي کيفيت ‘the character of the newspaper.’

But if emphasis or contrast is desired, the genitive is usually placed before the governing noun; as وہ ميری کتاب ‘that is *my* book.’

278. When the governing noun is preceded by an attributive, the genitive may either follow the governing noun or precede the attributive: as—

ظاہری عبارت اُسکی ‘its apparent wording or tenour.’

موہن کا چھوٹا بھائی ‘Mohan’s younger brother.’

279. The genitive may even be separated from its governing noun by other words, as adverbs, interrogative pronouns, etc., so long as they do not make the construction ambiguous or obscure: as—

مَیں تیرا کیونکر اعتبار کروں 'how can I believe you?'

تیرا کیا نام ہے 'what is your name?'

تیری اُسَمیں کیا مرضی ہے 'what is your pleasure respecting it?'

اُسکی کپوڑی کا اِس میدان کے درندوں کے پانی پینے کا پیالہ
 بناتا cup for the wild beasts of this desert
 to drink water out of.'

280. *Adjectives*.—The usual position for an attributive adjective is immediately before its substantive; as ذہین 'an intelligent lad;' اچھا آدمی 'a good man.' But if the adjective in any way *particularizes* the substantive, it usually follows, especially if other descriptive phrases accompany it: as—

چائول اچھا لانا 'bring good rice.'

دست آویز پکی لکھوالو 'have a sound acknowledgment (of the transfer) written.'

اُس گُوجے میں ایک حویلی
 بڑی سی ہے lane.' 'there is a very large house in that lane.'

ایک شی صاف اور چکنی گنبد
 کی طرح گول ہے and smooth, round like a cupola.'

ایک حبشی جوان خوبصورت
 ایک پیمٹا طرحدار سجے
 ہوئے باہر نکل آیا an Abyssinian, young, handsome,
 with an elegant head-dress nicely
 arranged, came out.'

281. Similarly the demonstrative pronoun, which usually precedes the substantive, may, for the sake of emphasis, follow it: as طیب وہ اچھا ہے جو 'He is a good physician, who,' etc. (*lit.* 'that physician is good,' etc.)

282. Great emphasis may be given to an adjective by

separating it from its substantive, and placing it at the end of the sentence, so as to let it produce a more independent impression: as—

ایک پہاڑ کا درہ تھا۔ نہایت عمیق 'there was a *very deep* mountain gorge.'

283. *Adverbs*.—An adverb which belongs to an adjective or another adverb almost invariably stands before it: as 'a very deep gorge.' So also an adverb which belongs to a verb usually stands immediately before it: as 'اُنسے ہنسی خوشی کھیلا گودا کرتی' (she) used to romp and play with them right merrily.' But it may be placed, for the sake of emphasis, at the beginning of the sentence, or inserted without emphasis between the more prominent words. If however a whole clause is qualified, it is placed at the beginning: *e.g.*

اور چونکہ پہلے کبھی اُس کا گذر
وہاں نہوا تھا 'and inasmuch as his path had never
lain that way before.'

ناگہاں ایک جزیرہ سرسبز اور
بہت خوبصورت نظر آیا 'suddenly a verdant and very beautiful
island came in sight.'

284. The negative particle, like other adverbs, usually precedes the verb; but if the tense be a compound one, it may also stand between the auxiliary and the participle: as—

میں یہ نہ جانتا تھا 'I was not aware of this.'

کوئی سرکاری قانون کو سمجھتا نہ
تھا 'no one used to understand the Govern-
ment regulations,' or *lit.* 'any one
did not understand,' etc.

The negative is never used *adjectively*, but is always an adverb qualifying the verb in a sentence.

285. *Conjunctions*, as connecting and showing the relation between sentences, naturally precede the members they serve to introduce: as—

‘but still the capacity of manifesting
 (itself) existed in it.’
 مگر اُس میں ظہور کی قابلیت
 تھی
 ‘but this also is the opinion of certain
 sages.’
 لیکن بعض عقلا کی یہ بیہ رائے
 ہے

III. CONCORD OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

286. The verb of the predicate agrees with the subject in number, person, and gender, unless it be of the form in which personal terminations are found, viz.: the Imperative, the Aorist, and the fragmentary verb ہوں، ہے، etc.; these admit of no change of form to indicate *gender*: e.g. لڑکی جائیگی ‘the girl will go;’ میرا باپ جائیگا ‘my father will go;’ ہم پڑھیں گے ‘we (masc.) will read;’ ہم پڑھیں گی ‘we (fem.) will read;’ میں ہوں ‘it is I’ (masc. or fem.); ہم ہیں ‘It is we’ (masc. or fem.).

Rem. a. Not only are the personal pronouns as subjects often omitted, but a substantive as subject is also occasionally understood: e.g. نہایت فراغت سے گزرنے لگی ‘life passed in great comfort,’ where زندگی or some similar word is understood.

Rem. b. When a superior addresses an inferior, he frequently speaks of himself in the first person plural: e.g. ہم آئیں گے ‘it is I;’ ‘I will come.’ Similarly another is commonly addressed in the second person plural, as in English; e.g. تم کون ہو ‘who are you?’

287. The predicative participle or adjective (if this admit of a feminine being formed from it) is regulated by the subject in gender, number and case; and similarly

every adjective (or genitive), whenever possible, agrees with the substantive with which it is connected : as---

شادزادہ روش پر کھڑا ہوا 'the prince stood (became stationary)
on the walk.'

سب مکھیماں اُسکی اطاعت کرتی ہیں 'all the bees yield him obedience.'

یہ مصیبتیں قسمت میں لکھی تھیں 'these misfortunes were written in (my)
destiny.'

وہ لباس بے مِیلا کُچھلا ہو جاتا 'that dress too used to become dirty
and tattered.'

جان ہر حال میں پیاری ہوتی ہے 'life is dear to one under all circum-
stances.'

جب خواہش اُسکی پوری ہوئی 'when his desire was (became) satisfied.'
تُم دہلی کے رہنے والے ہو 'you are (= thou art) an inhabitant of
Dehli.'

سب آدمی ایک سے نہیں ہوتے 'all men are not alike.'

Rem. a. When the subject is a noun (pronoun) which has the same form for the singular and plural (as in the last of the above examples), the predicate is a guide to the number of the subject.

Rem. b. Perfect concord in number of the feminine participles in the above examples would require the forms لکھیں، کرتیں، but such forms are now obsolete. (§ 169, *Rem.*)

288. A plural predicate is often connected with a personal subject in the singular, as a mark of respect or politeness : as—

مہاراج سنکر بہت خوش ہوئے 'His Majesty was (became) much
pleased on hearing (it).'

حضور بجا فرماتے ہیں 'your Honour's observation is to the
point' (*lit.* 'your Honour observes justly').

Rem. The third person plural is sometimes used without a defined subject to denote a common saying, or the general use of a term, or a general opinion: as کہتے ہیں 'they say or call.' But the noun of Agency of the same verbs may be employed as subject: *e.g.* کہنے والے 'the tellers relate.'

289. Some Arabic plurals (*broken* and *regular*), as احوال 'circumstances,' اسباب 'property,' 'articles,' تحقیقات 'investigation,' واردات 'a casualty,' and perhaps a few more, are commonly regarded as singular collectives, and connected with a singular predicate;¹ others, as اولیا 'saints,' اکابر 'great men,' مشائخ 'elders,' and one or two more, are used both in the singular and plural; in the use of these

¹ Misled by the repeated use in the *Bāg o bahār* of certain Arabic broken plurals with singular verbs, the European grammarians appear to think that all, or nearly all such plurals may be constructed with a singular predicate, or have a singular adjective connected with them. But so far is this from being the case that very few (perhaps not more than six or eight) of these plurals are used as singular collective nouns. In

the *Bāg o bahār* we find جَوَہرِ جُڑوایا - جَوَہرِ خَریدہ and other instances of broken plurals treated as singular collectives which scholars of the present day by no means approve. The following remarks on the above constructions by a scholar of distinction, M. Shaikh 'Abdullāh of Cawnpore, will show what opinion native scholars hold respecting them: جُوئیکہ جَوَہرِ جَمْعِ ہِی جُڑوایا فَعْلِ مُفْرَدِ لانا صَحیح نہیں ہِی - صَحیح جُڑوائے ہِی - مگر بَعْضِ الفاظِ جَمْعِ کو اُردو میں مُفْرَدِ بَیّی مُسْتَعْمَلِ کُرتے ہِیں - جِیسے لُفْظِ اُولِیا اور مَشائِخ - شاید نواحِ دِہلی میں جَوَہرِ کو بَیّی مُفْرَدِ بولتے ہوں - مگر اِس طرف مُفْرَدِ مُسْتَعْمَلِ نہیں ہوتا - نہ کِسی دِہلی والے سے سنا نہ کِسی کے کلام میں دیکھا - میرِ حسن کی مثنوی میں ایک جگہ جَوَہرِ جُڑا آیا ہِی *

Did space permit, we could here add the opinions of distinguished Dehli scholars also. It is to be hoped, however, that the above will suffice to show that the *Bāg o bahār* cannot be safely taken as a perfect representative of the Urdū of the present day.

plural forms the student must be guided by the practice of the best modern writers. Examples are :

جتنّا اسباب اُس مکان میں تھا 'as much property as there was in the house.'

میرا یہ احوال ہے 'this is my case' (these are my circumstances).

میں رئیس اور اکابر اس شہر کا ہوں 'I am a chief and a great personage of this city.'

تحقیقات ہو رہی ہے 'investigation is taking place.'

ایک واردات ہوئی ہے 'a casualty has occurred.'

Rem. اسباب is also constructed as a plural, especially when it signifies *causes* or *means*: e.g. اس ترقی کے اسباب کیا ہیں 'what are the causes of this progress?'

290. If two or more subjects of different persons have a common predicate, the subjects are arranged in the order of the persons, beginning with the first, and the predicate is put in the *first person plural* if one of the subjects is of this person, and in the *second person plural* if the subjects are of the second and third persons: e.g.

ہم تم دوڑیں 'let me and you run' (lit. us and you).

میں اور وہ دوسرا میرا ساتھی وہاں سے بھاگے 'I and the other (man) my companion fled thence.'

تم اور موہن ملکر اُسکو مارو 'you and Mohan together (lit. having united) beat him.'

291. Two or more connected subjects of the third person (singular or plural), when they denote living beings, usually take the predicate (verb, participle, adjective) in the plural, and the predicate agrees with them in gender,

if they are all of the same gender; but if they are of different genders, the masculine is preferred: *e.g.*

‘Mohan and Kallū came to my place.’
 موہن اور کَلُّو میری ہاں آئے
 ‘Amīran and Naṣībān were going to school.’
 امیرن اور نصیبان مدرسہ کو جاتی تھیں

‘his mother and father are dead.’
 اُسکے ما باپ مر گئے ہیں
 ‘an old man and his old woman arrived there.’
 ایک بوڑھا اور اُسکی بڑھیا وہاں پہنچے

‘male and female are found in date-trees also.’
 کھجور کے درختوں میں بھی نرو
 مادہ ہوتے ہیں

Rem. If کچھ, کوئی, سب, دونوں, or any similar word is in apposition to the subjects, the verb of course agrees with it as its proper subject: as ‘wife and children, no one will accompany (him).’
 زن و فرزند کوئی ساتھ نہ جائیگا

292. But if the connected subjects denote *things* or *ideas* (or partly living beings and partly things), the following cases arise:

1) If the subjects are all singular and of the same gender, the predicate agrees with them in gender, and may be put in the singular or plural, but the singular is preferred: as

‘from it spring cowardliness, mean-spiritedness, and spiritlessness,’ etc.
 اُس سے بُزِ دِلِی اور کم ہمتی اور
 بے غیرتی و غیرہ پیدا ہوتی
 ہے or ہوتی ہیں

‘selfishness and covetousness pre-dominate.’
 خُود غرضی اور طمع غالب
 ہوتی ہے

‘respect and dignity vanish.’
 رُعب اور وقار جاتا رہتا ہے

The predicate must however be put in the plural if one or more of the subjects is in the plural: as—

دھوس و حواس بجا نہ تھے (his) senses were not in proper order.'

2) If the subjects are of different genders, the predicate (verb, participle, adjective) usually agrees with the last in gender and number,¹ but it may agree with the masculine even when it is not the nearest subject: *e.g.*

چاروں طرف امن اور آسودگی 'tranquillity and ease were visible on
نظر آتی تھی all sides.'

اُسکونا خوشی اور رنج ہوتا ہے 'displeasure and vexation possess him.'

¹ These rules, as also many others laid down in these pages, will be found to differ materially from those of Forbes and other grammarians, who base their rules on the language of the *Bāg o bahār* and other such antiquated works alone, quite ignoring the literature of the present period; as though Urdū had in no way changed or improved since the time of Dr. Gilchrist. Of this we shall have more to say elsewhere. We may here content ourselves with subjoining, in corroboration of what is stated above, the opinion of two distinguished scholars, the one an inhabitant of Dehlī, the other of Lakhnau:

اگر مَعْطُوفِ عَلَیْہِ مُذْکَّرٌ ہو اور مَعْطُوفِ مُؤنَّثٌ تو فِعْلٌ میں علامتِ مُؤنَّثِ کِی لَاحِقِ کریں گے۔ اور اگر مَعْطُوفِ عَلَیْہِ مُؤنَّثٌ اور مَعْطُوفِ مُذْکَّرِ (M. Imām Bakhs̄h, *Urdū Gram.* p. 118.) ہو تو فِعْلٌ میں علامتِ مُذْکَّرِ کِی لَاحِقِ کریں گے

جہاں ایک فِعْلُ کے کئی فاعِلِ بَعْضِے مُذْکَّرِ بَعْضِے مُؤنَّثِ ہوں فِعْلُ کے مُذْکَّرِ اور مُؤنَّثِ لانے میں مُتکَلِّمِ مُخْتارِ ہِی - لیکن اَوَّلِی و فِصیحِ یہ (M. Shaikh 'Abdullāh, Arabic Prof., Cawnpore Zila' School.) ہِی کہ کَلِمہ مُتَّصِلِ فِعْلُ کا اِعتِبَارِ کیا جائے

جب حضرت شاہ *Bāg o bahār* the last-mentioned scholar remarks جہاں نے قلعہ مبارک اور جامع مسجد اور شہر پناہ تعمیر کرایا۔ عبارتِ مذکور میں کرائی فِعْلُ مُؤنَّثِ لانا اَوَّلِی و فِصیحِ یہ *in the above-cited passage it is better and more chaste to use کرائی, the feminine verb.*

جایجا مسافر خانے اور عمارتیں ‘houses for travellers and lofty build-
عالی بنی ہوئی ہیں ings are found constructed here and
there.’

زُہد و قناعت اُس میں اِٹنی (ہی) ‘abstinence and content are found in it
to this degree.’

‘I have no knowledge as to where
اسباب کہاں گیا father, servants, and property are gone.’

‘the clothes, plates, and books are
اچھی ہیں very good.’

‘respecting whom he spoke in so much
جسکی اِٹنی تعریف اور اشتیاق ظاہر کیا praise, and evinced such longing.’

‘many sticks and thorns were collected
بہت سی لکڑیاں اور کانٹے جمع کیے (by me),’ or ‘I collected a large
quantity of sticks and thorns.’

Rem. The last subject, though singular by form, may be plural in idea, in which case the predicate will be put in the plural; as عقل و ہوش جاتے رہے ‘understanding and senses vanished.’ And if one idea is expressed in several words, all of the same gender except the last, the predicate may agree in gender with the first subjects, and not with the last; as بعض جانوروں میں احتیاط اور اِٹکل اور ہوشیاری ‘such foresight, judgment, sense, and knowledge is found in some animals.’ If one of the words سب, کچھ, etc., is in apposition to the subjects, the predicate will agree with it in gender and number; as پوست و استخوان سب بکھر جائینگے ‘skin and bones, all will be scattered;’ مطلق طاقت اور ہوش کچھ باقی نہ تھا ‘absolutely no strength and consciousness, none whatever remained.’

293. If the predicate consists of ہونا ‘to become,’ ‘to prove to be,’ or one of the verbs mentioned in § 262, and a substantive, the verb is usually regulated in number and

gender by this substantive if it immediately precedes the verb, and is defined by a genitive or an adjective: as—

یہ تاج و خِلمت اور دُر و جواہر 'this crown and robe and (these) pearls
 ہزار سوداگر کی پونجی ہو and jewels might make up the
 سکتی ہے capital stock of a thousand merchants.'
 ادھر کی ادھر باتیں ملانی اور 'putting together words (concocting
 فریب دینا اُسکی عادت stories) from this side and that,
 ہو جاتی ہے and deceiving, becomes his habit.'

294. A declinable adjective which is connected as an attribute with two or more substantives of different genders usually agrees with the masculine if the substantives denote living beings; but if they denote things or ideas, it generally agrees with the nearest: as—

ایسی آفتیں اور خطرناک مقام 'such calamities and fearful places.'
 اتنی تعریف اور اشتیاق 'so much praise and longing.'

295. An impersonal proposition, by which the existence of an action or relation is asserted, without being referred, as predicate, to any noun for its subject, is formed 1) by the verb چاہیئے 'it is proper or necessary;' 2) by the verbs ہے and تھا with one of the adjectives لازم 'necessary,' واجب 'proper,' واجب 'right,' 'necessary,' etc., followed in each case by a subordinate proposition to which the assertion refers: as—

چاہیئے کہ اُن سے ایسا برتاؤ کری 'it is necessary that he so deal with them.'
 مناسب ہے کہ اس پر عمل کری 'it is right that he act on this.'

CHAPTER VII.

THE ARTICLE; THE RELATIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES IN A SENTENCE, AND THE CASES.

a) ON THE ABSENCE OF THE ARTICLE IN URDŪ.

296. Urdū, like Sanskrit and the modern Āryan languages, possesses no definite article: thus گھر may be translated by either 'house,' or 'a house,' or 'the house,' according to the context.

297. Some nouns however are in their very nature definite, *e.g.* آفتاب 'the sun,' پُورب 'the East,' etc., and all proper names. Others are rendered definite—

1) by standing in apposition to a proper name; as کراچی 'the seaport of Karāchī,' حَکیم بیدپائے 'the sage, Bedpā'e.'

2) by standing in the relation of governing noun to a proper noun in the genitive, when this is *explicatory* (إضافت بیانیہ): as زِیرباد کا دیس 'the country of Zerbād,' یونان کا پادشاہ 'the king of Greece.'

3) by being connected with the demonstrative pronouns, which, in many instances, may be properly rendered by the English definite article: as وہ کتاب جسکا ورق پھٹا دُوا ہے 'that, or the book, a leaf of which is torn.'

Rem. According to the native grammarians not only are all proper names, personal, demonstrative, and relative pronouns, definite or

determined (مَعْرِف), but a noun which governs any of these in the genitive is also definite; thus موہن کا لڑکا signifies properly 'the child of Mohan,' and not 'a child of Mohan's.'

298. If it be desired to point out a noun as *indefinite*, the numeral adjective ایک 'one, a, an' (called حَرْفِ تَنْکِیْر 'the indefinite particle') or the indefinite pronoun کوئی 'some one,' 'a certain one,' is employed for the purpose, with this distinction, however, that the former more commonly particularizes the substantive, implying that only one person or thing is understood, whereas the latter implies that some one out of many, or something not described, is intended: *e.g.*

عِلْمِ ایک اچھی چیز ہے 'knowledge is a good thing.'

ایک بادشاہ نے کسی زاهد کو قیمتی خلعت دی devotee.'

کسی تالاب کے کنارے ایک بٹا رہتی تھی of some tank.'

299. If some indefinite portion or quantity of a thing is implied, the word کچھ is placed before the noun in the singular or plural; as بازار سے کچھ چوزالے آنا 'bring some chickens from the market' (see § 399).

6) THE RELATION OF SUBSTANTIVES IN A SENTENCE.

300. The relation in which a noun (substantive, adjective, participle, pronoun) stands to the other parts of a sentence, is denoted by its case, or by a postposition with its noun.

301. Nouns which stand in the same relation, stand also in the same case: *e.g.*

1) The *appositive* (*tābi*‘) and its *matbū*‘; as ہماری آقا ‘*a ser* of oil;’ by our master Sindbād, ‘*a bighā* of land;’ ایک کڑ کپڑا ‘*ten thousand horses.*’

Rem. Nouns denoting *measure* or *quantity* are coordinate with the noun denoting the thing of which they form a part. Native grammarians, however, do not regard the two nouns as in *apposition*, but call the second of the two nouns *the specification* (تعیین) of the first. When a noun is preceded by a numeral adjective (عدد), it is termed *معدود* or *numbered*. It is wrong to say of such nouns that “they are put in the nominative,” for the two nouns may be in any case: *e.g.* دو سیر گہی سے کیا ہوگا ‘what can be done with two *ser*s of *ghī*?’

2) Words which are connected by conjunctions, enumeration, and antithesis; as جاہل طلب کرتا ہے مال کو اور عاقل ‘the fool seeks wealth, and the wise man perfection.’

3) The word with which a question is put, and that which conveys the answer; as اِس کو کس نے مارا ‘by whom was he beaten?’ (‘who beat him?’), میں نے (مارا), ‘by me;’ ‘Mohan’s;’ ‘whose house is this?’ یہ کسکا گھر ہے ‘for whom are you making (it)?’ فلاںے کس کے لیئے بناتے ہو ‘for such-and-such a gentleman.’

I. THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

302. The Nominative is used to denote the subject of which a verb is predicated; میں لڑکوں کو پڑھاتا ہوں ‘I teach boys,’ or ‘I am teaching the boys.’

303. The Nominative is also used as the predicative noun, 1) with verbs signifying *to be* or *become*, *to prove*, *issue*, *turn out*; as ہوگا، ہو جانا، ہو سکتا، نکلنا، etc.; 2) with verbs denoting a *state* or *mode of existence*, as رہنا ‘to

remain,' تھہرنا 'to stand or last,' etc.; 3) with passive verbs of naming, calling, making, esteeming, etc. (cf. §§ 262 and 351).

304. The Nominative is often employed absolutely to avoid the use of two or more consecutive nouns in an oblique case, and the case in which these nouns would stand is then taken by a following pronoun or pronominal adjective. This construction is also commonly employed when attention is called to the subject (with which the following pronoun is put in apposition), or when a relative explanatory sentence is inserted between the nominative and the verb: *e.g.*

کِسی کے کپڑے میں عیب نکالنا۔ 'to pick holes in any one's dress, or to speak of the untrustworthiness of any one, and so forth—all is comprehended in the word Slander.'

یا کِسی کی بد اعتقادی کا ذکر کرنا اور علیٰ ہذا القیاس۔

سب غیبت میں داخل ہے

گنوار کا ایک لڑکا جو کھیت کی نگرہ بانی کے لیئے وہاں پھرتا تھا۔ 'a villager's son, who was moving about there to watch the field—as soon as his eye fell on the pigeon.'

نظر اُسکی جوں کبوتر پر پڑی

ملک صادق - جو بادشاہ جنوں کا ہے۔ 'Malik Sādiq, who is the king of the Jinn—your father had formed a friendship with him.'

ساتھ دوستی پیدا کی تھی

اور بعض باتیں عربی اور فارسی کی۔ 'and certain matters pertaining to the Arabic and Persian, the knowing of which was essential, and a means of enlightenment to young scholars—they also have been introduced.'

جنکا جاننا تو آموزوں کو ضروری اور موجب ہوشیاری کا تھا۔ وہ بھی درج کی گئیں

305. The Formative plural of nouns denoting *periods of time*, when used *collectively* and *indefinitely*, is used in place of the nominative: *e.g.* برسوں گزر گئے 'years passed away.'

II. THE AGENT.

306. When the verb of a sentence is transitive, such that its perfect participle has a *passive* character, and the tense employed is one which is formed with this participle (the Indefinite Past, the Present Perfect, the Past Perfect, the Past Potential, and one of the forms of the Past Conditional), the structure of the sentence (owing to the nature of the participle) takes a *passive* form, the near or direct object (the Accusative) is made the *subject* of the verb, and the agent of the act is put in the *Agent case*: *e.g.*

مہاراج نے میرا حال پوچھا 'His Majesty asked after my condition'

(*lit.* 'by the king my condition was asked').

انہوں نے مجھ کو اچھی صلاح بتلائی 'they gave me good advice' (*lit.* 'by them to me good advice was given').

میں نے تجارت کی اجناس 'I had purchased articles of merchandise'

خریدی تھیں (*lit.* 'articles of merchandise had been purchased by me').

307. A sentence as object (or subject) of a verb is treated as a singular masculine noun; hence—

میں نے عہد کیا تھا کہ پھر کبھی سفر کا نام نہ لوں گا 'I had vowed that never again would I breathe the word Travel' (*lit.* 'that I will never again take the name of Travel, had been vowed by me').

308. But if, for any reason, the object is constructed with کو, or in other words takes the Dative form, the

concord between it and the verb is broken, and the construction becomes impersonal, the subject, in the form of the pronoun of the *third person singular masculine*, being implied in the verb: *e.g.*

اُنہوں نے سانپ کے سر کو کچلا 'they crushed the snake's head' (*lit.*
'as to the snake's head, it was crushed by them').

ہم نے اُسکی درخواست کو قبول کیا ہے 'I have accepted his petition' (*lit.*
'as regards his petition, it has been
accepted by us').

مردوں کو خدا نے کمانے کے لیے بنایا ہے 'God has made men for the purpose
of earning (their livelihood),' or *lit.* 'with reference to men, by God,
for the purpose of earning, it has been made,' *i.e.* the act of creating
by God, in reference to men, has been with a view to (their) earning.

309. One or two transitive verbs, as بولنا 'to speak,'
بھولنا 'to forget,' the perfect participles of which are
regarded as lacking a passive character, are not constructed
according to the above rules; as میں نے بولا (not میں بولا) 'I
spoke.'

310. Compound verbs, such as لے آنا (and its contraction
لانا) 'to come with, to bring,' لے جانا 'to go away with, to
take away,' کھا جانا 'to eat up,' etc., the first member of
which (as also the whole verb²) is transitive, and the

¹ To these the people of Lakhnau and of Southern India add the verb سمجھنا
'to understand,' 'to think,' whereas Dehli authors rarely treat this as a neuter verb.
In the *Khiraṭ Afroz* this verb, as also سوچنا, is repeatedly treated as neuter, but
sochnā, like *bhūlnā*, is sometimes a *transitive* and sometimes an *intransitive* verb.
Other verbs, which are added to the above exceptions by some European grammarians
—as ڈرنا 'to fear' (to be afraid), چوکنا 'to fail, to fall short' (of), لڑنا 'to fight'
(with), لگنا 'to be in contact' (with), 'to take' (to)—are *essentially intransitive*, and
hence cannot possibly take the passive construction.

² Forbes's rule—which Messrs. Williams and Dowson repeat—is: When the last
member of a compound verb is neuter, the whole verb is neuter, and when it is
transitive, the whole verb is transitive. This rule, we may observe, is not based on

second member intransitive, must necessarily be treated as neuter verbs, *i.e.* constructed *actively*, since a *passive* participle cannot be formed from the latter part of the compound, which alone is conjugated: *e.g.* کُتا سب روٹی کھا گیا. 'a (or the) dog has eaten up all the bread.'

Rem. In two or more co-ordinate sentences with a common subject, the last of which takes the passive construction with the Agent case, and the other (or others) the active with the Nominative, or *vice versa*, the Agent or the Nominative (as the case may be) of the last sentence is generally not expressed: *e.g.*

وہ گھوڑی پر سوار ہوا اور جنگل کی راہ لی (اُس نے) road to the jungle.'

ایک خادم نے میرا ہاتھ پکڑا اور (وہ) مجھ سے کہنے لگا to say to me.'

This construction serves to show that (as we have already remarked), according to the conception of those who now speak Urdū, the Agent case is simply a modified form of the Nominative, from which it is distinguished by the sign نے, and by its exclusive use with the tenses formed from the perfect participle of transitive verbs. When a Hindūstānī says, for instance, میں نے روٹی کھائی, he means not 'bread was eaten by me,' as the construction implies, but 'I ate bread.'

III. THE GENITIVE.

311. The Genitive of a word denotes that another stands with it in the relation of connection, and is in this

the opinion of native scholars, nor on the practice of standard authors; for the former hold it as absurd to call کھانا *active* and کھا جانا *neuter* as it would be to term *to eat* active, and *to eat up* neuter; and the latter invariably construct the Frequentative and Desiderative compounds actively with the *Nominative*: *e.g.* میں تمام دن اور تمام رات پانی میں ہاتھ پاؤں مارا کیا 'I kept striking (out) my hands and legs in the water all day and all night.' (*Cf.* § 214, and *note* thereon.)

way defined by it. The genitive serves chiefly to show the relation of the substantive so used to some other substantive (or word used substantively), so that both substantives together express one idea; it is however also connected with some adjectives.

312. The Genitive in Hindūstānī, it should be borne in mind, is, as regards its origin, an *Adjective* (§ 43), and therefore, like other Hindī adjectives terminating in *ā*, it inflects for gender and number so as to agree with the noun it defines.

313. The Genitive may either precede or follow the word by which it is governed (§ 277 *et seq.*).

314. The Genitive after *substantives* is used, generally, to denote dependence of any one substantive upon another: as—

دوستي کا بہانا ‘the pretence of friendship.’

صحرا کی راہ ‘the road of, *i.e.* to the desert.’

آدمیوں کا ایک جہاز ‘a ship of, *i.e.* laden with men.’

Hence the Genitive depends upon *لیئے*, *واسطے*, *خاطر*, etc. signifying *for the sake* (of), *on account* (of), and on other postpositions, which are nouns in the Ablative and Locative: as *باپ کے لیئے* ‘for the sake of, or for (my) father,’ *میری واسطے* ‘for me,’ ‘on my account.’ (See § 238 *et seq.*)

Rem. The locative of the Reciprocal Pronoun *آپس* as governing noun is frequently omitted: *e.g.*

میری تیری دشمنی ذاتی ہی ‘a natural antagonism exists between me and thee.’

ایک کچھوی اور بچھو کے دوستی تھی ‘a friendship existed between a tortoise and a scorpion.’

کہ میری تیری وہی بتا ہووی 'so that that same may be a sign
between me and thee.'

315. *Genitive of Relation*.—The Genitive is used to denote relationship: as موہن کا بیٹا 'Mohan's son,' لڑکوں کا 'the father of the children.'

316. *Possessive Genitive*.—The Genitive denotes a thing possessed by a possessor, and the possessor of a thing possessed: as گھر کا مالک 'the owner of a house,' موہن کی 'Mohan's book.'

317. Instead of being joined immediately to the governing substantive, a Possessive Genitive may be connected with it by means of one of the verbs ہئی، تہا، ہونا، etc.: *e.g.*

یہ کتاب موہن کی ہئی 'this book is Mohan's.'
میرا اُس وقت عجب حال تہا 'mine was a strange predicament at
that time.'

318. The Genitive of possession in connection with a following verb (ہئی، تہا، ہونا، etc.) often stands without a governing word: *e.g.*

ایک گدھا جسکے دم نہ تہی 'an ass which had no tail' (*lit.* 'of
which there was no tail').

گدھے کے دل اور کان نہ تہا 'the ass had no heart and ears.'

اُنکے لڑکا نہ تہا 'they had no child (their's was no child).'

اُسکے سخت چوٹ لگی ہئی 'he has received (become possessed of)
a severe injury.'

پیدادہ کئی قدم نہ گیا تہا کہ ایک 'the foot-traveller had not gone many
steps when a horse kicked him.'

Rem. In sentences like the first three of the above, it is probable that a postposition, such as پاس or ہاں (vulg. یہاں), is understood.

But in the last two the native grammarians, and all native scholars, will not allow that any word is understood; but maintain that the construction is that of the Persian, *کے* taking the place of the preposition *به*; e.g. *بدو = اُسکے* (for *اُو به*). This is intelligible if the construction occurs in Urdū alone. But we are not sure that it does not occur in Hindī also; and if this be the case, it would seem more probable that *کے* is here an independent postposition, derived (like *کو*) from the Sanskrit *kṛite*.

319. *Subjective Genitive*.—The Subjective Genitive indicates the *subject* of the action expressed in the word on which it depends: as

‘Mohan’s running away.’
 موہن کا بھاگ جانا
 ‘when Hindbād perceived Sindbād’s
 ہندباد نے جو سیندباد کی محبت
 دیکھی regard (for him).’
 ‘art’s producing a resemblance to
 طبعیت کے ساتھ صناعت کا
 تشبہ پیدا کرنا nature.’

320. *Objective Genitive*.—The Objective Genitive denotes the *object* of the action, feeling, or notion, expressed in the word on which it depends: as

‘lust of the world.’
 دُنیا کی ہوس
 ‘the thanksgiving of, i.e. to God.’
 خُدا کا شُکر
 ‘the fear of God.’
 خُدا کا خُوف
 ‘the sorrow of others.’
 اُوروں کی تِکلیف
 ‘they have an affection for this thing.’
 اُنکو اس بات کی محبت ہے
 ‘they consider the seeing of me unlucky.’
 میرا دیکھنا اُنحوس جائتے ہیں

Rem. The Objective Genitive is of common occurrence with the so-called nominal verbs, i.e. when a substantive in the accusative is added to such verbs *کرنا*, *رکھنا*, etc., to complete the notion of the verb:

e.g. 'مَیں جو بیل کے مارنے کی کوشش کرتا ہوں۔' 'the effort which I am making to kill the ox;' 'ک ایک پتھر کی اتنی تعریف کریں' 'that he should make so much praising of (should praise so much) a stone.'

321. *Partitive Genitive*.—The Genitive is used with substantives and words used substantively to indicate the whole of which a part is taken: e.g.

آغاز قصے کا 'the beginning of the story.'
 پہاڑ کی چوٹی 'the top of the mountain.'
 ہیری کا ٹکڑا 'a piece of diamond.'
 کھیت کا آدھا 'a half of the field.'

Rem. But if the part taken is a definite *weight, measure, or quantity*, the noun denoting the whole is put in apposition: as تین سیر دودھ 'three seers of milk;' ایک گز کپڑا 'a yard of cloth;' ایک بیگھا زمین 'a *bighā* of land;' ایک بوند پانی 'a drop of water' (cf. *Rem.* § 301, 1).

322. With the Partitive Genitive also are construed nouns expressing the superlative. The Genitive in this case designates the whole out of which some one or something is brought conspicuously forward as its most prominent part: e.g.

سب طالبعلموں کا اچھا 'the best of all the students.'
 حلقے کی صدر 'the chief seat of the assembly.'
 انہیں کا چھوٹے سے چھوٹا 'the least of them.'
 اعلیٰ درجے کے لوگ 'people of the highest rank.'
 علم کا اعلیٰ مرتبہ 'the highest stage of knowledge.'

Rem. If it is desired to indicate that an object is the greatest or most distinguished of its kind, the substantive is often repeated in the form of the definite genitive plural. This construction occurs chiefly in Persian and Arabic phrases: e.g. خداوندِ خدائیں 'the lord of

lords,' i.e. 'the supreme lord;'
 'the Amīr of Amīrs, the chief Amīr.'

323. *Explicative Genitive*.—The Explicative Genitive, or the Genitive of Definition, is closely connected in signification with the Partitive Genitive. It is used to indicate—

1) *the whole as including all the parts*, the plural **کے** being employed when the whole conveys *plurality of idea*, or when it is composed of several individual things or persons (masculine): as **کھیت کا کھیت** 'the whole field;'
سب کے سب 'the whole' (of a thing); **سب کا سب** 'all' (without exception, of a number of objects); **جھوٹے کا جھوٹے** 'a lie' (altogether); (sc. **دُم**) **تیرھی کی تیرھی** 'altogether crooked, as it was before.'

2) *the relation between the material and the form*; as **سونے کا گھڑی** 'a watch of gold' (a gold watch); **کاٹھ کا صندوق** 'a box of wood;'
فولاد کا قفل 'a lock of steel.'

In this case the Genitive has quite the force of an adjective.

3) *the relation between the species and the genus*, and the definition or explanation of a *general* or *universal* by a *special* or *particular*: as—

کیجور کا درخت 'a date-tree (a tree of the date kind).'

صندل کی لکڑی 'sandal wood (wood of the sandal kind).'

زیرباد کا دیس 'the country of Zerbād.'

کلمہ مع کا 'the word (of) *ma*.'

یہ لفظ کُفر کا 'this word *kufr*.'

سفر کا نام نہ لوں گا 'I will not breathe the word (of) Travel.'

In the three last examples we should rather have expected a substantive in apposition.

324. *Genitive of Kind*.—The Genitive is also put with words which denote a number, measure, or quantity, to indicate the *kind*, and the thing measured or counted: as—

خادموں کا ایک گروہ 'a body of servants.'

آدمیوں کا ایک جہاز 'a ship-load of men.'

تین دن کا عرصہ 'a space of three days.'

325. *Genitive of Quality*.—The Genitive, generally with an adjective (numeral, genitive), is used to indicate a quality of, or to describe, the noun on which it is dependent: as—

بڑی تعجب کی بات 'a matter of great wonder.'

چھوٹے سر کا آدمی 'a small-headed man.'

اس صورت و قد کا آدمی 'a man of this form and stature.'

دس برس کا لڑکا 'a boy of ten years.'

بیس بیگھے کا کھیت 'a field of twenty *bīghās*.'

چار کوس کا فاصلہ 'a distance (intervening space) of four *kos*.'

پانچ سیر کا وزن 'two seers of, *i.e.* in weight.'

326. *Genitive of Value*.—The Genitive is also used (generally with an adjective of quantity) to indicate the *value* of a thing, and its *price*, if some word signifying *price* is expressed: *e.g.*

یہ کتنے کا مال ہوگا 'what may be the value of this property?'

اسکی بڑی قدر کرتا ہے 'he sets a high value on this.'

اُس نے دس روپے کا کپڑا خریدا 'he purchased cloth to the value of ten rupees.'

اس صندوق کی کیا قیمت ہے 'what is the price of this box?'

Rem. With verbs signifying to buy or sell, the price of a thing is usually expressed by the Dative, or the Locative; as *وَد گپوڑا کتنے کو لیا* 'for how much did (you) buy that horse?' *یہ کتاب کتنے میں پڑی* 'how much did this book cost?' (cf. §§ 334, and 355, 7.)

327. The Genitive is also used to distinguish a thing to which something belongs as its *contents*, *appurtenance*, etc.: *e.g.*

پانی کی گُچلےٹ 'a gugglet of (*i.e.* containing) water.'

دریا کا پانی 'water of (*i.e.* contained in) the river.'

تین دن کی خوراک 'provision for three days.'

328. *Genitive after Adjectives.*—Many adjectives are commonly construed with the genitive. They are chiefly Persian and Arabic active participles, or nouns of agency, and Arabic passive participles, signifying *desirous*, *seeking*, *coveting*, *envying*, *necessitous*, *beloved*, *producing*, *causing*, *requiring* or *exacting*, *following*, *obeying* or *subject to*, *helping*, *opposing*, *hindering*, *fitness*, *capacity*, *similitude*, *guilt*, etc. Some Hindī adjectives also, and nearly all Hindī nouns of agency, are used with a genitive: *e.g.*

اپنے اہنائے جنس کی بہتری کا دل سے خواہاں ہو 'be desirous from your heart of the well-being of your fellow-creatures.'

روزی کا طالب 'a seeker after subsistence.'

جو آدمی مال کے حارص ہیں 'those men who are covetous of wealth.'

اُسکے خون کا پیاسا 'thirsting for (eagerly desirous of) his blood.'

میں مال کا بھوکھا نہیں 'I am not hungering for wealth.'

اُنکے حاسد ہو جاتے ہیں 'they become envious of them.'

وہ عِبرَت کے مُحتَاج ہیں 'they (stand in) need (of) warning.'

تاکہ اُنہی خُداوند کا پُرا ہوا
of your Lord.'

آدَمیوں کا مَحَبُوب بن جاتا ہے
affection.'

اگر خواہش کسی ایسے فِعَل کی
مُنْتَضِی ہو
of) any such action.'

خُداوند پاک بھی اُسکا مددگار
ہوتا ہے
helper.'

عِلْم کو اُسکا مُخَالِف جانتے ہیں
thereof.'

جو امر اُسکے حُصُولِ مَطْلَب کا
مُزاحِم ہوتا ہے
attainment of his object.'

وہ ہتکِ عدالت کا مُجَرَّم نہیں
ہوتا
tempt of court.'

وہ قَتْل کا مُرْتِکِب ہوتا ہے
crime) of murder.'

Rem. A number of adjectives are idiomatically constructed with the *inflected* genitive (کے). The most common of these are: برابر 'equal,' تابع 'obedient,' قابل 'capable,' قریب 'near,' لائق 'fit,' 'worthy,' مُتَعَلِّق 'adhering to,' مُشَابِہ 'resembling,' مُوَافِق 'conformable,' مُوجِب 'rendering necessary,' 'cause,' etc. These adjectives being mostly used as postpositions (§ 240, 3), the same construction has apparently been preserved when they are used as regular adjectives: *e g.* جب وہ شہر کے قریب پہنچے 'when they arrived near the city;' چاہیئے کہ غصہ عقل کے تابع رہے 'anger should be under the control (a follower) of Reason;' اور تین

‘چوتھائی نہ کہنے کے قابل ہی and three-fourths (of it) is unfit to be told.’

329. A genitive may be governed by two or more connected nouns, in which case, if these denote *living beings*, and are of different genders, the genitive is usually put in the masculine plural; but if the nouns denote *things* or *ideas*, it generally agrees with the nearest noun: *e.g.*

کَلُّو کے ما باپ ‘Kallū’s mother and father.’

اُس شخص کے زن و فرزند ‘that person’s wife and child (or children).’

اَصْل و نَفْع اُسکا ‘his capital and profit.’

اُس اخبار کی کیفیت اور دستور ‘the character, custom, and style of language, of that newspaper.’ اور طرزِ بیان

Rem. The masculine is occasionally used: *e.g.* جسکے جاہ و حشم کا ‘a description of whose pomp and state.’ This is especially the case if the nearest noun be one of those the gender of which is not settled: *e.g.* فکر, جان, etc. (see § 28, 8, *Rem. c*): as تمہاری جان و مال کو ‘your life and property.’

330. If an Urdū genitive is governed by a Persian genitive phrase, one noun of which is masculine and the other feminine, the genitive usually takes the masculine affix: *e.g.*

اپنے آبائے جنس کی بہتری ‘the bettering of his fellow-creatures.’

ہماری طرزِ بیان سے ‘from the style of our discourse.’

توجہ کا ادائے شکر ‘the repaying of thanks for kindly notice.’

331. A genitive that is governed by a predicative substantive connected with a *singular* (masculine) subject in

the *plural* form, is invariably put in the plural, whether its governing noun admits of a plural form or not: *e.g.*

تُمْ دِہْلِی کے رہنے والے ہو 'you are (=thou art) an inhabitant of
Dehli.'

تُمْ فُلَانِے صَاحِب کے نوکر ہو 'you are (=thou art) the servant of
such-and-such a gentleman.'

332. If the governing noun denote a person of rank or position who is spoken of, the genitive may be put in the plural as a mark of respect: as جو بادشاہ اُس مُلُک کے تھے 'who was the king of that country' (*cf.* § 288).

IV. THE DATIVE.

333. The Dative denotes in general that what is asserted by the predicate is done, or holds good *for*, and *in reference* to a certain person or thing. This is indicated by the postposition کو, employed in forming the case, and which signifies originally *for the sake of*, *on account of*, *in reference to*: *e.g.*

وہ شیر اُن بیچاروں کو دکھائی دیتا تھا 'the lion used to appear to those
unfortunates.'

جس بات کا سُننا سُننے والے کو بُرا لگے 'anything the hearing whereof would
prove disagreeable to the hearer.'

Rem. In the older literature the place of the Dative postposition is frequently supplied by the postposition تہیں, with a genitive: *e.g.* کتے تہیں 'give (it) to the dog.' But the use of this postposition is now almost exclusively confined to the Reflexive Pronoun; as اپنے تہیں 'to himself,' etc.

334. As the remote object in reference to which an

action takes place, the Dative has the signification of *for*, *for the sake of*, *for the purpose of*, *in return* or *exchange for*, and hence its use with verbs of *selling* and *buying*: e.g.

ہم تو تیری جان کو روپیٹ کر تجھ سے ہاتھ دھو بیٹھے تھے as for us, after weeping and lamenting for your life, we had settled down, giving you up in despair (*lit.* having washed our hands of you).'

میری تمام عمر کو کافی ہے 'it is sufficient for my whole lifetime.'
شہزادہ سیر کو نکلے 'the prince came out for a stroll.'

میں مظلوم ہوں فریاد کو آیا ہوں 'I am the victim of oppression, I am come to complain.'

ہاتھ دھونے کو پانی لاؤ 'bring water to wash the hands.'

اپنے نزدیک میری اترنے کو مکان دو 'give (me) a house near you for me to put up in' (*lit.* 'to alight').'

میں نے دو سو روپے کو اپنا گھوڑا بیچا 'I sold my horse for two hundred rupees.'

یہ کتاب کتنے کو دوگے 'what will you give this book for?'

Rem. The Dative of *motive* or *purpose* (مفعول کے) the object on account of which anything is done) is generally a verbal noun (e.g. *sair*, *faryād*, *utarnā*, *dhonā*, in the above examples), and may always be rendered in English by the gerund with *to*. The force of the same Dative is very commonly expressed by one of the postpositions *لیئے*, *واسطے*, *خاطر*, etc., and the genitive of a verbal noun: as *مردوں کو خدانے کمانے کے* 'God has made men to earn (their livelihood);' *عالم بنایا ہے* 'they study (for) to become learned.' In such sentences the genitive of the verbal noun may be resolved into a clause consisting of *کہ* or *تاکہ* and a finite form of the verb: as *وی اس* 'they study in order that they may become learned.'

335. The Dative is used after verbs implying *motion*: as

خواجہ گھر کو چلا 'the merchant went home (to his house).'

وہ بازار کو گیا 'he went to the bazar.'

کہ شیر کو رنج نہ پہنچے (take care) that no annoyance reach the lion.'

336. The Dative is used idiomatically with the verb ملنا 'to meet, or come in contact with,' to convey the idea of *acquiring, finding*: as

اس لڑکے کو کچھ نہیں ملا 'this boy has got nothing.'

اُسکو رستہ نہ ملا 'he did not find a road or way.'

337. The Dative is used after some adjectives signifying *necessary, fit, agreeable*, and their opposites, when they are employed as predicative nouns: *e.g.*

یہ مکان ہمکو درکار ہے 'this house is needed by (in requisition for) us.'

یہ بات مجھ کو پسند نہیں 'I do not approve of this matter,' *lit.* 'this matter is not agreeable to me.'

338. The phrases لازم ہے, مناسب ہے, چاہیئے, etc. signifying *it is necessary, proper, or right*, govern the Dative: *e.g.*

آدمی کو چاہیئے کہ نیکی میں سعی کری 'a man should exert (himself) in doing good,' *lit.* 'it is necessary for a man that he,' etc.

اُسکو لازم ہے کہ ایک کی بات دوسری سے نہ کہے 'it is necessary for him (it behoves him) that he mention not the words of one person to another.'

339. With the same verbs, and also with the verbs ہونا and پڑنا when these imply *intention, necessity, or constraint*, the Dative is regularly employed before the gerund, the

gerundive, and the perfect participle used as a verbal noun, to denote the subject (*cf.* §§ 415, 426, and 439): as

ہم اخبار نویسوں کو سوچنا چاہیئے 'we newspaper-writers should consider,' *lit.* 'for us newspaper-writers considering is necessary or right.'

تُم کو ادب سیکھنا (= سیکھنا) چاہیئے 'you should learn manners.'

اب ہمکو ذرہ فکر کرنی چاہیئے 'we ought now to consider a bit.'

ایسی مفید باتیں جلد کہنی مناسب ہیں 'it is right (for you) to mention such beneficial matters without delay.'

اگر ہمکو گھڑی بنانی ہے 'if we have to make a watch.'

ہم کو اسی زبان سے اپنی تمام ضرورتیں رفع کرنی ہیں 'we have to provide against all our necessities with this same language.'

سرکار کو اس میں ضرور دست اندازی کرنی پڑیگی 'the government will certainly have (be constrained) to interfere in this matter.'

340. The Dative of the possessor, with ہئی, ہونا, and other kindred verbs, and occasionally with the verb آنا 'to come,' expresses the idea of possession; but the verbs ہونا and آنا, with the Dative, more commonly imply *entering into and influencing*: *e.g.*

حضور کو شغل بہت سے ہیں 'your Honour has many occupations (many things to occupy you).'

اُس وقت ہمکو جو گھبراہٹ اور بے قراری تھی 'the alarm and anxiety which we had (we suffered) at that moment.'

اور جو عقل و شعور اُسے بخوبی نہ ہو 'and if he have not sense and understanding in due degree.'

بادشاہ کو کچھ تسلی ہوئی 'the king derived some consolation (therefrom).'

شیر کو غیرت آئی 'jealousy possessed the lion.'

مجھ کو یقین آیا 'I derived assurance (I became certain).'

بادشاہ کو انکے حال پر رحم آیا 'pity for their condition possessed the king.'

Rem. Possession may also be signified by the postposition پاس and the *genitive* of the possessor, instead of the Dative: as اُس کے پاس ایک 'he has a dog (there is a dog in his possession);' and, less commonly, by the verb رکھنا 'to keep,' 'have,' with the Accusative of the thing possessed; as کوئی فرزند نہ رکھتا تھا 'he had no child.'

341. The Dative is used to express *time* indefinitely: as

رات کو ڈاکا آیا 'a band of robbers came at night.'

صبح کو جب وہ اُٹھا 'in the morning, when he rose.'

Rem. The Dative postposition is often omitted, but in such cases the noun always takes the inflected form, if it is capable of inflection: *e.g.*

صبح اُٹھتے ہی سوار ہوا 'in the morning, as soon as he rose, he mounted (his horse).'

وہ گھر گیا ہے 'he has gone home.'

وہ روٹی کھانے گیا ہے 'he has gone to eat his food.'

V. THE ACCUSATIVE.

342. The Accusative, in Hindūstānī, occurs only as the objective complement of a transitive verb; as موہن کتب پڑھتا ہے 'Mohan is reading a book;' کلو بدھو کو مارتا ہے 'Kallū is beating Buddhū.'

Rem. What is predicated of the subject as an action, may be predicated of the object as suffering, so that this takes the place of the subject,

and the same verb is predicated of it in the passive. This, as we have already shown (§ 185, 191, *et seq.*), is the usual construction in Urdū when the tenses employed are those formed with the past participle of simple transitive verbs (which is by its nature a *passive* participle), the agent (whether known or not) being generally placed at the head of the sentence in the Agent case: as *کُتے نے روٹی کھا ئی* 'by the dog the bread was eaten' (= 'the dog ate the bread'); *کسی نے روٹی کھا ئی* 'the bread was eaten by some one.' It is important, however, to bear in mind that at the present day this construction is viewed by those who employ it not as *passive*, but *active*, and that when the agent is not known, or it is not desired to mention it, the common passive form (§ 197) is used even in the tenses formed with the passive participle: *e.g.* *کوئی آدمی مارا گیا ہے* 'a man has been killed.'

343. Whether a verb is transitive depends on its signification, and on the circumstance whether an object is at the same time conceived as immediately acted on.

344. Many Urdū verbs have fundamentally a distinct notion from those by which they are commonly rendered in English, and are therefore differently constructed: as *میں اُس سے اپنی کتاب مانگتا ہوں* 'I am asking him for my book' (properly, 'I am wanting my book from him'); *وہ مجھ سے سبب پوچھتا ہے* 'he is asking me for the reason' (properly, 'he is asking the reason from me'); *گہڑی میں پانی بھرو* 'fill water in the pot' ('pour water into the pot till it is full,' and not 'fill the pot with water'); *اُسکی آنکھوں میں آنسو بھری* 'tears filled (gathered to the full) in her eyes' (not, as translators render it, 'her eyes filled with tears').

345 Not a few verbs have different significations, so that in one they are transitive and govern the accusative,

while in another they are differently constructed; as اُٹنا 'وہ اُٹنا' 'he is scratching his hand;' اُسکا ہاتھ کُجّلاتا ہے 'his hand itches;' اُس نے مَجّھے پکارا 'he called me;' 'he called out.'

Rem. It is particularly to be observed that intransitive verbs of motion, when compounded with the conjunctive participle of certain transitive verbs, as لینا 'to take,' دینا 'to give,' چھوڑنا 'to leave,' acquire a transitive signification, and are constructed with the Accusative: *e.g.* اُسکو میری پاس لاؤ 'bring him to me;' وہ میری مکان پر رہے 'he left (gave) this book at my house on his way;' لڑکے کو یہاں چھوڑ جاؤ 'leave the boy behind here.' This is especially the case when the first member of the compound is the conjunctive participle of the verb لینا (*cf.* § 215 and *Rem.*).

346. The Accusative (مفعول بہ) has two forms in Urdū; namely, that of the *Nominative*, and that of the *Dative*. Respecting the employment of one or other of these forms the following general rules may be laid down:

1) If the verb is one which requires a single object (Accusative) alone, the Accusative generally takes the nominative form, so long as there is no possibility of mistaking the object for the subject: *e.g.*

بگري پانی پیتی ہے 'the goat is drinking water.'

سائپ بینگ کھاتا ہے 'a snake is devouring a frog.'

میرا ماجرا سُنو 'hear my history.'

تمہاری ملاقات کی آرزو رکھتا تھا 'I entertained the hope of meeting you.'

جلادوں نے وہیں اُسکا ہاتھ پکڑ لیا 'the executioners that instant seized his hand.'

Such is the usual form of the Accusative when the object is inanimate, and the subject either animate or inanimate, and its invariable form when the object is the predicative noun of the verb, as in the so-called Nominal Compounds, *e.g.* اِشْتِیاق کرنا 'to form the desire,' اِعْتِمَاد رکھنا 'to place confidence.'

2) If, however, the subject and object denote animate things, the object (Accusative) is generally (in the case of rational beings *invariably*) distinguished by the addition to it of the postposition کو, to obviate the possibility of mistake: as

بھیڑیے نے تڑت بھیڑ کو پھاڑ ڈالا 'the wolf quickly tore the sheep to pieces.'
اگر تو اس طرح بیل کو مار سکے 'if you can kill the ox in such a way.'
بڈھو کو کلو مارتا ہے 'Kallū is beating Buddhū.'

3) If for any reason it is desired to bring the object conspicuously forward, the Accusative is generally put in the Dative form. This usually takes place when the object has been previously mentioned, and occurs again in connection with a demonstrative pronoun, or other defining word or phrase, or when some particular object is specified, or when two objects are contrasted. But much scope is allowed to individual judgment in this matter: *e.g.*

پھر اُس طبق اور لگن کو غلام پانجری کے نزدیک لے گئے 'after this the slaves took that dish and platter near the cage.'

جب سانپ کے پاس پہنچے (اُس) زبور کو اُسکے نزدیک گرا دی 'when you come up to the snake, throw down the ornament near it.'

لومڑی نے ایک گُوا کھود کر مَنہہ کو اُسکے چھپا دیا تھا 'the fox, having dug a hole, had concealed the mouth thereof.'

ہماری صاحب شیر کو مارینگے 'our master will kill the tiger.'

347. *Cognate Accusative*.—Intransitive as well as transitive verbs may be constructed with an Accusative of a substantive derived from the same root, or from another root of corresponding signification (مَفْعُولِ مُطْلَقِ *the absolute object*). This Accusative can never take the Dative form, and it is generally used in connection with an attributive or an adjective of quantity: *e.g.*

- میں نے اُسکو بڑی مار ماری ‘I gave (*lit.* beat) him a good beating.’
 آدمیوں کی سی چال چلو ‘conduct (yourself) after the manner of men’ (*lit.* ‘walk a walking like men’s’).
 ہم بھی سیکڑوں لڑیاں لڑی ‘we also have fought hundreds of fights.’
 اتنی لاف گزاف بکا ‘he prated so much boastful nonsense.’
 امیر کی بیٹھک بیٹھا ‘he sat like a gentleman’ (*lit.* ‘he sat the sitting of a gentleman’).

348. *Double Accusative*.—Many verbs (chiefly causatives derived from transitive verbs) take *two objective complements in the Accusative*, generally either both of the person, or one of the person and the other of the thing. In such cases the personal object more commonly precedes the other, and is defined by the postposition کو, the second Accusative being put in the Nominative form: *e.g.*

- وہ اپنی دفعہ کو حساب پڑھاتا تھا ‘he was teaching his class Arithmetic.’
 اُسے یہ کپڑا پہناؤ ‘put this dress on him.’
 میری خاوند کو پندت خانے سے مخلصی دلواتا ‘he would have got my lord (husband) released from prison.’
 خدا کے بندوں کو کُتے کا جھوٹا کھانا کس مذہب میں روا ہی ‘in what religion is it permitted to make God’s servants eat a dog’s leavings.’

Rem. The Nom. form of the Accusative may, under certain circumstances, stand first: as *وہ تھیلی اُسکو دے پھلائی* 'I showed him that bag' (cf. § 271); and occasionally both Accusatives may be defined by *کو*: as *اُس نے اپنے بیٹائی کے حصے کو اُسکی بیٹی کو دیا* 'he gave his brother's portion to his (the brother's) daughter;' but such examples are of rare occurrence, and must not be taken as a rule: even in this instance it would be perfectly correct to say *اپنے بیٹائی کا حصہ*. In examples like the following, which are cited by Forbes's followers to show that both objects may be defined by *کو*, the case of the second noun is not the *Accusative* (*مفعول به*), but the *Dative of purpose* (*مفعول لے*): *میں نے دوسری کو اُسکے بلانے کو رخصت کیا* 'I despatched the other to call him;'; *بادشاہزادی کو باغ کی سیر کو لیگئے* 'they took the prince out to stroll in the garden;'; and even in such cases the recurrence of *کو* is now generally avoided by the use of one of the postpositions *لیئے*, *واسطے*, etc., with the genitive, in place of the dative: as *باغ کی سیر کے لیے*.

349. *Factitive Accusative*.—Verbs signifying *to make*, *appoint*, *call*, *name*, and the like, and those verbs which signify an act that takes place in the mind (*افعال قلب* *verbs of the heart*, as the native grammarians term them), such as *پانا* 'to find,' *جاننا* 'to think or deem,' *سمجھنا* 'to think or imagine,' and the like, take, besides the object (Accusative) itself, the Accusative of a substantive or adjective which constitutes a *predicative of the object*, and serves to complete the notion of the verb. In such cases the object (or first Accusative) is frequently defined by the postposition *کو*, and thus the concord between it and the predicative noun (the second Accusative), if it be an adjective or participle, is disturbed, the predicative adjective remaining in the uninflected form of the singular, even

though the object (Acc.) with which it is connected be plural; the verb also (if the tense be one composed of the passive participle) being constructed impersonally (see § 338): as

کسی بدی کو نیکی کا وسیلہ کرنا 'to make an evil the means of good.'

اُسے ایسا حُفہ بنایا ہے 'he has made it such a curiosity.'

میں نے اُسکو بہت غریب پایا 'I found him very meek.'

میں تجھے معصوم دیکھتا ہوں 'I perceive you (to be) sad.'

لازم ہے کہ اُس شخص کو بنائے کار
کہی the builder of the work.'

جسکو کسی مذہب کا عالم سنا
any one whom I heard of (as) a
doctor of religion.'

وہ اس عادت کو چالاکی جانتے ہیں 'they deem this practice cleverness.'

اس عورت کو چمکا کر سکتا ہے 'he can make this woman well.'

اُس نے سب گاڑیوں کو کپڑا کیا 'he made all the carts stationary.'

350. But both Accusatives may have the nominative form, in which case, if the second is an adjective or participle that inflects, it agrees in gender and number with the first (the object):¹ as

¹ It is noteworthy that Forbes's remarks on this point, although too briefly put, are perfectly sound; and yet succeeding grammarians, who generally follow his teaching without question, have in this instance thought proper to depart from it:—"When adjectives ending in *ā* are separated from their substantives, they not unfrequently become petrified as it were by being drawn towards a verb, and thus forming with it a sort of compound, lose their capability of change," is the teaching of Professor Monier Williams (*Hindūstānī Grammar*, p. 93).—"Adjectives are often combined with verbs; if the verb is neuter they agree with the nominative: but if active, they remain in the masculine singular," is Mr. Dowson's rule (*Urdū Grammar*, p. 141). Not only are these rules wrong as regards the conception of the adjective spoken of, and its relation to the verb and the object, but they serve clearly to show that both these grammarians have failed to perceive that it is the use of the particle *کو* with the object that disturbs the concord between this and the predicative adjective.

اُسکا نقصان اپنا نقصان سمجھ 'consider his harm your (own) harm.'

اپنا منہ تونے کالا کیا 'you have made your face black.'

گاڑی کپڑی کر 'stop the cart.'

وہ مشکل کسوی اٹکی نہیں رکھتا 'he keeps no one's difficulties un-removed.'

وہ اپنی حاجت پوری کرتا ہے 'he satisfies (makes complete) his wants.'

دُنیا کی چیزیں حاجت سے زیادہ اکٹھی نہ کرو 'do not accumulate (*lit.* make collected, or in one place) more than (is) necessary of this world's things.'

شہر کے باہر تنبو اور قنات اور بے چوبے اور سراپڑی اور کندلے کپڑی کروا کر 'having erected (various kinds of small and large, poled and pole-less) tents outside the city.'

Rem. a. It will be perceived from the above examples that it is the use of the Dative form of the Accusative that disturbs the concord between the object and the predicative adjective or participle. Similarly the concord between an adjective or participle and its substantive is always broken when the substantive is in the Dative form of the Accusative, but in no other case. Of the pronominal Accusatives, both being originally Dative forms, the second (اُسے, مجھے, etc.) would likewise appear to affect the concord similarly to the first (especially if it be the object of a *fe'le kalb*): e.g. مجھے پہنچا جان 'consider me (the princess) arrived.' But we also find اُسے کڑی کرو 'make it (چا the tea) strong,' although the correctness of this seems questionable.

Rem. b. Most of the so-called Nominal verbs come under the class noticed above, and hence the Accusative governed by them is commonly put in the Dative form, and the verb in the Past Tenses (if transitive) is constructed impersonally.

351. In the passive of the verbs of the last class the

direct object becomes the subject, the indirect object remaining in the Dative form of the Accusative: *e.g.*

- اگر دونوں کو مقابلہ کیا جاوی 'if the two be compared' (*lit.* 'if comparison be made in reference to the two').
- مُناسب ہئی کہ اُسکو بنائے کار کہا جاوی 'it is right that he be called the builder of the work' (*lit.* 'that builder of the work be said in reference to him').
- مُجھکو تا مُدتِ اپیل سزا سے محفوظ رکھا جاوی 'that I be secured from punishment pending the time of appeal.'

VI. THE ABLATIVE.

352. The Ablative postposition سے designates:

1) Departure from a *place*, or from *beside a person*; as کَلکتہ سے پشاور تک تار 'starting from Dehlī'; برقی جاری ہئی 'the telegraph (electric) wire is working from Calcutta to Peshāwar'; وہ میری سامنے سے گیا 'he departed from my presence'; آپ ہم سے اُنکی طرف مُلتفت ہوئے 'your Honour (you) turned from us to them.' Hence it is used:

a) With verbs (participles, verbal adjectives) that convey the idea of *separation, departure, being free, removing, liberating, guarding, concealing, flight, caution, abstinence, avoidance, holding oneself aloof* from a person or thing, *frightening away, encountering, self-defence, forbidding, hindering, depriving*, and the like; and, in general, to express the doing of something *towards* or *in respect to* another; as

- وہ مجھ سے جدا ہو گیا 'he separated (himself) from me.'
- جب ہم شہر سے باہر نکلے 'when we came out from the city.'

اُس نے میری ہاتھ سے پیالہ لیا 'he took the cup from my hand.'

جب وہ اِس کلام سے فارغ ہوا 'when he finished (ceased from) this discourse.'

کہ آپ قُصُور سے پاک ہو جاویں 'in order that he himself should be clear of fault.'

مجھ کو اِس سزا سے محفوظ رکھیے 'be pleased to save me from this punishment.'

دوستوں سے بےید چپنا نا دُرست نہیں 'it is not right to keep a secret from friends.'

اُس سے کوئی بات مخفی نہیں رہتی 'nothing remains hidden from him.'

اُنکی خطاؤں سے اِضماع کرنا 'to veil the eyes from (connive at) their faults.'

بُرا کہنے سے اِحْتِراض کیا 'I refrained from evil-speaking.'

ہم دونوں وہاں سے بھاگے 'both of us fled from there.'

اِس کام سے پرہیز کرنا مُناسِب ہے 'it is right to abstain from this matter.'

ایسے شخص سے دُور رہنا لازم ہے 'it is proper to hold oneself aloof from such a person.'

ایسی چیزوں سے خیردار ہونا 'to be on one's guard against such things.'

میں اُس سے خوب لڑا 'I fought with him well.'

جو کوئی اُسکی خواہش پوری ہونے سے مانع ہوتا ہے 'any one who prevents his desire from being fulfilled.'

چاہیئے کہ اُسے ایسا برتاؤ کریں 'he should so deal with them.'

میں تجھ سے ایسا سُلُوک کرونگا 'I will treat you so well (will pursue such a course of conduct towards you).'

مجھے حصّہ بخاری سے کیا کام ہے 'what concern have I with share and portion?'

b) with verbs which signify *revealing, knowing, informing, asking, and the like*; for in these verbs is implied the idea of the removal of a covering, real or figurative: as

یہ اُسکی بات سے ظاہر ہوتا ہے 'it is revealed by (is evident from) his words.'

اس احوال سے ہمیں بھی مطلع کرو 'acquaint us also with the circumstance.'

اس بات سے کوئی واقف نہ تھا 'no one was cognizant of this matter.'

نہ اُنکو خدا پرستی سے کچھ خبر 'nor had he any knowledge of the worship of God.'

ان باتوں سے آگاہ ہو کر 'having become acquainted with these matters.'

اُس نے مجھ سے کہا 'he said to (or told) me.'

پادشاہ نے وزیر سے پوچھا 'the king asked the wazir.'

میں حضور سے بیان کرونگا 'I will explain (it) to your honour.'

آپ سے کچھ عرض کرنا ہے 'I have something to say (represent) to you.'

Rem. The verbs کہنا and بولنا are also connected with the dative, the latter commonly.

c). With verbs signifying, *giving up in despair, abandoning, neglecting, denying, the ability to dispense with a thing, disgust, satiety, and other such verbs as imply the notion of turning away*: as

زندگی سے مایوس ہو کر 'having despaired of life.'

اپنی جان سے ہاتھ دھو کر 'having relinquished hope (washed his hands) of his life.'

اُسکے خون سے درگزر 'abandon (the idea of shedding) his blood.'

‘why are you unmindful of the wrong-doing of the world?’

‘they will refuse to obey (will rebel against) this decree.’

‘I was able to dispense with worldly wealth.’

‘being disgusted with it.’

‘are you so soon weary of me?’

‘to be averse to worldly wealth.’

d) With verbs signifying *to surpass one*: as

‘he surpassed all the merchants of that place.’

Rem. But the Locative is sometimes used: e.g. ‘he even surpassed his father.’

e) With verbs signifying *coming in contact, meeting and uniting, or connecting*: as

‘I tied it to my body.’

‘the horse was tied to a peg.’

‘they are connected with the brain.’

‘having knocked against (come in contact with) a stone.’

‘I came as far as this for the purpose of meeting him.’

‘I will see (meet) him to-morrow.’

‘Socrates married a shrew’ (lit. ‘a long-tongued woman’).

2) The *point of time* at which an act or state has commenced: e.g.

صُبح سے شام تک 'from morn to eve.'

چُنپن سے اُسکو یہی شوق ہی 'from childhood he has had this same taste.'

آج کی تاریخ سے موقوف کرو 'discontinue (it) from this date.'

Similarly, when an expired portion of time is spoken of, it is used to signify *for such-and-such a time*: as

وہ تین دن سے غبر حاضر ہے 'he has been absent for three days.'

ایک مدت سے مجھکو شوق ہے 'for some time past I have felt an inclination.'

3) The *origin* and *source* of a thing, and the *reason why* a thing is done: as

وہ میری حرکت سے حیران ہوا 'he was perplexed by my action' ('his perplexity proceeding from, or being caused by, it').

اپنے کہنے سے بہت خجل اور نادم ہوا 'he became much ashamed in consequence of what he said.'

انسان کی زندگی کھانے پینے سے ہے 'Man's life lasts through eating and drinking.'

وہ ہم سے خوش ہے 'he is pleased with us.'

فساد سے جو ضرر پیدا ہو 'the harm which springs from disorder.'

یہاں سے معلوم ہوتا ہے 'hence it is perceived.'

ان سے کینہ کرنے لگتے ہیں 'they begin to bear ill-will towards them.'

راگت سے محظوظ ہو کر 'having recreated himself with music.'

‘disturbed by the vicissitudes of fortune.’
 زمانے کے اِنْتِلاب سے گھبرا کر

‘he is weeping through fear of you.’
 آپ کے خوف سے روتا ہے

‘this alone is our real motive in issuing them.’
 اُنکے جا رہے کرنے سے یہی ہماری
 غرض ہے

4) The relation between the act and the *instrument* with which, or the *means* by which, it is performed: as—

‘nor would it open with any other key.’
 کسی اور کُلّجی سے نہ کھلتا

‘see with your own eyes.’
 اپنی آنکھ سے دیکھیے

‘that by their means he might make agricultural implements.’
 اُنکے وسیلے سے کِشتکاری کے
 آلات بنائے

‘fill the pot with water’ (whereas
 گھڑی میں پانی بھرو implies ‘pour
 water into the pot till it becomes
 full’).

When the noun in the Ablative denotes a *person*, and the verb is *neuter* or *causative*, the instrument passes into the *agent*: as

‘I have committed a fault’ (‘a fault
 مُجھ سے قصور ہوا ہے
 has proceeded from me’).

‘at night-time I was unable to make
 رات کو مجھ سے کچھ تدبیر نہ ہو
 سکی any arrangement.’

‘I am having my boy taught Arabic
 مولوی صاحب سے اپنی لڑکے کو
 عربی پڑھاتا ہوں by the Maulavī.’

Rem. In Hindī سے in connection with *passive* verbs also designates the agent of an act; as راون رام سے مارا گیا ‘Rāvan was killed by Rām: but this construction is not common in Urdū.

5) It is used with verbs signifying *to barter or exchange*, to indicate that with which exchange is made: as اِبْنِي 'I exchanged my goods for articles pertaining to that country' (*lit.* 'with my goods I exchanged articles pertaining to that country').

6) The *mode or manner* of an action: as

غُور سے مُلاحظہ فرمائیے 'be pleased to observe (them) with attention (attentively).'

اِنکسار سے پیش آتا ہے 'he conducts himself with humility.'

اِفراط سے پیدا ہوتا ہے 'it is produced in great abundance.'

7) The *quality* of a person or thing, in which case it is generally connected with an adjective: as

بدن سے ننگا 'naked of body (naked-bodied).'

ہاتھ پاؤں سے دُرست 'with sound legs' ('sound as regards the legs').

لین دین سے ہوشیار 'sharp (experienced) in business transactions.'

Rem. The Locative also may be used to indicate a quality: as جِسْم 'big in body (big-bodied);' حَرکت میں جَلَد 'nimble in motion, quick of movement.'

8) The *distance* from, or *proximity* to, a person, place, or thing, and *priority* in point of *time*, after words denoting *distance* or *priority*: as

یہاں سے بہت دُور ہے 'it is far from this place.'

وہاں سے نزدیک ایک شیر تھا 'there was a tiger not far from there.'

عُقل سے بعید ہے 'it is far from (diametrically opposed to) reason.'

اِعتِدال کے مرتبے سے آگے بڑھ جانا 'to pass beyond the stage (bounds) of moderation.'

شروع کرنے سے پہلے 'before, or previous to, beginning.'

اس (زمانے) سے پہلے or آگے 'previous to this time.'

Similarly اِندرگیا سے دروازی 'he went in through the door;'
دروازی سے باہر نکلا 'he came out through the door.'

9) The *difference* between two persons or things that are compared with each other: as

کہنے سے اور کرنے سے بڑا فرق ہے 'there is a great difference between saying and doing.'

اس سے اُس سے کیا مُشابہت ہے 'what resemblance is there between this and that?' ('none whatever; they are quite different.')

Hence the use of the Ablative in forming comparatives and superlatives.

Rem. The Locative may also be used to express the difference between two persons or things: *e.g.* کہنے میں اور کرنے میں بڑا فرق ہے; and similarly, it may be used to form comparatives and superlatives.

10) The relation which subsists between the *part* and the *whole*, the *species* and the *genus*, the *family* or *race* and a *member* thereof: as

ہماری گروہ سے تُم نہیں ہو 'you are not of our body.'

یہ شخص انگریزوں سے ہے 'this person is an Englishman (one of the English people).'

Rem. The compound postposition میں سے is also commonly employed to express the same relation: as ماں اُسکی علمائے دین زردشت کے 'his mother came of the stock of the doctors of the religion of Zoroaster.' Similarly, with the Locative postposition

alone: 'a sage of the family of Lökman was present.'
(مَوْجُود) تھا :

11) 'The definition or explanation of a *general* or *universal* by a *special* or *particular*: as

اُنکو خُدا نے سب طرح کی فراغت 'God has given him ease in every way,'—*e.g.* wealth, money, etc.
دی ہی رُوپی سے پیسے سے

وَد کس چیز سے فخر کرتے ہیں زور 'in respect of what thing do they pride themselves, — strength, courage, bravery ?
سے یا شجاعت سے یا دلیری سے

Rem. The Locative is often similarly used: *e.g.* تم کس چیز میں کم 'in respect of what thing are you wanting—power, money ?'
ہو زور میں یا زر میں

12) *Companionship* or *connection*, being equivalent to the postposition ساتھ with a genitive: as

روٹی سالن سے کھائی میں نے 'I ate bread with curry.'

تم بڑی سامان سے آئے 'you are come with much baggage.'

ہماری بلا سے (that) is connected with (concerns) my destiny.'

Rem. a. اس سے is sometimes used in the sense of پر or بعد: as اس سال 'from (upon, after) the passing of this year (when this year has passed).'

Rem. b. The Ablative postposition, like that of the Dative, is frequently not expressed, especially in idiomatic phrases: *e.g.* اس طرح 'in this way,' سب طرح 'in every way,' گھر گھر 'from house to house,' ہاتھوں ہاتھ 'from hand to hand,' نہ آنکھوں دیکھا نہ کانوں سنا 'neither seen with the eyes, nor heard with the ears;' and similarly after many nouns which are used as adverbial postpositions (*cf.* § 236 *et seq.*).

353. The postposition سے is often combined with the Locative postpositions میں, پر, which then have the force of substantives: as

گھر میں سے باہر نکلا 'he came out from the inside of the house (he came out of the house).'

گھر میں سے پکارا 'he called out from inside the house.'

انسان کی سب صفات میں سے سخاوت اشرف اور عمدہ تھی all human qualities, generosity is the noblest and the best' (cf. § 350, 10, *Rem.*).

وہ کوٹھنے پر سے گر پڑا 'he fell from (fell off) the top of the house.'

Similarly باہر سے 'from the outside,' 'from without,'
سامنے سے 'from the front,' 'from before.'

VII. THE LOCATIVE.

354. The Locative postpositions are میں and پر, which denote, as a rule, essentially distinct relations and ideas, and are therefore better noticed separately.

355. میں shows, in general, that one thing is actually in the midst of another, entirely surrounded by it. Hence—

1) It indicates *rest in a place* or *during a time*, and *motion into a place*: as گھر میں 'in the house,' اسی سال میں 'in this same year,' وہ شہر میں گیا 'he went into the city,' وہی چہتے ہیں میں واپس آتی ہیں 'they (the bees) return to the hive.' This signification is then transferred to the relation subsisting between any two things, the one of which is regarded as the place in which the other is, or happens, or into which it goes or is put: as

جوانی کے عالم میں 'in the season of youth.'

اُنئے میں 'in the mean time.'

تَبَوَّرِی دیر میں 'in a little while.'

مَشْرِقی جانب میں 'in an easterly direction.'

اُنکی سیرت میں گیسپی نرمی ہی 'what gentleness there is in their disposition!'

وہ ہوش میں آیا 'he came to (recovered) his senses.'

اُسکو پانی میں ملاو 'mix it in water' (or, according to our idiom, 'with water').

کہ نجاست وغیرہ میں آلودہ نہ ہوں 'that they will not become polluted (by being mixed up) in filth,' etc.

تُو خدا کے رستے میں خزانہ لٹایا 'you lavished treasure in the path of (for the sake of) God.'

مِٹھاری وغیرہ میں مُبتلا ہو جاتے ہیں 'they become entangled in (fall into) deceit,' etc.

اپنے کام میں مشغول (مصرف) ہیں 'they are occupied in (discharging) their duties.'

کہ اپنے آقا کی نیکنامی میں بدل سعی کریں 'that they labour earnestly in (behalf of) the good repute of their master.'

Rem. It is sometimes idiomatically omitted: وہ غصے ہوا 'he got into (a state of) anger (became angry);' وہ غضب ہوا 'he got into a rage;'; اُس سال 'in that year;'; اِن دنوں 'in these days.'

2) It is often used in the sense of the synonymous words *بیچ* and *درمیان*, signifying *among*, *between*, and hence occurs in connection with verbs signifying *to unite*, *reconcile*, *separate*, *discriminate*, and the like: e.g.

ملکہ اُن میں نہ تھی 'the princess was not among them.'

‘dissensions will surely spring up among them.’
 ضرور اُن میں جھگڑی پمدا دونے

‘he made peace between men and the Jinn.’
 اُنہوں نے آدمیوں اور جنوں میں صلح کروا دی

‘discriminate between truth and falsehood.’
 سچ اور جھوٹ میں امتیاز کرو

‘what difference is there between him and me?’
 اُس میں اور مجھ میں کیا فرق ہے

3) It indicates the subject or thought of conversation, that *in* which these move: as

‘he writes about (or respecting) himself.’
 وہ اپنے حال میں لکھتا ہے

‘(you) should consult (some one) about (or in) this case.’
 اس مقدمے میں مشورہ کرنا چاہئے

‘(I) thought much about this.’
 اس میں بہت سی فکری

Hence it is used in stating the subject of a book or chapter: as

‘On the consultation of (held by) the animals.’
 حیوانوں کے مشورے میں

‘On Morality.’
 نیک خوئی کے بیان میں

4) It is used (like the Ablative), in connection with an adjective, to indicate the *quality* of a person or thing: as

‘big in body.’
 جسم میں بڑا

‘quick or fleet in (of) action.’
 حرکت میں جلد

5) It is employed in the *comparison* of an object with several others, governing the thing with which comparison is made: as

‘he is the biggest of all the bees (is big compared with all the other bees).’
 وہ سب مکھیوں میں بڑا ہوتا ہے

ساتوں کواکب میں نیرِ اعظم ھی 'it is the greatest luminary of all the seven planets.'

6) It is used *absolutely* with an adjective or substantive (in the manner of the Ablative Absolute of the Latin), to express a *state* or *circumstance*: as

گویا جیتے جی بہشت میں گیا 'as if I entered Paradise alive' (*lit.* 'being in a living state').

In such cases the postposition میں and the participle ہوتے are generally understood.

7) It indicates the *price* or *cost* of a thing: as

یہ کتاب کتنے میں پڑی 'how much did this book cost?' (*cf.* § 326, 334).

8) It is used to define or explain a *general* or *universal* by a *special* or *particular*: as

تُم کس چیز میں کم ہو زور میرا
یا زور میں —power or wealth, etc.?' (*cf.* § 352, 11, and *Rem.*)

9) It denotes the relation subsisting between the *part* and the *whole*, the *species* and the *genus*, etc.: as

ایک حکیم لکمان کے خاندان میں (موجود) تھا 'a sage of the house of Lōkman was present' (*cf.* § 349, 10, and *Rem.*).

10) It is commonly used (instead of the Ablative, § 352, *e*) to indicate that one thing is *close by*, or *in contact with* another, and hence it is construed with verbs signifying to *adhere*, *attach* or *connect*: as

گوشت میں ھیری کے ٹکڑی لگ گئے 'the pieces of diamond stuck to the flesh.'

فعل میں علامت مذکر کی لاحق کرینگے 'they will attach the sign of the masculine to the verb.'

ڈول کو رتی میں باندھو 'fasten the bucket to the string.'

Rem. The postpositions میں and پر are sometimes interchanged :
 • ۹. (گھر میں = گھر پر 'the book is at home' (where گھر پر = میں);
 کتاب گھر پر ہے 'raiment on (his) body' (where پر = میں). Similarly
 درخت میں باندھو : کو : as 'tie (it) to the tree;' کتاب کتنے میں پڑی 'how much did the book
 cost?' But in such cases the postposition for which میں (or پر) stands
 may always take its place; nor is it at all necessary that a *verb of motion*
 should precede the noun governed by میں (or پر). We may
 say گھر کو گیا, meaning گھر میں گیا 'he went to his house;' but کو is
 not used for, and therefore could not take the place of پر or میں, in
 such sentences as, جب شہر کے دروازی پر گیا, 'when he came to the
 gate of the city;' مجھے ایک حویلی میں لے گیا, 'he took me into
 (inside) a house.'

556. پر (= اوپر), *over, above, upon*, is used—

1) In its original *local* sense, to denote *higher elevation*: as

چڑیا درخت پر بیٹھی تھی 'the bird was sitting on a tree.'

وہ گھوڑی پر سوار تھا 'he was mounted on a horse.'

خدا آسمان پر ہے 'God is in heaven (above).'

میں نے دیوار پر ایک تصویر دیکھی 'I saw a picture on the wall.'

The same sense is further exemplified in :

وہ تالاب کے کنارے پر کھڑا تھا 'he was standing by the side of the
 tank' (because a person standing by
 a tank rises *above* the level of it).

میں دروازی پر بیٹھا تھا 'I was seated at the door.'

کوس ایک پر 'at (the distance of) a kos or so.'

اگر اُنکے حال پر غور کیا جائے 'if their condition be reflected on.'

اعتدال پر نظر رکھنا 'to keep the eye on moderation.'

اپنے کاروبار پر خود توجہ کرتا ہے 'he attends to his affairs himself.'
 اپنی جان پر کھیلنا 'to stake life upon something (play for life).'

ہماری حال پر رحم کر 'have pity on our state.'

اُس پر عمل نہ کیا 'he did not act upon it.'

مجھ پر عجیب و غریب حوادث گذری 'wonderful and strange events befell me (passed over me).'

اپنی نادانی پر مطلع ہو کر 'having become acquainted with my folly.'

وہ بت معین پر 'at the appointed time.'

2) To indicate an act or feeling directed *against* an object, or *towards* it, with a view to getting possession of it: as

دشمن پر حملہ کیا 'they attacked the enemy (made an attack upon him).'

اُس پر ہجوم کیا '(they) rushed upon him.'

وہ مجھ پر غصے ہے 'he is angry with me.'

تجھ پر خفگی کا باعث 'the cause of displeasure with you.'

اُس پر گھوڑا دوڑایا 'he urged the horse against him.'

اُسکی کمائی پر قابض ہونا چاہینگے 'they will desire to lay hands on his earnings.'

اِس چند روز کی زندگی پر فریفتہ ہونا 'to be infatuated with this life of a few days.'

اُس پر عاشق ہوا 'he became enamoured of her.'

3) To indicate a *debt* that is due, and a *duty* that is incumbent *upon* one: as

مجھ پر قرض ہے 'I am in debt (a debt is upon me).'

‘it is incumbent on them.’ اُن پر فرض ھي

‘what God has made obligatory on them.’ جس چيز کو خُدا نے اُن پر واجب ڪيا

4) To denote the *distinction* or *superiority* that one thing enjoys *over* another: as

‘Nature precedes (is above) Art.’ طبعيت صنعت پر مُقدم ھي

‘they prefer the life of this world to the life to come.’ اِس دُنيا کي زِندگي کو آخِرَت پر ترجيح ديتے ھيں

5) To indicate the position in which (the ground *on* which) a person or thing stands in respect of *origin*, *custom*, *education*, *business*, etc.: *e.g.*

‘men conform to the ways of their kings.’ اَدَمِي اُنسے پادشاہوں کے طريقے پر ھوتے ھيں

‘man does not abide by his promise.’ اِنسان اُنسے قول قرار پر نہيں رھتا
‘government is based (turns) upon justice.’ سياست کا مدار عدالت پر ھي

‘every individual thing reverts to its original.’ ھر ايک چيز اُنسي اَصَل پر جاتي ھي

‘when desire exists in (shall conform to) a state of moderation.’ جب خواہش اِعْتِدال کي حالت پر ھو

6) To denote the *cause* of or *reason* for an action: as

‘on account of (through) that same covetousness (of mine).’ اُسي طمع پر

‘because of this saying of mine.’ ميري اِس کہنے پر

‘for what offence did you beat these poor creatures?’ کس تَنْصِير پر اِن عَرِيوں کو مارا

‘she used to be perplexed (to account) for my fulfilling my promise.’ وہ ميري قول قرار کے نہاھنے پر حيران رھتي

7) To show the *rule* or *standard* according to which something is done : as

مُنَاسِبَ طَورِ پَر 'after a proper manner.'

اِپُنے مَعْمُولِ پَر 'according to his wonted custom.'

حِکْمَتِ کِے قَاعِدِی پَر 'according to the rules of philosophy.'

8) It is sometimes used as equivalent to the Persian phrases *بَا وَجُودِ بَا وَصَف* = *in spite of, notwithstanding* : as

اِتْنی دَانائی پَر 'notwithstanding so much wisdom.'

اُسکی اِس خَبَر داری پَر 'in spite of this carefulness of his.'

Rem. a. The postposition ساتھ 'along with' is also employed in this sense, and when so used always *precedes* the pronoun it governs in the genitive : *e.g.* وہ آپ چھوٹا اور ناتواں ہو. 'notwithstanding this (fact) that he himself be small and powerless.'

Rem. b. پَر, like the postpositions of the other cases, is often idiomatically omitted : *e.g.* اِسی وقت میں اُسکی نظر 'at this same time;' چڑھ چکا ہوں 'I have fallen under its (evil) eye (it, the snake, has marked me out for its victim);' وہ میری سر ہونے لگا 'he began setting upon me' (*lit.* 'falling on my head'). In every instance however of a postposition being understood, the noun governed by it (if capable of inflection) takes the inflected form.

Rem. c. تَک or تِلک *to, up to, as far as*, is erroneously included by some grammarians among the postpositions of the Locative. It designates, properly, *the limit attained by a thing, or an action*, whether that limit be included or not; as پِشاور سے کُلکٹہ تَک 'from Peshāwar to Kalkatta (Calcutta);' میری دُکان تَک آنا 'come as far as my shop;' یہاں تَک 'to such an extent, to this degree.' If it be desired to indicate that both limits are actually included, the past conjunctive participle لے signifying *taking, including*, is put after the noun in the Ablative; as ڈال سے لے پات تَک 'from the branches to the leaves

inclusive. *Tak* is sometimes used in the sense of کو and کے لیے: as
 اور زمین و باغ حاصل کرنے کے لیے مدتوں لڑی۔ لوگوں کے حق غصب
 and your 'کیے۔ جعلسازیاں کیں۔ فریب دیے۔ سب آج تک تھے
 contending (*lit.* in that you contended) for long days to acquire lands
 and gardens, (your) violently usurping the rights of (other) people,
 (your) forgeries, (your) frauds—all were unto (for) this day.'

VIII. THE VOCATIVE.

357. The Vocative case indicates the object addressed: it therefore stands in no connection with other words in a sentence. Its position is usually at the beginning of the sentence.

Rem. According to the view of native grammarians however, what we call the Vocative is really the indirect object of a suppressed verb: *e.g.* اے آدمی is regarded by them as equivalent to پکارتا ہوں آدمی کو 'I call the man.'

358. The Vocative is often introduced by an interjection: as دوست 'O friend!' اور لڑکے 'O boy!' but if no particular stress is laid on the address, the interjection may be omitted: *e.g.* لڑکے 'boy!' صاحبو 'gentlemen!' یارو 'O friends!'

359. An adjective (genitive, possessive pronoun) qualifying a noun in the Vocative is also put in the Vocative: as اے میری لعل 'O my darling!' اے خُدا کے بندے 'O servant of God!'

360. Some nouns occur chiefly in the Vocative case: as بھائی 'O mother!' بھائی 'brother!' and بھائی 'sister!' ماما 'father!' ماما 'O friend or master!' The last of these occurs in other cases also: *e.g.* ماما بی بی دونوں تھے 'both husband and wife were (there).'

CHAPTER VIII.

ADJECTIVES.

I. THE ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE.

361. The ordinary rules for the construction of the Adjective have been laid down in the preceding paragraphs (274, 280—282, 291, 292, 294, 349, 350, 359). The following are of a more special character.

362. Two adjectives that are attributives to one substantive are commonly connected by asyndeton, after the manner of substantives and verbs: *e.g.* پہتے پُرانے کپڑے ‘ragged old garments;’ چھوٹے بڑے لڑکوں سے ‘from small (and) big boys.’

363. An adjective (generally *masculine*) may be used without a substantive to denote things or persons: *e.g.*

زمانے کے بھلے بُری سے ‘from the good and evil of the time.’

عقلمندوں کے نزدیک ‘in the opinion of the wise’

بعض بیماروں کا یہ حال ہوتا ہے ‘the condition of certain sick persons is such.’

چھوٹے بڑوں نے خوشیاں کیں ‘small and great made rejoicings.’

364. *a.* The adjective پُر ‘full,’ approximates closely to the character of a postposition. It governs a noun in the Formative, and either precedes or follows it, more commonly the latter: *e.g.*

مَقْدُورِ بِهَر (or مَقْدُور = بِهَر مَقْدُور, or حَتَّى الْمَقْدُور) 'to the utmost (full extent) of one's power, as far as possible.'

عُمَرِ بِهَر (= تَا عُمَر) 'in (for) a whole life-time.'

بِيتِ بِهَر 'a bellyful.'

b. Its signification, when it comes after the substantive, is sometimes that of *as far* or *much as*, or *sufficient for* (= the Persian وار, see § 91, 3, *Rem.*): *e.g.*

كُوسِ بِهَر 'about, or as far as a *kos*' (whereas
بِهَر كُوس would always imply 'a
full *kos*').

كُ جُوتِه اُس مِیں گُوتِی بِهَر نہ ہو that there be not as much as a *kaurī*
(not a particle) of falsehood in it.'

تُوبِی بِهَر کپڑا 'cloth sufficient for a cap.'

365. a. The adjective سا 'like' is placed *after* nouns (substantives, adjectives, pronouns) to denote similitude, and inflects like the genitive case-sign to agree in gender and number with the object compared: as

شیرِسا مَرَد 'a lion-like man' ('a man bold as a lion').

بَری سِی لڑکی 'a fairy-like girl.'

کُچھ شِی کَالِی سِی نظر پڑتی هِی 'some black-like (or blackish) object
is visible.'

Rem. An attributive adjective or a demonstrative pronoun may precede the substantive, the pronoun (see next para.) being put in the Formative: *e.g.*

مَسْت هَاتِہِی سا 'like a raging elephant;'

اُس سَوَدَاگرِسا 'like that merchant.'

b. When it follows a pronoun, it governs it in the Formative (*cf.* § 376): *e.g.*

تُجھ سا آدَمِی سَلَمَنَد 'a wise man like thee.'

کے مجھ سے مُردے کو زندہ کیا 'that you restored to life a dead man like me.'

تین درویش مجھ سے دکھے 'three darweshes afflicted like thee.'

c. The Genitive, inasmuch as it possesses the character of (and is by origin) an Adjective, may also be followed by سا, forming with it a kind of compound adjective: e.g.

شیر کی سی صورت 'a form like a tiger's' ('a tiger-like form').

اُسکا حال بدنی ریاضت کا سا ہی 'its case is similar to that of bodily exercise.'

پاؤں بگڑیوں کے سے 'feet like goats'.

عقل و تمیز ہماری سی 'understanding and judgment like ours.'

d. The compound with سا may also be employed adverbially and substantively: as

سب آدمی ایک سے نہیں ہوتے 'all men are not alike.'

تُو بھی مُردہ سا پڑا تھا 'you also were lying like a corpse.'

دُور سے ایک شعلہ سا نظر آیا 'something like a light (a light-like) appeared at a distance.'

اُسکا رنگ و روغن کچھ کا کچھ 'his colour and complexion became something quite different, and shed something like the slough of a snake' (lit. 'a snake-slough-like').

Rem. In place of سا, the indeclinable adjective سار occurs occasionally in the older literature: e.g. تین درویش مجھ سار دکھے. We may here point out that instead of مجھ سار دکھے, the reading of Forbes's *Bāg ʾ bahār* (ed. 1856, page 68) is مجھ سار رکھے, which is absolutely meaningless. At page 203 also of the same edition we find میرا سا دکھیا, which is very extraordinary; for it is evident that the

speaker means to say "afflicted like me," and therefore the reading should be *مُجھ سا دُکھیا*. Some grammarians, strange to say, receive Forbes' version as correct, and translate it "distress like mine." We need hardly point out that *دُکھیا* can never mean "distress," and that if the speaker had meant to imply "distress like mine," he would have said *میرا سا دُکھ*.

366. The adverbial affix *سا*, which is added to *adjectives alone* (most commonly to adjectives of *quantity*), and indicates a *great* or *small degree* of a quality, etc., is generally confounded with the *adjective of similitude*, although the two words are quite distinct both as to origin and signification (§§ 48, 49, and 50, *Rem.*). As both are similarly constructed, it may sometimes happen that the context alone must be looked to, to determine whether *similitude* or *degree* is implied; but this can only occur when the adjective to which *سا* is joined is one of *quality*: *e.g.* *کالا سا* may signify *black-like*, or *blackish*, or *very black*, though the last is the more common signification. When however it is connected with an adjective of *quantity*, *سا* is almost invariably the *adverb of degree*: *e.g.* *بہت سے گھوڑی* 'a great many horses;' *تھوڑی سے قصور پر* 'for a *trifling* fault;' *ذرہ سی بات* 'a *trivial* matter.'

367. *a.* The rules for the formation of comparatives and superlatives, and the various methods of intensifying an adjective, have been laid down in §§ 47 and 48.

b. Persian and Arabic comparatives and superlatives are of common occurrence: *e.g.* *بہتر مصلحت* 'the better (or best) course;' *اَدْنِیٰ توجہ سے* 'with the least attention.' The Arabic superlative, whether constructed with a masculine or feminine noun in Urdū, always takes the *masculine form*.

II. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

368. The following rules relate to the Cardinal numbers alone ; there being nothing special in the construction of the Ordinals beyond what has been already noticed (§ 55 *et seq.*).

369. The cardinal numbers usually precede the noun with which they are connected, and this may be put in the singular or the plural, according to the following rules:

1) If the noun denote *money, measure or quantity, time, distance, direction, manner*, or if it be one which is used as a *collective numeral* (like the English *brace, pair, head*, etc.), as جوڑا 'a pair,' راس 'a rein,' زنجیر 'a chain,' قطار 'a string or file,' it is commonly put in the *singular* ; but the verb forming its predicate is generally plural : *e.g.*

- ایک ہزار اشرفی 'one thousand *ashrafī* (gold-mohurs)'
 چار سو روپی کی تھیلی 'a bag of four thousand rupees.'
 بیس گز کا تھان 'a piece (of cloth) of twenty yards.'
 دس بیگے کا کھیت 'a field of ten *bighās*.'
 دو چار گھڑی کے بعد 'after two or three *gharīs*.'
 دو تین دن میں 'in the course of two or three days.'
 تین حقے میں 'in three weeks.'
 تین مہینے تک 'for the space of three months.'
 ساٹھ برس تک 'up to (the age of) sixty years.'
 تین طرف سے 'from three sides.'
 دو جانب سے 'from two directions.'
 دو طرح سے 'by two means.'
 چار قسم کی 'of four kinds.'

پندرہ سَی زنجیرِ فیل 'fifteen hundred chain of elephants' (compare the English "fifteen hundred *head* of cattle").

نوسو قطار بارِ برداری کے اونتوں کی 'nine hundred string (file) of burden-bearing camels.'

دس راس اسبِ عراقی 'ten rein (*i.e.* ten) 'Irāk horses.'

Rem. The plural also is occasionally used when the noun denotes money: as چالیس اشرفیاں 'forty *ashrafīs*;' and in this case, when the noun is put in the singular, the verb also is sometimes singular, اترہائی سو اشرفی تھی 'there were (*lit.* was) two hundred and fifty *ashrafī*.'

2) In all other cases the plural is more commonly employed, though the noun may be put in the singular: the predicate however is usually put in the plural: as

لاکھ گھوڑی 'a lakh of horses.'

آدمی میں دو چیز ہیں 'there are two things (*lit.* thing) in man.'

ایک سو ایک مرد سے 'with one hundred and one men.'

دو چار باتیں 'two or three (a few) words.'

چار پانچ کشتیاں 'four or five trays.'

چار چیزوں کی تلاش 'quest of four things.'

دو سطر میں لکھیں 'he wrote two lines.'

دو بوندیں آنسو کی ٹپک پڑیں 'two drops of tears fell.'

اُتالیس گولیاں (گولی or) دہیں 'there are thirty-nine bullets.'

370. The higher cardinal numbers, when used as *collective substantives*, are put in the Formative plural, and the noun denoting the things thus vaguely enumerated

follows in the plural or the singular, according to the preceding rules: *e.g.*

سِکڑوں لڑائیاں 'hundreds of fights' (properly, 'fights in hundreds').

ہزاروں ہاتھی 'thousands of elephants.'

لاکھوں روپی کے شُکھے 'curiosities (to the value) of lakhs of rupees.'

لاکھوں (آدمی) اُسکے ظلم سے مرینگے 'lakhs (of men) will die in consequence of his tyranny.'

371. Similarly when the cardinal numbers (generally) are connected with some *definite* or *specific* object, they are used as *collective substantives*, and put in the Formative plural, to indicate that *all* or *the whole* of the objects enumerated are *included*; while the noun denoting these objects may be put in the singular (*cf.* § 369, 2): *e.g.*

چالیسوں بندر 'the whole of the forty monkeys' (before mentioned).

چاروں فقیروں (or فقیر) نے 'by all of the four mendicants.'

دونوں بادشاہوں (or بادشاہ) میں 'between both of the two kings.'

میری دونوں آنکھوں میں 'into both my (two) eyes.'

دونوں حالتیں خرابی کی ہیں 'both of the two states are (states) of evil.'

ساتوں کواکب میں 'of all the seven planets.'

آٹھوں پہر 'the whole of the eight watches' (into which a day of twenty-four hours is divided, and hence) 'the whole twenty-four hours.'

چاروں طرف سے 'from all the four quarters' (the cardinal points), 'from all sides.'

پانچوں وقت کی نماز 'the prayers of all the five (appointed) times.'

Rem. These numeral forms appear to perplex the grammarians in no small degree. Thus we are told by one of our most recent instructors that "in the oblique cases plural, when the numerals are specific, the numeral or the noun, or both the numeral and the noun, are put in the oblique form: (e.g.) چالیس دروازوں سے (or) چالیسوں دروازی سے = 'through the forty doors.' But when the sense is not specific, the noun is put in the nominative plural: (e.g.) تین دن کے عرصے میں means 'for the space of three days;' but تینوں دن کے عرصے میں or تین دنوں کے عرصے میں means 'for the space of the three days.'" These rules, we may observe, are essentially wrong, and betray a total misconception of the nature of the numeral in the cases compared. In the expressions تین دن کے عرصے and چالیس دروازوں سے (the signification of which differs in no respect from that of چالیس دروازی سے and تین دنوں کے عرصے), the numeral is used as an *adjective*; whereas in the expressions چالیسوں دروازی (or) دروازوں سے, etc., the numeral is used as a *collective substantive*, signifying 'including the whole total of forty,' or 'in their whole total of forty,' etc.: thus چالیس دروازوں سے (or) دروازی سے means 'through forty,' or 'the forty doors,' according to the context; but چالیسوں دروازی (or) دروازوں سے signifies 'through the doors in their whole total of forty,' or 'through all the forty doors.'

CHAPTER IX.

PRONOUNS.

I. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

372. The personal pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the subjects of *personal* verbs, and are even often understood in other instances. But they must be expressed where perspicuity, contrast, or emphasis is required. They generally precede the verb; but they sometimes follow (commonly in the Imperative), especially in poetry: *e.g.*

اُسے چھوڑ کر کیونکر جاؤں 'how shall I leave it and go?'

میں کروں 'should I do (it)?'

دانشمندوں کا قول یاد کرتا 'I used to call to mind the saying of the wise.'

عجب نادان ہیں وہ 'rare fools are they.'

373. Two or more pronouns forming the subjects of one predicate are arranged in the order of the persons (§ 290). The same order is commonly (though not invariably) observed when the pronouns are in an inflected case: *e.g.*

کہ میری تیری وہی پتا ہووی 'that that same may be a sign
between me and thee.'

میری تمہاری ہنسائی 'the causing (of people) to laugh at
me and you.'

But اُس میں اور مجھ میں کیا 'what difference is there between
فرق ہے him and me?'

374. The Genitives of the pronouns are properly possessive adjectives in the Nominative (§ 154), and are inflected accordingly. They are however frequently used as objective genitives: as

تُمہاری تلاش میں 'in quest of you.'

اُسکی تلاش میں 'in quest of him or it.'

میرا دیکھنا منکوس جائے میں 'they consider the sight of me unlucky.'

ہماری پکرنے کو ہاتھ چلائے 'he groped with his hands to catch (for the catching of) us.'

375. *a.* The place of the Accusative of the personal pronouns (including the Demonstrative, when it is used for the pronoun of the *third* person) is supplied by the Dative, either of the two forms of which may be used as a Dative or an Accusative; but the form which takes the postposition کو is that more commonly used for the Accusative: *e.g.*

ہماری آقا سِندباد نے تجھکو بلایا ہے 'our master Sindbād has called thee.'

کپڑا منہ سے سرکا کر مجھکو دیکھا 'she moved the cloth from (her) face and looked at me.'

تجھکو وہاں پہنچا دیا 'he went there with you' ('brought you there').

اُنکو کھا گئے 'they ate them up.'

فقیر اُسکو دیکھ کر سن ہوا 'this *fakīr* became paralyzed on seeing her.'

تجھے پہچان کر 'having recognized thee.'

تاکہ مجھے دیکھیں 'in order that they might see me.'

مجھے مَوّا ہوا جان کر 'deeming me dead.'

اُسے چھوڑ کر کیونکر جاؤں 'how shall I leave it and go?' (*lit.* 'go, having left it').

اُنہیں دیکھتے ہی 'on the instant of seeing them.'

b. If the Dative and the Accusative of a pronoun occur in the same sentence, the Accusative takes the postposition کو, and the Dative the second form : as

اُسکو فلانے صاحب نے مجھے دیا 'a certain gentleman gave it (or that) to me.'

c. Similarly the second form of the Dative is used for the Dative or Accusative of the pronoun if, in the same sentence, the direct or indirect object of the verb is a noun constructed with کو: *e.g.*

توہیں خدا کو سونپا 'I have entrusted you to God.'

قاضی نے لڑکے کو اُسے سپرد کیا 'the Kāzī made the child over to her.'

376. a. When a personal pronoun in any case except the Nominative and Vocative is connected with an attributive adjective, it precedes the same in the Formative, and the case-sign is added to the adjective: *e.g.*

تُو مجھ کم بخت نے 'by wretched thee' ('thou wretched one').

مجھ خانہ خراب کی حقیقت 'the true story of ruined me.'

مجھ عاجز کو 'to lowly me.'

b. Excepting the Agent case and the Genitive, as well as the Nominative, the same construction obtains when the emphatic particle *ہی* or *ی* (plural *ہیں* or *ہیں*) is added to the pronouns, that of the *third* person included: *e.g.*

مجھ ہی کو دیا 'I gave it to you' (and not to any one else).

مجھ ہی سے مانگے 'let him ask me' (properly, 'let him ask it from me').

اُسی کا کام ہی 'it is his work alone.'

But میں نے ہی یہ کام نہیں کیا 'I alone did not do this.'

میرا ہی طریقہ ٹھیک ہے 'my course is the correct one.'

یہ مال تیرا ہی ہے 'this property is yours.'

c. The Adjective of Similitude سا (as has been shown in § 365) always *follows* the personal pronouns, and governs them in the Formative. It rarely occurs however in connection with the pronoun of the third person. In the pronominal adjectives ویسا, ایسا, the pronoun is *demonstrative*, not *personal*, the signification being not *like him*, or *it*, but *like this*, or *that*, *such* (cf. § 156 and *Rem.*).

d. The postposition پاس, which governs both the Formative and the Genitive of substantives (§ 239), may likewise govern the Formative or the Genitive of pronouns: e.g. 'near me,' اُس پاس 'near him.' In both cases however the Genitive is the more common construction.

Rem. The plural pronoun ہم is often used for the singular میں by persons of rank or position when addressing inferiors; and the plural تُم is commonly employed in place of the singular تُو. These forms being thus used in the singular, their place as plurals is often supplied by the expressions ہم لوگ 'we people,' 'we;' تُم لوگ 'you people,' 'you.' The use of تُو 'thou,' though common among the vulgar, is restricted by the educated to the purpose of indicating *contempt*, *affection* (chiefly in addressing children, or old and trusty servants), or *reverence* (whence its employment in addresses to the Deity). The educated, when conversing with equals, generally use the singular pronouns میں and آپ for 'I' and 'you' ('thou'); but تُم may be used instead of آپ, if the two persons are intimate friends. The respectful forms for the third person *singular* in any of the inflected cases except the Agent, are اُنکا, اُنکو, etc.; as اُنکا حکم 'his order;' but in the case of

the Agent the form is اُنہوں نے کہا (e.g. 'he said'), and not اُن نے, this being now the ordinary form of the singular Agent (cf. §§ 140, 141).

II. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

377. The Demonstrative pronouns are local adjectives; but, by omitting the object defined, they may be used as nouns: as یہ کیا ہیں 'what are these?' سُنکر 'hearing this.'

378. There is no personal pronoun of the third person in Hindūstānī: its place is generally supplied by the remote demonstrative وہ, *that, he, she, it*. But if it be desired to distinguish between a near and a remote object, the pronoun یہ 'this' is used to indicate the nearer object. When the demonstratives are used as personal pronouns, the case-signs are added immediately to them; but when they are employed adjectively, defining a noun in an inflected case, they are put in the Formative, but the postposition of the case is added to the substantive (cf. § 141): e.g.

یہ آدمی کیا کہتا ہے 'what does this man say?'

وہ شخص میری پاس بیٹھا تھا 'that person was seated near me.'

اس کام سے باز آ 'refrain from this business.'

اُس غار کے پاس 'near that cave.'

وہ مجھے دیکھیگا 'he will see me.'

اُسکا کچھ اِعتِبار نہیں 'there is no believing him (this man near).'

اُسکو میری پاس لاؤ 'bring him to me.'

Rem. a. The forms **یہ** and **وہ** are both singular and plural in Urdū (§ 141, *Rem. c.*): *e.g.* **وہ کہتے ہیں** 'they say.'

Rem. b. The rules laid down in §§ 373-376, apply also to the pronoun of the third person.

379. The Demonstrative **یہی** 'this same, this very' (= **یہ** + the emphatic particle **ی**, or, in the plural, **یں**), refers emphatically to an object close at hand, or just spoken of, or about to be mentioned; **وہی** 'that same, that very,' to a more remote, or a previously mentioned object: *e.g.*

ہماری طالع میں یہی لکھا ہے کہ 'this same is written in our destiny
روز لگڑیاں توڑیں (namely) that we shall break
 (gather) sticks every day.'

اسی طرح اشرفیاں کے لالچ سے 'in this same (afore-mentioned)
 manner, through greed of *ashrafis*.'

ہر سال انہیں دنوں میں 'every year in these same days.'
وہی عورت کہنے لگی 'the same (afore-mentioned) woman
 began to say.'

نوکر چاکر اسی صاحب کے 'the servants of the same (afore-mentioned) gentleman.'

انہیں سب تاجروں کے ساتھ 'along with all those same (afore-mentioned) merchants.'

1 Similarly in Sindhi **ہی** 'this' or 'these;' **ہو** 'that' or 'those.' The use of these forms in the plural is termed "ungrammatical" by a recent writer on Urdū grammar. The same thoughtless remark was made some years ago in one of the notes to an English translation of a well-known Urdū work, and happening to fall under the eye of a native scholar in India, called forth the following: "We shall ere long, I suppose, have English gentlemen coming out to India to teach us how to speak and write our own tongue correctly and idiomatically." It may perhaps induce these gentlemen to change their opinion on this subject if they learn that the original plural form of **جو** also was **جے** (as it is now in Marāṭhī and Sindhi), and that this ultimately gave place to **جو**, as **وی**, in Urdū, is giving place to **وہ**.

380. *a.* In the Accusative, the Demonstratives, when used as adjectives or substantives defining a thing, may take the Nominative forms **یہ** and **وہ**, if there be no stress laid on them, or the object defined by them has not been previously mentioned; but these forms can never occur when the Demonstratives are used as personal pronouns: *e.g.*

یہ گتھری کہاں پہنچاؤں 'where shall I take this bundle?'

وہ مال کئی دن کپاؤنگا 'for how many days shall I subsist on that money?'

یہ سنکر 'having heard this.'

میں وہ تجھے دوں 'I will give that (not *it*) to thee.'

b. But if the Demonstratives refer to an animate object, or to a thing which it is desired to bring conspicuously forward (*cf.* § 346, 2, 3), they take the inflected form (§ 378), and the postposition **کو** is added to the noun defined by them: *e.g.*

اس لڑکے کو کیوں مارتے ہو 'why are you beating this boy?'

اس کتے کو لے جاؤ 'take this dog away.'

اُس کتاب کو میں نے پھاڑ ڈالا 'I tore that book.'

c. The use of one or other of the two forms of the Dative-Accusative (*viz.* **اُسے** or **اُسکو**, **اُنہیں** or **اُنکو**) of the personal pronouns has been explained in § 375.

Rem. If the Demonstrative defines a noun followed by the adjective of similitude **سا**, it takes the inflected form (§ 365): as **اُس سوداگر سا** 'like that merchant.'

381. The Demonstratives are occasionally used in the sense of the pronominal adjectives **ایسا**, **وِیسا**, derived from them. In such cases an explanatory or descriptive

sentence introduced by the explicatory particle **کے** 'that,' generally follows: as

روشنی کا یہ عالم تھا کہ شبِ قدر
کو وہاں قدر نہ تھی the Night of Power had (would
have had) no power (consideration)
there.'

III. THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

382. There are in Urdū two sorts of relative sentences; namely 1) such as are introduced by the Relative pronoun **جو** 'who, which, what,' etc.; and 2) such as are annexed to an immediately preceding definite or indefinite noun without the aid of a Relative pronoun. A sentence of the former kind is called **جُمْلہ مَوْصُول** a *conjunctive sentence*; of the latter kind **جُمْلہ وَصْفِی** or **نَعْت** a *descriptive* or *qualificative sentence* (see § 276, *Rem.*).

1) THE CONJUNCTIVE SENTENCE.

383. The Relative pronoun **جو** is used both substantively and adjectively: it may moreover be definite or indefinite; as **جو آیا** 'he who came,' or 'whoever came.'

384. *a.* When the Relative is used as an indefinite substantive, its clause is generally followed by one introduced by the correlative or determinative pronoun **سو** or **وُسُو** (more commonly the latter, which is often more emphatic than **سو**), which takes up the Relative, the two pronouns agreeing in gender and number, but each standing in the case

determined by its relation to its own clause. The correlative however is often omitted: *e.g.*

جو هو سو هو 'happen what may' (*lit.* 'whatever shall happen, that (or it) shall happen.')

جِسْمِیں تُمہاری خوشی ہو سو کرو 'do that wherein your pleasure consists' ('do whatever you please').

جو چُسْت و چالاک تھے وہ جلدی سے پنسوٹیوں پر گونگ کر سوار ہوئے 'those who were smart and active quickly jumped into the boats and went on board (the ship).'

جو آیا (وہ) مالا مال ہو کر گیا 'whoever came went away laden (with treasure).'

Rem. Compare with the Urdū جو-سو or وہ, the Sanskrit यद् *yad*—तद् *tad*, and the Latin *qui*—*is*, or *idem*.

b. The Relative (and, as the case may be, the correlative) may be repeated for the sake of emphasis (تاکید, see *Rem.* § 276): *e.g.*

جو جو چیزیں مناسب اور فائدہ مند سمجھیں خریدیں 'whatever articles I considered necessary and advantageous (those) I purchased.'

c. The indefinite pronouns جو کوئی 'whoever,' 'whatsoever,' are also constructed like the Relative; and the place of the following determinative pronoun may be supplied by one of the pronominal adjectives ویسا, ایسا *e.g.*

جس کیسی کو اللہ نے بہت سی نعمتیں عطا کی ہیں اُسکو لائق ہی کہ شکر ادا کری 'to whomsoever God has given a great many good things, it behoves him to render thanks.'

‘*ان پتولوں کی پتیوں سے جو کچھ* whatever they suck from the petals
چاٹتی ہیں وہ لعاب دار شیرہ of those flowers is reproduced in
ہو کر نکلتا ہے the form of a viscous and sweet
 substance (called honey).’

‘*جو کچھ اُسکا فائدہ بیان کیا تھا* whatever (all that) he had described
ویسا ہی دیکھا as its beneficial effects, exactly
 such I found (it to be).’

385. But if the relative clause is used adjectively (as the *صلہ*) to describe or define a preceding substantive, the construction is similar to that of English: the Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, the concord in gender (since the pronoun has no distinct forms for masc. and fem.) being indicated by the predicate of the relative clause. The case of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause: *e.g.*

‘*ایک حکیم جو پرانے خط کے پڑھنے* a sage, who was skilled in decipher
میں ہوشیار تھا ing old characters (or writings).’

‘*یہ ایک اندھیر ہے جسکا کچھ* this is an outrage for which no
تدارک نہ ہوتا punishment is inflicted.’

‘*یہ دولت خانہ سیند باد کا ہے جس نے* this mansion is Sindbād's, who
جہاں کے تمام دریاؤں کا سفر کیا has made the voyage of all the
ہے seas in the world.’

‘*ان میں ایک پادشاہ ہوتا ہے جسکو* there is (they have) a king among
یعسوب کہتے ہیں them, whom they call Ya'sūb.’

386. *a.* The antecedent, especially if it be an indefinite substantive, is often attracted (in the same case as the Relative adjective) into the relative clause, and the construction is then the same as that explained in § 384: *e.g.*

جو پادشاہ اُن پر عمل نہ کری
اُنکی سُلطنت ہمیشہ مُتزلزل
رہی

'the king who (= whatever king) does not act upon them, his dominion will ever remain in a tottering condition.'

جو لوگ حاضر تھے اُن میں سے
کوئی اُس خط کو نہ پڑھ سکتا تھا

جِن تا جِروں کی دیانت اور امانت
پر اِعتِمال تھا اُنکے ساتھ ایک
اچھے جہاز پر سوار ہوا

'none of the people present could read that character.'

'I embarked in a good ship along with some (those) merchants in whose honesty and integrity I had confidence.'

جس شخص کے سینے میں کینہ جم
گیا ہے اُس سے بجز ضرر کے اور
کچھ فائدہ حاصل نہ ہوگا

'no benefit—naught but harm (*lit.* no benefit save harm) will be received from the person in whose bosom rancour has established itself.'

جس نوکر کو مُقرب بنائیے اُنکی
نسبت شکایت نہ سنیے

'listen to no complaint against the servant whom you make a favourite (or confidant).'

جس وقت معلوم ہو کہ فلاں شخص
چل خور ہے اُسی وقت اُسکے
دفعیے کی تدبیر کری

'when (*lit.* at which time) it becomes known (to the king) that such and such a person is a tale-bearer, let him immediately (*lit.* at that very time) take steps to remove him (from his place).'

b. If the Relative be connected with a substantive denoting *place*, *direction*, etc., one of the corresponding pronominal adverbs (§ 224) will take the place of the determinative pronoun: as

جس طرف سے آیا اُدھر ہی کو چلا

'he went in the same direction from which he came.'

جس درخت کے نیچے ٹوکھا ہوا ہے 'a water-pot filled with gold mohurs
یہاں ایک آفتاب اشرفیوں سے بھرا is buried here under the tree
ہوا گڑا دی where you are standing.'

387. If emphasis is laid on the Demonstrative clause, it generally precedes the Relative: as

پھر اُس مکھی کو مار ڈالتا جو بدبو 'and then he kills the bee that brings
اپنے ساتھ لاتا ہے the offensive smell with it.'

بے فکری میں وہی لوگ زندگی 'those people alone pass their lives
بسر کرتے ہیں جو احمق اور in unconcern who are foolish and
غافل ہیں thoughtless.'

اور وہ تدبیر جس سے میں یہاں تک 'and I explained in their presence
پہنچا اُنکے سامنے بیان کیا the expedient by (means of) which
I got there (*lit.* here).'

Rem. In sentences like the above the native grammarians regard the position of the relative clause as in no wise different from what it is in the sentences noticed under § 386. For example: analyzing the two sentences وہ کتاب جو تم نے لی تھی, etc., and جو کتاب کہ تم نے لی تھی, they say that, in the first, the *conjunctive noun* (اسم موصول) is وہ کتاب, and the *conjunctive clause* (صلہ) جو تم نے لی تھی; and that, in the second, the *conjunctive noun* is وہ کتاب, and the *silu*, جو تم نے لی تھی.

388. a. The Relative may be used both as subject and object in one and the same sentence, which then becomes doubly correlative. This construction is always employed in such sentences as in English contain both an indefinite Relative and an indefinite Pronoun. For

example, “*whatever* came into the mind *of any one*,” would in Urdū be expressed thus: “*whatsoever* came into the mind *of whomsoever*.” In such cases the Correlative pronouns are, one or both, frequently omitted in Urdū: *e.g.*

جو جس کے ہاتھ پڑا الٹ کیا ‘*whatsoever* fell into any one’s (lit. *whomsoever’s*) hands, he carried off.’

جسکے واسطے جو صورت مناسب ‘*whatsoever* form He considered fit
جانی عطا کی for any one soever, He bestowed (it).’

جسکے واسطے جو کچھ مناسب تھا ‘*whatsoever* was proper for any one
عطا ہوا ہے soever has been bestowed.’

b. A pronominal adverb derived from the Relative pronoun may even take the place of one of the Relatives: *e.g.*

اور جہاں سے جو کچھ پاتے ہیں ‘and *whatsoever* they find any
آتے ہیں where they bring thence’ (lit. ‘and
whencesoever *whatsoever* they find
they bring’).

جو جیسا کریگا ویسا پاویگا ‘as any one does so will he receive.’

Rem. a. This construction, it may be observed, is derived from the Sanskrit: *e.g. yad rochate yasmāi*, ‘*whatsoever* is pleasing to *whomsoever*,’ or ‘*whatever* pleases any one;’ and, as might be expected, it is found in the Persian also: *e.g. ہرچہ سزاوار بود بخشیدند* ‘*whatsoever* was suitable to any one has been bestowed.’

The Relative is never employed in connection with the Indefinite pronouns, except to form the compound indefinite pronouns جو کوئی (Formative جس کسی), and جو کچھ. If in the first of the above examples we were to substitute کسی کے for جسکے جو would no longer be a Relative pronoun, but a conjunction, and the meaning of

the sentence would be "if it fell into the hands of any one, etc." The Relative pronoun however partakes considerably of the character of the Indefinite pronoun, and frequently implies a *condition* also, thus taking the signification of the conjunction جو, 'if,' as جس صورت میں (= اگر کسی صورت میں) وہ لوگ خائن ہوئے۔ اور بادشاہ کو اُنکے 'if in any case (*lit.* in the case in which) they turned traitors, and the king had confidence in their statements, then many innocent people would (*lit.* will) lose their lives.'

389. The relative adjectives and adverbs also are used correlatively, in the manner of the relative pronoun: *e.g.*

جیسا کیا ویسا پایا 'as he (or I) did, so he (or I) received.'

جہاں گل تھاں خار 'where the rose (is) there (also is) the thorn.'

جتنا چاہیئے اتنا لے لو 'take as much as is necessary (as you want).'

جب تلک سانس تب تلک آس 'while there is life there is hope.'

2) THE QUALIFICATIVE SENTENCE.

390. The qualificative or descriptive sentence is annexed to an immediately preceding definite or indefinite noun which it qualifies or describes. It is always introduced by the particle کہ 'that,' which is simply an *explicative* particle (called کاف بیانہ *the kāf of the descriptive sentence*, when preceded by a substantive, and کاف صلہ *the kāf of the conjunctive clause*, when it is preceded by a relative pronoun), and hence may also stand before a sentence beginning with the relative pronoun when such sentence

is descriptive of that which precedes it. The qualificative clause following *کہ* contains a pronoun (either expressed or understood, or implied in the verb) which refers to the qualified noun, and connects it with the qualificative clause. This pronoun (the case of which is altogether independent of that of the antecedent) supplies the syntactical place of our relative pronoun. The particle *کہ* it should be observed is sometimes omitted and not generally translated: *e.g.*

وزیر کے (وہ) مرید دانا تھا 'the *wazir*, who (*lit.* he) was a wise man.'

اور بہت سے آدمی کے (وی) اُسکی پشت پر تھے 'and a great many men, who (*lit.* they) were on its back.'

کہ کسی ایسے شخص سے ملاقات دو جائے کہ اُسکے ساتھ وطن کو جاؤں 'to the end that I might meet with some such person with whom (*lit.* that with him) I might return to my native land.'

دیکھا (کہ) ایک دُکان ہے (کہ) اُس میں دو پتّجری لٹکے ہیں 'I perceived (that) there was (*lit.* is) a shop wherein (*lit.* such that in it) two cages were (*lit.* are) hanging.'

وہ غلام کے جس نے پرورش پائی تھی 'that slave who had been fostered.'
 اتنا مال کے جسکا حساب نہیں 'so much wealth of which there is no calculation.'

Rem. The construction with *کہ* is borrowed from the Persian, and the explanation here given of its use is taken from the *Kawā'idē Urdū* Part IV. *Ki* is neither itself a relative pronoun, nor does it "at the beginning of a sentence with a personal pronoun coming in sub-

sequently represent the Relative;" but it is in all cases a simple particle heading a descriptive or defining clause, which clause, as we have observed above, contains a pronoun that supplies the syntactical place of our relative pronoun. We subjoin the analysis of a sentence by a native grammarian in corroboration of this view. وَدِ كِتَابِ كِ گَہَر

“ the analysis is this—و، *ismē ishāra*; كِتَابِ, *mushārun ilaih*; *ishāra aur mushārun ilaih milkar mauṣūf hū'ā*; كِ, *kāf bayān kā*; گَہَر, *majrūr*; دِ, *jārr*, *aur yēh donōn milkar muta'allik hū'e fe'l, ya'ne ke, jiskā fū'il zamīr hai jo phirtī hai* كِتَابِ *kī taraf: pas fē'l apne fū'il aur muta'allik se milkar, jumla'e fe'līya hokar, ṣifat hū'i mauṣūf kī: to yahān jumla* گَہَر پَر رَکَہِی ہِی *jumla'e waṣfīya yā na't kahlāwegā.*”

IV. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

391. The Interrogatives are used both substantively and adjectively. As a substantive, the interrogative pronoun کون ‘who?’ applies to persons only, and the interrogative کیا ‘what?’ to things. As an adjective کون applies to things as well as persons, and کیا, when used as an exclamatory word (see § 396, 2, 3), applies to persons as well as things. کون is declined in the singular and plural (§ 143, ix.); کیا is indeclinable, the Genitive کا and the Dative کو belonging properly to the Hindī (Braj) pronoun کہا ‘what?’ (§ 144, *Rem. b.*): *e.g.*

تُوں کون ہو ‘who are you?’

کِس نے اِیسی بات کہی ‘who said such a thing?’

وہ گتھریاں کِس سوداگر کی کیں ‘what merchant’s packages are those?’

تُہارا نام کیا ہے ‘what is your name?’

کیا کہتا ہے ‘what does he say?’

مُجھ سے کیا قُتور ہوا ‘what fault have I committed?’

392. The pronouns may be repeated for emphasis (تاکید), see § 276, *Rem.*), with a distributive force, or to imply a great number or variety : *e.g.*

کس کس طرح 'in what various ways?'
 تجھ میں بہت عیب ہیں کس کس کو گنوں 'you have many faults, which particular ones shall I enumerate?'
 اُن سبھوں نے کیا کیا کام کیئے 'what several works did they all do?'

393. When the question refers to one of two or more, the particle سا (fem. سی) is generally added to the interrogative : as

کوئی کتاب میں 'in which particular book?' (out of two or more).

394. The Interrogative like the Relative (§ 388), may be used as both subject and object in the same sentence : *e.g.*

دیکھو گون کس مرتبے میں ہی 'let me see in what rank each of you stands' (*lit.* 'who stands in what rank?')

395. The Dative form کو کاہے is used only with the signification of *why*? as 'why do they go near them?' But at the present period the phrase کس واسطے or لیئے 'for what purpose?' 'why?' is more common : *e.g.* 'why are you sitting here?' یہاں کس لیئے بیٹھے ہو. 'why have you all come to this desolate place?'

396. *a.* The Interrogative کیا corresponds in nearly all its uses to the English 'what?' It is employed, for example, to express :

1) *Indifference to or the ability to dispense with a thing, or to imply the answer 'no,' 'none whatever:' as*

تَجِبْ بِنِ بِيْشْتِ پِيَارِي مَیں لیکے 'what shall I do with Paradise (what is Paradise to me) without thee, darling?'

کپانے مَیں شَرَم کیا هِي 'what shame is there in eating?'
('there is no shame,' etc.)

Rem. a. Compare also the use of کیا in the following: آدمي کياديو 'a man! nay, he was a demon' (or 'he was no man, he was a demon'); هَمَارِي اخْلَاقِي مَبَاحِثُونِ پَر غَيْرِ کا تو کیا ذِکْرِ هِي خُودِ هَمَارِي هِم وَطَنِ 'our very countrymen themselves, not to speak of others, pay no attention to our moral discussions; آزمائے ہوئے کو پتیر 'to what purpose should I again test that which (or him who) has been tested?'

Rem. b. The interrogative adverbs کب 'when?' کہاں 'where?' etc., are also often used to imply the answer 'no,' 'never:' e.g. خُوشامد 'when does a noble-minded man flatter the rich?' i.e. 'a noble-minded man never flatters,' etc.

2) *Indignation, or rebuke; as*

تُم کیا کرتے هو 'what are you doing?' ('don't do that!')

3) *Surprise or wonder: as*

کیا هِي نیک مَرْدِ هِي 'what a very good man he is!'

b. It may also be used like the English 'how' to denote *extent or degree, etc.*: as

کیا خُوب 'how fine or excellent!'

اگر کوئی اُسکے کپڑوں میں گھس کر 'if one forces its way into his clothes
کاٹے تو کیا (= گیسا) بے قرار and bites him, how restless he
ہوتا ہے becomes.

397. کیا—کیا like the English *what—what*, and *whether—*
or, are used correlatively to connect sentences: *e.g.*

کیا لیل و کیا نہار 'what night and what day?' or
'whether in the night or in the day.'

کیا خوشی اور کیا تشویش میں 'whether in joy or sorrow?'

398. The Interrogatives are used in *indirect* as well as direct questions: in such cases the interrogative clause generally stands as *object* to a preceding negative verb, or an interrogative sentence that is equivalent to a negative: *e.g.*

کیا جانوں کہ وہ کون (شخص *sc.*) ہے 'what know I (= I don't know) who
(what person) he is?'

اُسکو معلوم نہ تھا کہ اُس مکان میں 'he did not know who lived (*lit.*
کون رہتا ہے اور وہ عالی شان lives) in that house, and whose
محل کسکا ہے that grand mansion was (*lit. is*).'

Rem. a. In such sentences the verb of the governing clause must always be either directly or indirectly negative, otherwise the interrogative cannot be employed; a sentence like میں جاننا ہوں کہ وہ کون ہے is unidiomatic and wrong. It betrays a misconception of Urdū idiom to say of sentences like those given above that "the Interrogative is used instead of the Relative."

Rem. b. The interrogative particles آیا 'is it?', 'whether?' and کیونکر 'how?' are also used in interrogative sentences, the latter commonly:

e.g. آیا یہ حالت فاعل کی بیان کرتا ہے یا مفعول کی *'does this indicate the state of the agent or of the object?'* تم یہاں کیونکر آئے *'how did you come here?'*

V. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

399. The indefinite pronouns کوئی *some, any, a, a certain,* etc., and کچھ *some, a few, a little,* etc., when used substantively, apply, the former to living beings, the latter to things only; but as adjectives either may be connected with any noun, whether this denote a person or a thing. The pronoun کوئی to a great extent supplies the place of the English indefinite article: it is declined in the singular only, and is not commonly connected with a plural noun (see *Rem.* below), never perhaps with a plural of persons: کچھ is indeclinable, but it may be connected with a plural denoting either persons or things: *e.g.*

اگر کوئی مُقَرَّب خیانت کری یا اور *'if a confidential servant commit treachery or be guilty of any other offence.'*
کسی خطا کا مُرتکب ہو

جب کوئی مگھبی دوسری چبوتے *'when a bee of another hive wishes to come.'*
کی آنا چاہتی ہے

ہندوستان کے کسی خطے میں ایک *'in a certain region of Hindūstān there was a king.'*
راجہ تھا

کچھ پانی لاؤ *'bring some water.'*

مجھکو اس میں کچھ شک ہے *'I have some doubt respecting this.'*

¹ A recent writer on Urdū grammar terms the use of *kuchh* with a plural noun "uncommon" and "inelegant." We can confidently affirm that it is *commonly* so used by the best native writers, and they are certainly the best judges of the "elegance" of the construction. The same writer doubts the use of *kuchh* in application to persons: that it is so used will be seen from the seventh and eleventh of the above examples.

یہ اُس سے کچھ (= کِسی قدر) 'this is somewhat better than that.
بہتر ہے

یہ بی کچھ آدمی ہے 'he (this man) too is something of a man.'

شاید کچھ نامناسب باتیں میری 'perhaps some improper words
زبان سے نکلیں escaped my lips (*lit.* tongue).'

اور کچھ تئیاں بنا کر درخت کے 'and having made some screens, I
اوپر باندھ لیں tied (them) upon the tree.'

بچوں کی کچھ ہڈیاں درخت کے 'they found some of the young one's
نیچے اور کچھ گدھ کے گہندھلے bones under the tree, and some in
میں پائیں the vulture's hollow.'

بہت سے آدمی کے اُسکی پشت 'many men who were on its back,
پر تھے کچھ پنسوٹیوں پر اور کچھ some in boats and some by swim-
تیر کر جہاز پر آگئے ming, came on board the ship.'

Rem. a. The inflected form کُسو of the interrogative کوئی, though of frequent occurrence in the older literature, is now seldom used.¹

Rem. b. کوئی uninflected is sometimes used in connection with a plural substantive denoting a thing; as میں دن غریب خانے میں 'grace for a few days this humble dwelling;' but this construction is not common, کچھ or چند being more generally used in place of کوئی 'a few,' and in the sense of *some* or *certain*, the pronominal adjective بعض or بعضے being usually employed with a plural substantive: *e.g.*

بعض مورخین نے لکھا ہے 'certain historians have written.'

¹ Similarly of the two forms کدھو, کدھو, and کدھی, کدھی, the latter are now commonly used instead of the former.

‘it is the habit of some ignorant and low people.’
 عادت ہوتی ہے

‘I would question your Highness about certain matters.’
 پوچھوں گا

Rem. c. کئی ‘several,’ is not the plural of کوئی, as some grammarians suppose, but a distinct pronominal adjective, derived (like گی ‘how many?’) from the Sanskrit कति *kati*.

Rem. d. The particle سا may be added to the indefinite pronouns to intensify the signification: as کوئی سا ‘any one whatever.’

400. In connection with a following negative the indefinite pronouns are equivalent to our ‘no,’ ‘no one,’ ‘none,’ ‘none at all:’ *e.g.*

‘no (not a) rebel remained in the kingdom.’
 مَلِک میں کوئی سرکش نہ رہا

‘and it opened with no other key.’
 اور کسی اور کُلّی سے نہ کُھلا

‘no benefit will be derived.’
 کُچھ فائدہ حاصل نہوگا

‘no eatables and drinkables are obtainable in these parts.’
 اُطراف میں نہیں ملتیں

Rem. کُچھ in combination with other pronouns and pronominal adjectives has other significations, corresponding to our ‘all,’ ‘ever so much,’ etc.: *e.g.* ‘while I experience all this pain at their hands;’ اور میں اُنکے ہاتھوں سے یہ کُچھ دُکھ دیکھوں
 ‘if one sows a single seed, what an immense quantity springs from it!’ سے کِتنا کُچھ پیدا ہوتا ہے

401. کوئی—کُچھ, and کوئی—کُچھ, are equivalent to our *one—another*: *e.g.*

‘one says one thing, another (says) another.’
 کوئی کچھ کہتا ہے کوئی کچھ

‘one commits a fault, another receives the punishment.’
 گناہ کوئی کری سزا کوئی پاوی

‘one holds to a religion as an heirloom from his ancestors, another has made choice of an unsound (lit. shaky) faith for the sake of worldly wealth and honour.’
 کوئی تو باپ دادی کی میراث کے طور پر کسی مذہب کا قابض ہے۔ اور کسی نے دنیا کی دولت و عزت کے واسطے متزلزل دین اختیار کر لیا ہے

Rem. The indefinite pronominal adjectives (e.g. *فُلانہ*, *فُلان* or *فُلانا* ‘such-and such,’ or substantively, ‘so-and-so,’ *کئی* ‘several,’ etc., § 155), are constructed as ordinary adjectives, and call for no special notice.

VI. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

402. The Reflexive Pronoun *آپ* ‘myself,’ etc., singular and plural (§ 150), is employed as an emphatic appositive (تاکید, see *Rem.* § 276) to a noun or personal pronoun (expressed or understood) which forms the subject of a sentence: as

‘Mohan himself will come.’
 آپ آئیں گے

‘I myself went there.’
 میں آپ وہاں گیا

‘for this reason (he) himself also used to live in ease and enjoyment.’
 اس لیے (وہ) آپ بھی عیش و عشرت میں بسر کرتے

‘nor shall (he) himself go near any one.’
 اور نہ (وہ) آپ کسی کے پاس جائے

Rem. The emphatic *ہی* may be added to *آپ*: e.g. *آپ ہی آیا* ‘he himself came;’ and instead of *آپ* the Persian pronoun *خود* often

occurs: as *کسی کے واسطے گوا مت کہو کہ (تو sc.) خود گرے گا* 'dig not a pit for any one, for you yourself will fall.'

403. آپ may also be added emphatically to its own inflected forms, and the word *اپنے* may even be omitted, as the personal pronoun in the Nominative is (§ 402): *e.g.*

تو اپنے آپ کو ملامت کرنے چاہیئے himself.' 'in that case he should blame himself.'

تُو (اپنے sc.) آپ کو بے عیب جانتا ہے 'you consider yourself faultless.'

ایک درویش (اپنے sc.) آپ کو دنیا کی زحمت سے بچا کر from the throng of the world.'

Rem. a. The more common form of the Dative-Accusative of آپ is اپنے تئیں ملامت 'he said to himself;' اپنے تئیں کہا *e.g.* اپنے تئیں لگا 'I began reproaching myself;' but the form آپ کو, or its contraction آپنے, is also commonly used in writings of the present period: *e.g.* اور وہ قوم ہمیشہ اپنے کو اوج ترقی پر پہنچاتی رہتی ہے 'and that nation is ever advancing itself to the summit of prosperity;' اس مصیبت سے ہم اپنے کو محفوظ نہیں ٹھہراتے ہیں 'We do not hold ourselves (to be) secure from this misfortune.'

Rem. b. آپ is perhaps never used alone in the sense of 'self,' its original signification. When used without obvious reference to a distinct subject, it commonly relates to an unexpressed pronoun of the first person, or to an indefinite noun understood, and must therefore be rendered *myself*, or *himself*: *e.g.* جو بات (کوئی شخص sc.) اپنے پر پسند نہ کری 'a thing which (any one) dislikes (done) to himself.'

404. *a.* The Genitive of آپ, the Reflexive Pronominal Adjective اپنا, is always used in place of the Possessive

Adjectives میرا *my*, تیرا *thy*, etc., when these occur (in connection with a noun in the Accusative or in an oblique case) in the same sentence with the subject to which they refer : *e.g.*

سندباد نے اپنے دوسری سفر کا حال بیان کرنا شروع کیا 'Sindbad began to relate the story of his second voyage.'

میں اپنے چھپنے کی جگہ سے باہر نکلا 'I came out from my hiding-place.'

اور ہم نے اپنا اسباب جا بجا بیچا 'and we sold our goods here and there.'

اس وقت تم اپنے گھر جاؤ 'do you now go home.'

وی مجھ کو اپنے ساتھ لے گئے 'they took me along with them.'

b. But if the possessive adjectives occur in a sentence which has a distinct subject, or if they stand in the Nominative, the regular forms میرا, تیرا, etc., are used : *e.g.*

مجھے اور میری بیٹے کو مارا 'they beat me and my son.'

میرا بھی جی لچایا 'my mind also coveted.'

Rem. a. اپنا (for *my*, or *our*) is sometimes found in connection with a substantive which is the subject of the proposition, but this is not to be imitated : *e.g.* اپنا (میرا) بے مزاج بہک گیا 'my mind also was seduced;' اپنے (میری) نوکر و رفیقوں نے جب یہ غفلت دیکھی 'when my servants and my associates perceived this neglect;' اپنا 'our (one's) honour is in our own keeping (*lit.* hands).'

Rem. b. اپنا (as also میرا) is often omitted when no ambiguity can arise therefrom : *e.g.* زبان کو جھوٹ بولنے سے روکا 'I restrained (my) tongue from lying;' غیبت سننے میں جو مزا آتا تھا اُس کو دل سے بھلا دیا 'I effaced from (my) mind (*lit.* heart) the pleasure I used to derive from listening to slander.'

405. اِنّا is also used substantively to signify *my, thy, etc., property, or kindred*: as

اُجھ کو کیا دُوا کہ دُوسرا کا مال اِنّا بتاتا 'what has possessed thee, that thou callest another's property thine?'

اِنّے اور بیگانے میں کُچھ فرق نہیں جانتے 'they perceive no difference between their kindred and strangers.'

اِنّوں کے پاس آیا 'he came to his own.'

406. The Ablative آپ سے, or emphatically آپ سے آپ, is commonly employed as an adverb: *e.g.*

وُد آپ سے آپ یہاں آیا 'he came here himself, or of his own accord.'

وُد آپ سے آپ اُگتا ہی 'it grows spontaneously.'

Rem. In place of آپ سے آپ the Persian phrase خود بہ خود is often used: as

طبیعت خود بہ خود ایسی بے مزہ ہوئی 'my mind of itself got so out of tone' (listless, *lit.* insipid).

CHAPTER X.

THE VERB.

a) VERBAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

1. THE INFINITIVE.

407. The Infinitive is properly a Gerund or verbal noun, and as such can form the subject or object of a verb, or stand in any case (except the Vocative), like any other substantive. It differs however from an ordinary substantive, 1) in being used in the singular number only; and 2) in taking an objective complement after it, if it be derived from an active-transitive verb: *e.g.*

جیوٹھ بولنا بُرا ھی 'to lie (or lying)' is wrong.

ٹپتھا کرنے کی عادت 'the habit of jesting.'

جب کوئی مکی دوسری چہتے 'when a bee of another hive wishes
کی آنا چاہتی ھی to come.'

سرزنش کرنے سے غصہ پیدا ہوتا ھی 'anger arises from reproaching
(= reproach).'

کھانے میں شرم کیا ھی 'what shame is there in eating?'

408. a. If only the objective complement of the infinitive (and not likewise the subject) be expressed, it may

¹ The English scholar will not require to be told that *lying* and *to lie* are both infinitive forms.

be put in the Genitive, or either of the two forms of the Accusative: *e.g.*

‘they think nothing of uttering such words.’
 اُتکو کچھ خیال نہیں آتا

‘to make (or, the making of) all the implements (required) is highly inconceivable.’
 کُل آلات کا بنانا نہایت ہی بعید العقل ہے

‘they consider the seeing (= sight) of me unlucky.’
 میرا دیکھنا مٹھوس جانتے ہیں

‘to leave his mark in the world.’
 خَلق میں اپنی نشانی چھوڑنا
 ‘to sacrifice (one’s) freedom cannot in any case be deserving of commendation.’
 آزادی کو کبہ دینا کسی حال میں تعریف کے قابل نہیں ہو سکتا

b. But if the subject be likewise expressed, this is usually put in the Genitive, and the objective complement in the Accusative: *e.g.*

‘Art’s producing a resemblance to Nature.’
 طبعیت کے ساتھ صنعت کا تشبہ پیدا کرنا

409. If the Genitive of the Gerund be *subjective*, or if it be governed by one of the postpositions *لیئے*, *واسطے*, etc., it may generally be rendered by the English gerund with *to*: *e.g.*

‘the power to tell would fail me, and the patience to listen (would fail) thee’ (*lit.* ‘the ability to tell will not be in me, nor the power to listen in thee’).
 نہ مجھ میں قُدرت کہنے کی اور نہ تجھ میں طاقت سننے کی رہیگی

‘to break (*lit.* for the purpose of breaking) sticks.’
 لکڑیاں توڑنے کے واسطے

410. The Genitive of the Infinitive is commonly used in connection with the verbal negative نہیں (§ 148, *Rem.*) to express a strong negative Future : *e.g.*

وہ نہیں کرے گا 'he'll not do it, or he is not likely to do it.'

میں نہیں رہنے کا 'I shall not (am not likely to) remain.'

411. The Dative of the Gerund occurs after intransitive verbs, and such transitive verbs as govern both a dative and an accusative, and commonly expresses *purpose*; it may therefore be generally rendered in English by the gerund with *to*:¹ *e.g.*

وہ دیکھنے کو (= دیکھنے کے واسطے) 'he has come to see.'

آیا ہے

اپنے نزدیک میری اترنے کو مکان دو 'give a house near yourself for me to stay in (*lit.* alight).'

Rem. The postposition کو is often omitted: as وہ دیکھنے (کو) گئے 'they went to see;' 'they have come to examine thee.' اُنچھ سے سوال کرنے (کو) آئے ہیں (*sc.* کو) 'they have come to examine thee.'

412. The Dative of the Gerund in connection with the verbs ہے and تھا expresses the *intention to perform* an act: *e.g.*

وہ لکھنے کو ہے 'he is going to write.'

میں چلنے کو تھا 'I was going (or was about) to start.'

¹ "It is difficult to distinguish this (*i.e.* the dative of the verbal noun)," a recent writer on Urdū Grammar observes, "from the infinitive; in fact the dative form may always be rendered by an infinitive." On this it is necessary to remark that the dative of the gerund is not the infinitive, although 'to' precedes it. In the expression "he liked to learn," *to learn* is the infinitive, and the object of the verb liked; but in "he came to learn," *to learn* is the *gerund* in the dative, and expresses the *purpose*—"he came for learning."

اُسی وقت کہ میں دریا میں
 گرنے کو تھا دُور سے ایک جہز
 آتا ہوا نظر آیا
 'at the very instant that I was
 going to cast myself into the sea,
 a ship appeared far off coming
 (towards me).'

413. The Infinitive in combination with the verb تھا is used to indicate the contemporaneousness of an action with another expressed by a finite verb in a following clause: *e.g.*

جوان کا دروازی پر آنا تھا کہ وہ نہیں
 صاحب خانہ بھی پہنچا
 'the young man had but just reached
 the door when at the same moment
 the master of the house arrived.'

اور پاؤں گُوڑی پر دھرنا تھا کہ گر پڑی
 'and they had scarcely put their feet
 on the rubbish when down they
 fell (into the pit).'

414. The Infinitive is often used in the sense of the Imperative, in both affirmative and negative sentences, but generally with more force than the ordinary Imperative. The negative particles employed in this construction are نہ and مت, the latter being prohibitive: *e.g.*

میری ہاں آنا 'come to my place.'
 جو یہ کہیں اُسکو سچ جائنا 'whatever they say, consider it true.'
 زہنہاریہ خیال نہ کرنا 'never think of this!'
 آج تم گھر مت جانا 'don't you go home to-day.'

415. *Gerundive Forms.*—The Infinitive or Gerund, not only of transitive, but also of intransitive verbs, is frequently used as a Gerundive, agreeing in gender and number with its object if the verb be transitive, or with its predicative noun if the verb be ہونا. This construction (in

which the Gerund usually occurs in the nominative form as subject or object, but occasionally also in the genitive) is employed in two ways: 1) the Gerund (with its object, if the verb be transitive) in combination with one of the verbs ہونا, ہي, or one of the tenses of the verbs ہونا 'to be or become,' پڑنا 'to fall,' or with such quasi-impersonal phrases as چاہیئے ہي, مناسب ہي, لازم ہي, etc., *it is necessary, proper, or right*, is used as an impersonal phrase to denote that a certain action *is to be done* (is settled to be done, should or must be done, is fit, proper, or necessary), the subject of the action (if a definite subject is spoken of) being put in the Dative: or 2) the Gerund with its object (if the verb be transitive), or its predicative substantive (if the verb be ہونا), may form the subject, or object, of a following verb without expressing the idea of *duty*, etc: *e.g.*

- 1) مُجھ کو جانا ہي 'I have to go' (*mihi eundum est*).
 دوست کي خاطر رہنا ہوا 'I had to remain for (my) friend's sake.'
 تم کو لکھنا ہوگا 'you will have to write.'
 اس غلط فہمی کا نتیجہ بھگتنا پڑیگا 'we shall have to endure the consequences of this mistake (misapprehension).'
- جو کہنے کي بات ہي گونسی سہیں کہتے 'which of those matters that should be spoken of do we not mention?'
- اگر تم کو ایسی نا آشنائی کرنی تھی 'if you had determined to act with such unsociableness.'
- جو کام انسان کو کرنے پڑتے ہيں 'the works which a human being has to do.'
- اُسکے طالب کو سخت تکلیف اور مشقتیں اُٹھانی پڑتی ہيں 'the seeker after it has to endure severe trials and hardships.'

اب ہمکو ذرۂ فکر کرنی چاہیئے 'we should now reflect a little.'

زندگی میں ایسے کام کرنے چاہئیں 'we should so act in (our) life-time.'

اُسکو سزا دینی مناسب ہے 'he should be punished,' or 'it is right to punish him.'

2) دشمن سے دوستی کی توقع 'it is unreasonable to expect friendship from an enemy.'

کرنی عقل کے خلاف ہے

اور بیماروں کو دوا دارو دینی بھی 'and I also practised physicing the sick.'

اختیار کی

بڑی بڑی پتھر کشتیوں کی طرف 'they began throwing huge stones at the boats.'

پہنکنے شروع کیئے

اگر نفسِ ناطقہ کے ٹکڑی ہونے 'if the divisibility of mind (lit. of the rational soul) be possible.'

ممکن ہوں

Rem. The choice between the Gerund and the Gerundive is determined entirely by euphony, or the mere pleasure of the writer. Some writers therefore retain the Gerund (فکر کرنا) more frequently than others. Dehli authors exhibit a preference for the Gerundive (فکر کرنی). To say, as some grammarians do, that these Gerundive forms are "compounds, like 'fox hunting,' 'speech-making,'" and that "compounds are occasionally found in which the words do not agree," is simply absurd. Perhaps these writers would say that in *Ars puerorum educandorum difficilis est*, "puerorum educandorum" is a compound, signifying "boy-educating." The Panjābī, we may observe, regularly uses the Gerund as a Gerundive. The Sindhī has a distinct Gerundive, differing however but slightly in form from the Infinitive: *e.g.* Inf. مارنُ 'to beat,' Gerundive مارنو *mārino*.

II. THE NOUN OF AGENCY.

416. The Noun of Agency holds a middle position between the verb and the noun, and partakes of the force

of both, following the government either of the verb or the noun, or of both. If it be derived from a directly transitive verb and have the meaning of the Present or Future, it may take an objective complement in the Genitive or the Accusative; but if it have the meaning of the Perfect, it approaches more nearly to the character of the noun, and is therefore construed with the Genitive alone: *e.g.*

غَضَّه فَرَوْ كَرْنِے والے 'those who restrain (or shall restrain)
their wrath.'

آی شہر میں گھروں کے بنانے والے 'O builders of (ye who build) houses
in cities!'

اس خط کے لکھنے والے کو حاضر کرو 'bring the writer of (him who has
written) this letter to me.'

سوائے اس کُتے کے کوئی میرا رونے والا نہ تھا 'except this dog there was none
who mourned for me (I had no mourner).'

417. It is also commonly used as the predicate of a preceding subject to express a *proximate future*: *e.g.*

وہ دِلّی جانے والا ہے 'he is about going to Dillī.'

وہ آج کل مرنے والا ہے 'he will die in (the course of) a day or
so' (*lit.* to-day or to-morrow).

Rem. The above rules also apply to the Arabic and Persian nouns of agency and verbal adjectives which occur so commonly in Urdū; with this difference however, that when these govern the accusative, they generally stand as the predicate of a preceding subject: *e.g.*

مال و رتّبہ کا خواستگار 'a seeker after rank and wealth.'

نہیں میں طالبِ روزی آسمان سے 'I am not a seeker of sustenance from heaven.'

وہ سب کاموں سے ہمکو مانع ہوگا 'it will hinder us from (progress) in all works.'

The construction with the genitive however is much the more common of the two, even in the case of the Hindī noun of agency.

III. THE PARTICIPLES.

418. The Participles express the same notion as the verb to which they belong, but (excepting the Past Con-junctive Participle) in the form of an Adjective. They follow the government of the verb from which they are derived.

419. The participles are frequently employed to describe a contemporary, past, or future, action connected with the main action. The relations and circumstances expressed by them must often be expressed in English by subordinate propositions with conjunctions (e.g. *while, during, when, after, as soon as*, etc.), or by phrases with prepositions.

a) THE IMPERFECT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

420. The Imperfect and Perfect, or (if it belong to a transitive verb) Passive Participle have so much in common as regards their use and construction that they may be conveniently noticed together. When used adjectively they are usually distinguished by the addition to them of the perfect participle *ہوا*; but this is often omitted.

421. These participles are frequently used to indicate the *state or condition* (حال) of the subject or object of an

action while the action is taking place. Their agreement with the *subject* is in such cases determined by the following rules:

1) If the subject of the participle be likewise that of the finite verb, the participle agrees with it in gender and number: *e.g.*

(a). یہ کہتی ہوئی چلی گئی 'she went away saying this.'

اُن سے لڑتا بھڑتا اُس چاہ پر آیا
fighting and struggling with them
(all the way).'

گرتی پڑتی بڑی دقت سے یہاں
پہنچي 'I dragged myself along and (*lit.*
falling and lying I) got here with
great difficulty.'

ایکبارگی اُسکی ما روتی بیٹھتی بیٹھی
کے گھر میں گئی 'all at once the mother entered her
daughter's house weeping and
beating (herself).'

(b). دسترخواں بچھا ہوا تھا 'the table-cloth was spread.'

کوئی عورت بیٹھی ہوئی تھی 'some woman was seated (or sitting).'

داڑھی سفید چہاتے تک لٹکی ہی
hangs (is hanging) down to his
breast.'

اُسکے سامنے دانے پڑے ہوئے ہیں 'grains (of corn) are lying before him.'

یہ بھائی لیٹا ہوا جاگتا تھا 'this brother was lying awake.'

جو وہیں رنگ بہ رنگ کے حباب
اور گلابیاں طاقوں پر چنیں ہوئیں
نظر پڑیں 'the moment (that) some wine jars
and flagons of various colours
(which were) arranged on the
shelves fell under my eye.'

میں نے ہیری کے ٹکڑی پھیلے ہوئے
دیکھے about' (*lit.* 'pieces of diamond were
seen strewn about by me').

2) But if the subject of the participles is not the same as that of the finite verb, both participles are constructed *absolutely* in the Locative singular, the postposition being suppressed; and the subject of the Imperfect Participle is often omitted: *e.g.*

(a). ساری رات تلپھتے کٹی 'the whole night passed in restlessness' (*lit.* 'I being agitated').

میں نے روتے بسورتے کہا 'I said, weeping and sobbing the while.'¹

(b). اُن سے لڑتا بیڑتا روٹی کو بچائے (the dog) fighting and struggling
اُس چاہ پر آیا with them came to the dungeon
with the bread saved.'

سر نیچے کیئے کھڑا تھا 'I was standing with my head hung down.'

تُم پیٹھ دکھائے جاتے ہو 'you go showing your back (your back shown).'

غرض پیر زن کو لیئے ہوئے غار کے
مُٹھ پر آیا the pit with the old woman (the old woman brought with him).'

ملکہ میلے کپڑی پہنے باہر نکلی 'the princess came out dressed in dirty clothes.'

میں اُس جوان کے گلے میں بانہ
ڈالے ہوئے بیٹھی تھی 'I was sitting with my arm thrown round the young man's neck.'

¹ In this example the subject of the verb کہا is the following clause (the *مَقُول* or *that which is said*), and the subject of the participle is the pronoun of the first person—it was said by me (as follows), and I was weeping.

اگر ایک ہاتھی زنجیر ٹڑائے ہوئے
آتا ہو 'if an elephant with his chain broken
were (*lit.* should be) coming.'

اُس دري کو ميں اپني قبر سمجھے
ہوئے تھا 'I was under the impression that
that defile would prove my grave'
(*lit.* 'I existed, that defile thought
my grave').¹

جو بائبي کے اندر سے سر نکالے تھے
 'which were with their heads out of
their holes.'

ایک مینڈک کو سانپ پکڑی ہی
 'a snake is (there is a snake) with a
frog caught' ('a snake has hold
of a frog').

اڑھا جو منہ پساری ہی
 'a (or the) python which is with
(has) its mouth wide open.'

Rem. The subject of the participle must necessarily be different from that of the finite verb when the participle is *passive* and, together with its object (Acc.), forms the حال of the subject of the finite verb; for when this object takes the nominative form of the accusative, it stands as the subject of the participle, and when it occurs in the dative form, the construction becomes impersonal (§§ 306, 308). This will become evident if we take the first of the above examples (*b*) and resolve it into the different predications contained in it: *e.g.* 'the dog came to the dungeon, and he was fighting all the time he was coming, and the bread was saved by him,' or strictly, 'it was saved by him as regards the bread.'

¹ We have thought it necessary to multiply examples on this subject, because, firstly, the subject is one of importance; and secondly, its treatment in all existing grammars is most unsatisfactory. One of the most recent actually teaches that لیئے and کیئے are not perfect, or rather passive participles, but "irregular forms of the conjunctive participle!" and that in the last two examples above پکڑی ہی and پساری ہی are "forms of the perfect," signifying "has caught" and "has opened;" and no grammar attempts to lay down anything like a rule to guide the student in the use and construction of the participles.

3) If the Participle in either case be repeated for *emphasis*, or to indicate a *lasting* or *continuous state*, or even if such a state be implied without the repetition of the participle, it is always constructed *absolutely*, even though its subject be the same as that of the finite verb: *e.g.*

(a). ڈرتے ڈرتے میں پاس گیا 'I approached (it) in great fear (fearing much).'

منزل بہ منزل چلتے چلتے نیشاپور میں پہنچا 'marching on stage by stage I arrived in Naishāpūr.'

ہم گاتے گاتے سیتی ہیں 'we keep singing while we stitch.'

(b). لیکن بے کار بیٹھے بیٹھے اکتا گیا 'but I wearied of sitting still.'

تُو نے مجھے بیٹھے بیٹھے (= بیٹھے) ناحق بدنام اور رُسا کیا 'you have unjustly defamed and disgraced me seated quietly (i.e. inoffensively).'

وہ چپکے بُت کی طرح بیٹھے سنا کی 'she, continued listening silently, seated like a statue.'

Rem. In sentences like the last but one, where the *passive* construction with نے is used, and the first is simply a *perfect* participle, the second must take the form of its *causative* in order to possess a *passive* character; but the *signification* differs in no respect by this change.

422. a. When the participles describe the *state* or *condition* of the *object*, they are somewhat differently constructed. In such cases the object usually occurs in the *dative* form of the accusative, and hence the concord between it and the participle is disturbed: but whereas the Imperfect Participle may be optionally put in the nominative or the locative absolute, the Perfect, or

Passive Participle always takes the form of the nominative: *e.g.*

- (a). معنوم ہوا کہ دو شخصوں کو چوری کرتے پکڑا ہی 'it appeared that they had (*lit.* have) caught two persons stealing.'
 میں نے اُسکو چشمے پر سوتا چھوڑا 'I left him sleeping by a spring.'
 ایک روز محل میں آتے دیکھ کر اُسے پکڑا 'one day having seen him entering the palace they seized him.'
 اُسے روتا دیکھ کر پوچھا کہ 'seeing him weeping he asked,' etc.
- (b). گھوڑی کو سیخ سے بندھا ہوا دیکھا 'I saw the horse fastened to a peg.'
 اُس وقت سے مجھے مَوا ہوا تصور کرتا ہی 'from that time (forward) he thinks me dead.'
 وہ مجھکو ڈوبا ہوا جانتا تھا 'he all along thought me (supposed that I had been) drowned.'

b. The construction is the same if the object be a following clause introduced by کہ: as ایک روز کتاب میں بھی لکھا کہ 'one day he saw written in a book also, that,' etc.

c. If the object occur in the nominative form of the accusative, the Participle will of course agree with it.

Rem. Of the two forms of the Imperfect Participle, the nominative is perhaps the correct one; at all events it is more in harmony with the construction of the Perfect Participle; and its regular use would moreover have the advantage of removing all ambiguity in sentences which have the passive construction with نے. For example میں نے دیکھا اُسکو تیرتے signifies both 'I saw him whilst I was swimming,' and 'whilst he was swimming;' but if the participle be تیرتا, the last alone of these significations is admissible.

423. *a.* Distinct from the use of the participles as a حال is their use to indicate that an action takes place *immediately after* or *simultaneously with* another action expressed by the finite verb. The emphatic particle *هي* is added to the Imperfect Participle to indicate exact coincidence in point of time in the two actions.¹ In such cases the participles are always constructed *absolutely*.

The subject of the Imperfect Participle may be the same as that of the finite verb (whereby, as also by the participle not taking the *adjective* form with *هُوَ*, it is distinguished from the *اسم حالیه*), or it may be different. In the latter case, if the subject is expressed, it is put in the Formative or the genitive, the latter being the more common when the subject is *animate*.

The subject of the Perfect Participle is usually different from that of the finite verb, and is put in the Formative: *e.g.*

(a). فَجْرَ هَوْتِ وَهُ رُخْصَتْ هُوَا 'he took his departure on dawn appearing.'

حُكْمَ هَوْتِ وَهُ كَبُوْنِ لَگَ 'on the order being given they commenced digging.'

خَوَاجَ نَ دِيكْهَتِ هِي خَاطِرِ دَارِي 'as soon as the merchant saw (this), he ministered consolation.'

مُجْهِي سُنْتِ هِي عَصَ چَرَه آيا 'immediately on hearing this, anger overcame me.'

¹ Some grammarians mistakenly suppose that the imperfect participle must always be inflected when the particle *هي* is added to it, and hence pronounce this sentence ungrammatical: 'Thrust me into the ground alive (as I am).' The sentence is however quite grammatical; *جيتا* is not the so-called "adverbial participle," but the *hāl* of the object *mujhe*.

‘I no sooner became detached than
 اُڑدھے پر جا کر گرا it swooped down upon a boa-con-
 سٹریکٹر.’

(b). کیوں اتنی رات گئے تُم آئے ‘why have you come at this late
 hour of the night?’ (‘when so
 much of the night is gone’).

پہر دِن چڑھے (میں) اُترا ‘when one (the first) watch of the
 day was reached (when day had
 risen to one watch), I came down.’

b. If the Imperfect Participle has an objective comple-
 ment expressed, this is put in the accusative or the
 genitive: *e.g.*

‘we all fled on the instant of seeing
 اُنہیں دیکھتے ہی ہم سب بھاگے them.’

‘the young man became as delighted
 جوان اُسکے دیکھتے ہی ایسا خوش at the sight of her as if he had
 ہوا جیسے دُنیا کی نِعْمتِ مِلی obtained the wealth of the world.’

Rem. The use of the objective complement in the genitive serves to
 show that the participle in such cases partakes of the character of the
noun as well as that of the verb.’

424. In its *adjective* form either participle may be
 employed, 1) as an adjective defining a noun (either
 with the signification of a relative periphrasis, or to
 express a quality or state in general); and 2) as a sub-
 stantive, concrete or abstract. As an abstract substantive
 the Imperfect Participle is equivalent to the Gerund: *e.g.*

1) As an adjective:

(a). سب میں نادان وہ ہے کہ ‘unwisest of all is he who rouses
 سوتے ہوئے فتنے کو جگاوی slumbering strife’ (cf. § 47, *Rem. b.*).

ایک بولتی ہوئی مینا 'a talking mainā.'

چلتی چکی دیکھ 'having seen a revolving millstone.'

اگر حکم کرو تو جلتی آگ میں
گود پڑوں burning fire.

(b). جما ہوا عرق کافور کہلاتا ہے 'the congealed juice is called camphor.'

ایک لکھا ہوا کاغذ 'a written paper, or a paper with writing on it.'

کوئی مَوا جانور ہوگا 'it may be some dead animal.'

2) As a substantive.

(a). ڈوبتے کو تنکے کا آسرا بہت ہے 'the support of a straw is ample for a drowning man' ('a drowning man clings to a straw').

مجھے سوتے سے جگایا 'he awoke me from sleeping (= sleep).'
اسباب ہوتے (= ہونے پر) تو گل
خوب نہیں (= the possession of) property is
not well or becoming.'

(b). آزمائے کو پھر کیا آزمائوں 'to what purpose should I again test what has been tested.'

سائپ کا بھیجا ہوا آیا ہوں 'I am come as the emissary of the snake.'

اپنے کیئے سے پچھتااتا ہوں 'I am suffering remorse in consequence of my deed.'

راہ میں ہزیمت کھائے ہوؤں کا
ایک گروہ پہنچکر defeat having arrived on the road.'

Rem. This use of the participles corresponds to that of the Active and Passive Participles—the اِسْمِ فاعِل and اِسْمِ مفعول—of the Arabic.

425. The Perfect or Passive Participle is commonly used for the Infinitive, chiefly in connection with the quasi-impersonal verb چاہیئے: *e.g.*

جو کام آج کیا (= کرنا) چاہیئے 'the work which (you) ought to do to-day.'

دُشمن کی موت سے خوش نہ ہوا 'we should not rejoice at (in consequence of) the death of an enemy.'

426. The Perfect or Passive Participle is also used as an abstract (verbal) substantive in combination with the verb جانا, when this is equivalent to ہو سَکنا, and in the Frequentative and Desiderative Compounds (§ 24 and *Rem.*): *e.g.*

مُجھ سے ڈوبا نہ گیا 'I could not drown myself' (*lit.* 'drowning was not possible by me').

تقدیر سے لڑا نہیں جاتا 'there's no fighting against fate.'

میں دن بھر اُس جنگل میں بھرا کیا 'I kept wandering about (*lit.* I did or made wandering) in that jungle the whole day.'

Rem. Observe also the following: میرا کہا مان 'mind what I say' (*lit.* 'my saying—what I shall say, or am about to say').

427. The Passive Participle, when governed by one of the postpositions بِ, بِے, or بِغیر, has in some instances an *active* signification: *e.g.*

کہ بے میری کہے میری ساتھ کھانا کھاتا ہے 'that without my bidding (thee) thou eatest food with me.'

بغیر کھائے کیونکر زندہ رہ سکتا ہے 'how can he keep alive without eating?'

b) THE PAST CONJUNCTIVE PARTICIPLE.

428. *a.* The Past Conjunctive Participle is very often used in Urdū so as to avoid the use of conjunctions where several predications are united in the one sentence: *e.g.*

یہ کہہ کر چلا گیا 'having said this, he went away.'

کچھ بات بنا کر اور جواہر اور پوشاک 'having invented some pretext, and

لیکر اور قیمت اُسکی دیکر having taken the jewels and dress,

رُخصت چاہی and having given the price thereof,

I requested permission to go' (*i.e.* 'I invented some pretext, and after taking the jewels and dress and paying for them, I requested,' etc.).

b. We sometimes find a preceding verb repeated in the participle: as

وہ اُٹھا اور اُٹھ کر باہر گیا 'he rose, and having risen went out.'

عرق بہہ کر ایک برتن میں جمع 'the juice having flowed (out),

ہوتا ہے اور جمع ہو کر جم collects in a vessel, and having

جاتا ہے collected, congeals.'

429. The participle most commonly refers, as in the above examples, to the subject of the finite verb, or, if the construction be passive, to the Agent. In the latter case, when the participle is ہو کر, and a predicative adjective or participle is joined to it, this, if capable of inflection, is always put in the inflected masculine singular: *e.g.*

اُس جوان نے روکھے پتھیکے ہو کر 'the young man became cool and
کہا constrained, and said.'

اور کپسیانے ہو کر فرمایا کہ ‘and having become angry, I ordered that,’ etc.

بعد اُسکے کھڑی ہو کر یہ خطبہ پڑھا ‘after that, having stood up, he read this discourse.’

430. But the participle may refer to the object (dative, accusative); and in the same sentence one participle may refer to the subject, and another to the Agent: *e.g.*

یہ بات سن کر مجھے بھی ‘having heard this, jealousy possessed me also.’
غیرت آئی

خُدا کے حُکم سے بھاگ کر ‘there is no assured refuge anywhere to flee to from God’s decree’ (*lit.* ‘having fled, or fleeing from, God’s decree, there is no assured refuge for you to go to’).

آخر وعدہ اُن چیزوں کو ‘at last, having made me promise and swear that I would return after leaving those things (at home), he let me go.’
پہنچا کر میری پھر آنے کا
لیکر اور قسم کھاکر رخصت
کیا

(شہزادی *sc.*) خوش ہو کر ‘the princess having become pleased, the trays (of jewels, etc.) were made over to the steward, and she said.’
(کشتیاں *sc.*) خانساماں کے
حوالے ہوئے اور فرمایا

431. The participle may even be used absolutely, without reference to a subject, as is the case when the finite verb is in the passive voice: *e.g.*

وہ کھود کر جیتا نکالا گیا ‘he was dug out alive’ (‘they having dug, he was taken out alive’).

432. The participle is often repeated for the sake of *emphasis*, or to indicate a *repeated* or *continued* action: as

میبوی توڑ توڑ کر جمع کرنے لگے 'we kept breaking the fruits and collecting them.'

پتھر مار مار کے سب کشتیاں ڈبو دیں 'having kept on throwing stones, they sank all the boats.'

433. In some instances the Conjunctive Participle has all the force of an adverb, and would appear to be used as such: *e.g.*

اُس نے جان بوجھ کر یہ کام کیا 'he did this wittingly.'

وہ کھلکھلا کر ہنسا 'he laughed aloud.'

چھپا کر وہ کتاب اور کتابوں کے 'I made that book over to him

ساتھ اُس کے حوالے کی secretly along with others.'

اُسے مضبوط کر کے باندھا 'I tied it tight.'

وہ لنگڑا کر چلتا ہے 'he walks lame.'

b. THE INDICATIVE AND ITS TENSES.

i. THE AORIST.

434. The Aorist, though more commonly employed in the Subjunctive Mood, is also used in propositions, both leading and subordinate, which deal with *facts*, whether actual or assumed for the purpose of argument; in other words, it occurs in the *Indicative Mood*.

The Aorist does not in itself express any idea of time; it merely indicates a *begun, incomplete, enduring* existence either in *present* or *future* time. Hence it has the signification of the English *Present*, as well as that of the *Future Indefinite*: *e.g.*

خُدا جانے 'God knows.'

اب مَیں جو کہوں سو کر 'now do what I tell (am about to tell) you.'

خوشامد کب کری عالی طبعیت 'when does a noble-minded man
اھلِ دولت کی fawn upon the rich' (i.e. 'a noble-minded man never fawns upon the rich').

دل میں آیا کہ پھر سفر کروں 'It came into my mind "I will travel again."'

جب مَیں مر جاؤں گاژد اب 'when I die (shall die), bury me out
دیجو of sight.'

تُم یہاں بیٹھو مَیں جا کر خبر کروں 'you sit here, I will go and announce
(your arrival).'

اُس نے کہا چلو آج تمہیں پادشاہ 'he said: Come, I'll take you to the
پاس لے چلوں king to-day.'

435. The Aorist is commonly used in proverbs: *e.g.*

کم بختی جو آوی اُونٹ چڑھے 'when misfortune comes, a dog bites
(کو. se) کتا کاٹے one (who is) mounted on a camel.'

گُناہ کوئی کری سزا کوئی پاوی 'one commits the fault, another is
punished for it.'

436. To render the idea of *present* time still more distinct, the auxiliary verb ہوں، ہئی، etc., is added to the Aorist: as

آنکھیں ملکر کے جو دیکھوں ہوں 'when I rub my eyes and look.'

آتیشِ عشق سے جلے ہئی دل 'my heart burns with love's fire.'

گہ کری ہئی برگِ گل مرکب 'now it makes the leaf of the rose
its steed' (i.e. 'one moment it mounts the rose, another it,' etc.).

But this form of the Present,¹ though once very common, is now rarely used in Urdū (see § 189, *Rem.*).

437. As a present tense the Aorist is employed in narrative for a past (the *Historical Present*): *e.g.*

(= دیکھا) آگے جا کر جو دیکھوں ‘when I went forward and looked,
تو ملکہ ہی - lo! it was the princess’ (*lit.* ‘when,
having gone forward, I look, lo!
it is the princess’).

جي ميس آوي ڪ يا الهي ٻيہ دم ‘it came (was coming, *lit.* comes)
جان نکل جاوي تو بهتر هي into my mind, “O God! if this
breath of life depart, it is better.”’

438. The Aorist often occurs in a form identical with that of the Precative² (§ 176) in the three persons of the singular, and with nasal *n* added to that form in the plural: *e.g.*

¹ Most European grammarians ignore this tense altogether, and those who do notice it wrongly term it “a perfect,” and generally mistake for it the perfect participle when this is used as a *ḥāl* in connection with a subject that has for its predicate one of the verbs *هَي* or *تہا*. For example, in the sentence *ek menḍak ko sōṇp pakre hai*, they call *pakre hai* “a perfect,” and translate, “the snake has caught a frog;” whereas *pakre* is a *ḥāl*, and the translation should be *a snake is* (there is a snake) *with a frog caught*. As a finite verb *pakre hai* would signify “catches,” not “has caught.”

² It does not follow that because this form is identical with that of the precative, therefore this, or, as the grammarians phrase it, “the respectful imperative,” is used for the aorist. In the use of these precative forms the Hindi and Urdū follow the Prakrit pretty closely, and the following extracts from the *Prākṛita-Prakāśa* (ed. Cowell, sect. vii. 20, 21) show that they are not used the one for the other, but that, though connected both in form and signification, they are yet distinct: “*Jja, jḡā* are optionally substituted for the proper affixes of the present and the definite future, and also when command, etc., are implied: *e.g.* *hojja, hojjā*, or *hoi*, ‘he is;’ *hascjjā, hascjjā*, or *hasāḥ*, ‘he laughs;’ (and the same form applies to the three persons in both numbers;) future *hojja, hojjā, hohii*, ‘he will be;’ and similarly in the sense of the imperative.” “*Jja, jḡā* are also optionally inserted between the root and the affixes” in the same tenses; “as (present) *hojjā, hojjāi*; (future) *hojjāhii, hojjāhii*; (imperative) *hojjāi, hojjāu*,” this however only occurs “when the root ends in a vowel, and is therefore monosyllabic.”

‘(when I reached the garden), the thought entered my mind, This time I will plant a vine.’
 میری دل میں یہ خیال گذرا
 کہ ابکی دفعہ انگور لگائیے
 (= لگاؤں)

‘what shall I say respecting those people who, having rebelled, unjustly turn away from Him?’
 کیا کہیئے اُن لوگوں کو جو نافرمانی
 کرکے ناحق اُس سے برگشتہ
 ہوتے ہیں

Rem. Additional examples of this form of the Aorist will be found under the Subjunctive Mood, in which it more commonly occurs.

439. The Aorist چاہیئے is commonly used as a phrase in the sense and after the manner of *opus, necesse, est*, ‘it is necessary,’ *debet*, ‘it is proper or right,’ *oportet*, ‘it behoves,’ with an infinitive, or a gerundive and its substantive, or a perfect participle used as a gerund (§ 425), as the subject, the true subject or agent of the act usually preceding in the Dative, if a definite agent is implied; the agent, however, is not always expressed—rarely so if the idea of *duty*, etc., implied in the phrase *chāhiye* is of general application, or if the infinitive is accompanied by an object in the dative form of the accusative: *e.g.*

‘whatever the master wants is ready (to be had).’
 جو صاحب کو چاہیئے سب
 موجود ہی

‘(the king) should keep these people under subjection’ (*lit.* ‘to keep these people under subjection is necessary for the king’).
 اُن لوگوں کو مغلوب رکھنا چاہیئے

‘we should now consider a little.’
 اب ہمکو ذرہ فکر کرنی چاہیئے
 زندگی میں ایسے کام کرنے چاہییں
 in life.’

‘I ought to go once there also.’ ایک دفعہ وہاں بھی چلا (= چلنا)

چاہیئے

‘the explanation of this should be asked of the doctors of religion’
تفسیر اسکی عالموں سے پوچھا
چاہیئے

(lit. ‘asking the explanation of this of the doctors is necessary’).

Rem. a. The agent of the act is sometimes put in the genitive in construction with an Arabic *nomen actionis*; as فقیر کا عمل اُن پر ‘a *fakīr* should act upon them.’ And if the thing *necessary* or *requisite* be a *quality*, or that which should be found in some person or thing, the locative is generally used instead of the dative; e.g. وی کوئی خاصیتیں ہیں کہ قاصد میں چاہیں ‘what special qualities are those which a messenger should possess?’ (‘which are requisite in a messenger’).

Rem. b. چاہیئے is also very commonly used in the Subjunctive Mood: the infinitive is then replaced by the ordinary Aorist, which follows چاہیئے, and is preceded by کہ (= Latin *ut*), the agent of the act either preceding *chāhiye* in the dative, or following it in the nominative: e.g. پادشاہ کو چاہیئے کہ ان لوگوں کو مغلوب رکھے, or چاہیئے کہ پادشاہ ان لوگوں کو مغلوب رکھے ‘the king should keep these people under subjection.’

Rem. c. The phrases لازم ہی, ضرور ہی, مناسب ہی, it is necessary, right, or proper, are used in the same way as چاہیئے, chiefly in the Subjunctive.

Rem. d. According to some European grammarians any “Respectful Imperative,” as they term it, may be used “with a sense of obligation, and may be translated *ought*, *should*, or *must*.” This however is not correct; *chāhiye* alone can, of itself, be so used. The examples given by them are such as the following: اس سے دریافت کیجیے ‘learn from, or let one learn from, this’ (not “from this one *ought* to learn”); اس جنگل میں رہیے اور پاسبانی کیجیے ‘let us remain in this jungle

and watch' (not "we *must* stay in this wood and keep watch"); آنکھیں (my) 'دروازی کی طرف لگت رہی تھیں کہ دیکھیے کیا ظاہر ہوتا ہے' (my eyes were kept fixed on the door to see (*lit. saying* to myself "Let me see")) what was (*lit. is*) about to appear' (not "my eyes were fixed on the door, and I said I *must* see," etc.).

440. To imply that an act should or ought *to have been done*, the phrase چاہیئے تھا is employed : as

تیرا گھونسلہ ایک کانٹے کے درخت	thy nest ought to have been (built)
میں یا کسی دیوار کے اوپر	in some thorny bush or on the top
چاہیئے تھا نہ بادشاہ کی محل	of a wall, (and) not in the king's
سرا میں	palace.'

Rem. The same phrase is used in the Subjunctive also (§ 467, *Rem. c*).

II. THE FUTURE INDEFINITE.

441. Although the Aorist itself has the signification of the simple Future, yet to render the futurity of the act quite distinct, the perfect participle گا (see § 187) is added to it; and thus the Future also derives the signification of an *Intentional* and a *Desiderative* : *e.g.*

میں دیکھوں گا 'I shall see,' and 'I wish to, or would, see.'

آخر مر جاؤنگا تب خدا کو کیا جواب دؤنگا 'eventually I shall die, and what answer shall I then give to God?'

بعضی باتیں حضور میں پوچھوں گا 'I would question Your Highness about certain matters.'

442. The participle گا is also added to the Precative form of the Aorist to form the Future : *e.g.*

پیدا کیجیگا آپ اُس شخص کو 'wilt thou (wouldst thou, is it thy
جو روئی زمیں پر فساد آور خون intention to) create a being who
ریزی کری will work mischief and shed blood
on the face of the earth?'

جو یوں گھمائیگا مغز کے گودی 'if you pull (will pull) so (i.e. as you
کو نہ چھوڑیگا are going to do), it will not leave
hold of the pulp of the brain.'

Rem. The Future and the Aorist being thus intimately connected, we often find the one used for the other, especially in conditional and hypothetical sentences, where in English the Present Indicative, or the Present or Future Subjunctive, is used; as اگر دیر لگاؤنگا تو وی اس 'if I tarry long, he in this state of
پیری میں روتے روتے مرجائینگے 'if I tarry long, he in this state of
old age will weep himself to death; اگر اُسکے نزدیک جاؤگے تو گنہگار 'if you go near it you sin' (lit. 'will become a sinner'); کہ نہ
مجھ میں قدرت کہنے کی اور نہ مجھ میں طاقت سننے کی رہیگی 'for (were I to attempt it), I should not have the power to tell, nor you
the patience (lit. power) to listen.'

III. THE PRESENT TENSE.

443. The Present Tense is used to indicate an act which is now taking place, or a repeated, habitual, or enduring act; it also commonly expresses a universal truth, e.g.

وہ کیا کرتا ہے 'what is he doing?'

کیا دیکھتے ہو 'what are you looking at?' or 'what
do you see?'

جو کچھ تو کہتا ہے میں یہ سب 'I understand all this that you are
سمجھتا ہوں saying.'

‘men conform to the ways of their kings.’
 پادشاہوں کے طریقے پر ہوتے ہیں

‘this sun and moon are revolving night and day.’
 رات دن یہ سورہ و ماہ پھرتے ہیں

Rem. a. An act which is now taking place may also be expressed by using the perfect participle of a verb compounded with رہنا in place of the imperfect participle, for in both cases the participle is used as a *hāl*:
e.g. عورت صاحب سو رہا (= سوتا) ہے ‘the master is sleeping;’
 عورت نہا رہی (= نہاتی) ہے ‘the woman is bathing.’

Rem. b. The auxiliary, both in this tense and the Perfect, occasionally takes the form ہینگا, which is generally more emphatic than وہ ہے; as وہ مارتا ہینگا ‘he is (or I am sure he is) beating.’ The auxiliary may also take this form when used independently; as آیا یہ کون ہینگے ‘alas! who are these?’

444. The auxiliary is often omitted, chiefly in negative sentences (*cf.* § 148, *Rem.*), and the Present then assumes the form of the Past Conditional, but the two tenses must not be confounded: *e.g.*

‘the people of the caravan do not mention (it), because you would be ashamed.’
 قافلے کے آدمی اس ایسے نہیں کہتے کہ تو شرمندہ ہوگا

‘no one falls into a well of himself.’
 کوئی آپ سے کوئے میں نہیں گرتا

And in two co-ordinate sentences, the verbs of which are both in the Present, the auxiliary of one may be omitted, unless emphasis requires it to be repeated: *e.g.*

‘she neither moves nor stirs.’
 وہ نہ ہلتی ہے نہ ڈالتی

445. The Present Tense is commonly used in narrative for a past for the sake of greater vividness (the *Historical Present*): *e.g.*

‘آئکھیں ملکر جو دیکھتا ہوں تو اُس مکان میں نہ وہ بوڑھا ہی نہ کوئی اور ہی’ when I rubbed my eyes and looked (lit. when, having rubbed my eyes, I look), lo! neither that old man nor any one else was (lit. is) in that house.’

‘پھر رونے لگے اور فریاد اور زاری کرنے لگے مگر کیا ہوتا ہی اور کون سنتا ہی’ thereupon we began to weep and to cry aloud and wail, but what comes of it? and who hears? (i.e. nothing came of it, etc.).

446. The Present Tense is also frequently used for the Future to indicate that an action will take place forthwith, or shortly after the time of speaking: *e.g.*

‘تو چلو میں بھی چلتا ہوں’ you go, I also am coming (immediately).’

‘میں ابھی حکم کرتا ہوں’ I will this instant give the order.’

‘جلد پھر آتا ہوں’ I shall speedily return.’

447. The Present Tense is occasionally employed in conditional sentences as a Future Subjunctive: as

‘اگر میں بھی منع کرتا ہوں تو ابھی مینا کی طرح سے مارا جاتا ہوں’ if I too forbid (her), I shall be instantly killed as the *mainā* has been.’

‘اگر میں اپنی بانی پر آتا ہوں تو اُسکی سلطنت کو خاک میں ملا دیتا ہوں’ if I come according to my plighted word,¹ I will mingle his kingdom with the dust.’

¹ That is to say, “if I say I will come and do come.” We know of no authority for the meaning of “one’s own might,” which is given to the word *bānī* in the vocabulary of the *Totā Kahānī*. The word means simply ‘speech,’ ‘word,’ and the phrase *bānī par ānā* is explained by Urdū scholars as we have translated it.

Rem. An act which *it is intended to perform* (the Present Intentional) is expressed as in English: *e.g.* وَهُ لِكَهْنَه كُو هِي 'he is going to write' (see § 412.)

IV. THE PAST IMPERFECT TENSE.

448. The Past Imperfect Tense indicates an action which was going on at some past time spoken of: as

هُر طرف دِيكُهتا پهرتا تها 'he was wandering about, looking around him.'

هُوا نَرَم نَرَم بهتِي تهي 'a very soft breeze was blowing.'

Rem. The same idea is expressed by using the perfect participle of a verb compounded with رَهنا in place of the simple imperfect participle; مَيں آهست آهست پيه 'she was bathing;' وَه نہا رهي (= نہاتي) تهي 'I was repeating this verse in a very low voice.'

449. In many cases this tense must be rendered by the English Past Indefinite: as

هُو پيه کہتے تھے سو کرتا تها 'he did whatever they told him (at the time).'

از بسکہ خیر خواهي اور تدبیر اور 'inasmuch as he was aware of his loyalty, judgment, and devotion.'

450. The auxiliary is often omitted¹: *e.g.*

هُو کوئي آدمي ميري نظر پڑتا منع کرتا 'every one I saw (at the time) forbade me.'

¹ As this tense then assumes the form of the Past Conditional, it is very generally mistaken for the latter by European grammarians. The two tenses, however, are essentially different, the one occurring in the Indicative Mood alone, the other only in the Subjunctive, and never admitting of the auxiliary تها after it, as the Imperfect Indicative does. Nor can either of these tenses ever have the signification of the *Present*, as the grammarians affirm.

اُسکے اگر وہ پانی نہ لاتی تو یہ اس کے
 باسن پھوڑ ڈالتا dog) broke her vessels.'

Rem. In two coordinate sentences, the verbs of both of which are in the Past Imperfect, the auxiliary is usually expressed with the last alone: as وہ شکر خدا کا کرتا اور گوج در گوج چلا جاتا تھا 'he was thanking God and going on stage by stage.'

451. The Past Imperfect is frequently used to indicate an act that *was wont* to be done, and the auxiliary is then often omitted: *e.g.*¹

اُس کوئے کا نام زندانِ سلیمان
 کہتے تھے Prison.'

غیمبتِ سننے میں جو مزا آتا تھا
 اُس کو دل سے بھلا دیا I effaced from my mind the pleasure
 I was wont to derive from listening
 to slander.'

اور وہ رنگ جو گندن سا دمکتا تھا
 ہلدی سا بن گیا which used to glisten like bright
 gold became like turmeric.'

جس وقت سفر سے آتا ہر ایک
 ملک کا تحفہ بہ طریقِ سوغات
 لاتا اور مجھے دیتا curiosities of each country (he
 visited) as presents for me' (*lit.* 'and used to give them to me').

V. THE PAST INDEFINITE TENSE.

452. The Past Indefinite Tense indicates an action completed at some past time, and is commonly employed in narrating past events which do not involve the idea of *duration*. Its *passive* construction (when the participle

¹ See note on preceding page.

is *passive*), as also that of the other past tenses composed of a passive participle, has been explained in § 185, 191, etc.: *e.g.*

وہ میری مکان پر دی گیا 'he left it at my house on his way.'

اُس نے صحرا کی راہ لی 'he took the road to the desert.'

453. *a.* After the conditional particles اگر, جو, 'if,' and after other particles (*e.g.* جب 'when,' etc.), which imply the conditional meaning of اگر, the Past Indefinite often takes a *future* sense, the condition being represented as already fulfilled; but it may be rendered in English by the Present: as

اگر یہ راز فاش ہوا تو تیری حق میں بہت بُرا ہے 'if this secret is (*lit.* was, or became) divulged, it will be (*lit.* is) very bad for you.'

لیکن ایک کام ہمارا ہے۔ اگر وہ اس سے ہو سکا اور خیانت نہ کی اور بہ خوبی انجام دیا اور اس امتحان میں پورا اُترا۔ تو میں قول قرار کرتا ہوں کہ زیادہ پادشاہ سے سُلوک کرونگا 'but I have a work (for him to do), if that can be done by this (youth), and he practises no treachery, but accomplishes it satisfactorily, and comes out perfect in this ordeal, then I promise that I will deal with him better than any king.'

b. The verbs of the *principal* clauses in the above sentences are in the Present and Future, but the Past Indefinite is also employed to indicate an act, the occurrence of which is so certain, that it may be described as having already taken place: as

اگر بادشاہ ایسے لوگوں کی جھوٹے 'if the king begins to listen to the mis-
 سچ باتیں سننے لگا اور اصل حال representations (*lit.* false and true
 کی تحقیق پر التفات نہ کی words) of such persons, and does not
 تو طرح طرح کی خرابیاں پیدا attempt to inquire into the actual
 ہوئیں facts of the case, various kinds of
 evils will result (*lit.* have resulted).

VI. THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.

454. The Present Perfect (or Past Proximate) Tense indicates an act which at the moment of speaking has been already completed, and remains in a state of completion : *e.g.*

وہ کانپور گیا ہے 'he is gone to Kānhpūr (Cawnpore).'
 راجہ صاحب نے شیر مارا ہے 'the Rāja Śāhib has killed a tiger.'

455. The auxiliary is often omitted, or in other words the Past Indefinite is used for the Present Perfect : *e.g.*

یہ چار باتیں جو اوپر بیان ہوئیں 'these four things that have been
 mentioned above.'

جس شخص کے سینے میں کینہ 'naught but injury can proceed from
 جم گیا (ہی. so.) اُس سے بجز him in whose breast hatred has
 ضرر کے کچھ فائدہ حاصل نہ ہوگا established itself.'

Rem. In the colloquial the Present Perfect is frequently used for the Present in the sense of the Proximate Future, and in such cases the auxiliary is generally omitted: *e.g.* (Master *log.*) ہماری ٹوپی اور چپڑی 'bring my hat and stick quickly;' (Servant) لایا صاحب 'I am bringing it, Sir' (*lit.* 'I have brought').

VII. THE PAST PERFECT TENSE.

456. The Past Perfect (or Past Remote) Tense indicates that an act *had taken place* at the time spoken of, or anterior to some other past event spoken of or implied: *e.g.*

وہ دُور سے چلکر آیا تھا 'he had come walking from a distance.'

میں نے ایسی بات کبھی نہ سنی تھی 'I had never heard such a thing.'

But the auxiliary is often omitted, or in other words the Past Indefinite is used for the Past Perfect. It must however be rendered in English by the Past Perfect: *e.g.*

میں نے زید کو بہت سمجھایا 'I had reasoned a great deal with Zaid.'
(so, تھا)

457. The Past Perfect is often used where in English we use the Past Indefinite; usually so when the action is regarded by the narrator as completely past, so that its results have already become manifest at the time spoken of; or when it is implied that since the occurrence of that action, another, in some way connected with it, has occurred: *e.g.*

اور جب شیر نے میری تئیں تیری 'and whatever I (had) promised when
لے کو بھیجا تھا جو کچھ میں the lion (had) sent me to bring
نے عہد و پیمان کیا تھا thee.'

بلی آئی تھی میں نے اُسکو تھولا تھا 'the cat came (*lit.* had come), (and) I
بھیگی تھی (had) felt her, and she was wet
(and so I knew it was raining).'

Rem. The Past Perfect Indicative is sometimes used for the Past Conditional, for the sake of greater vividness: as اُس دوست نے مجھے ہلاک کیا تھا۔ اگر یہ دانا دشمن نہ ہوتا تو کام میرا ہاتھ سے جا چکا

تھا اور جان میری اس خیال میں تمام ہوئی تھی 'that friend well nigh destroyed me: if it had not been for this wise enemy, my work was well nigh gone from my hands, and my life brought to a close in this vain idea.'

c. THE IMPERATIVE.

458. The Imperative has only the second person singular and plural; the other persons are supplied by the aorist. It has two forms, the Imperative proper, which is used in giving *orders, directions, or advice*, and the Precative (§ 176), which implies simple *request, advice, entreaty, or exhortation*.

Rem. The second of the Precative forms, however, often has the force of a command, as will be seen from the examples given below.

459. The Precative again has two forms, one ending in ـے , the other in ـو , both of which are used in either the singular or plural, the former always in connection with the *pronomen reverentiae* آپ, expressed or understood, the latter with the personal pronouns تُو 'thou,' and تُم 'you.'

460. The Imperative, and the Precative ending in *iyē*, are used with reference to the immediate present, or without reference to any definite time; the Precative ending in *iyō* most commonly refers to the Future. The addition of گَا to the Precative ending in *iyē* imparts to it also a future signification, but the form is not very common: *e.g.*

میرا کہنا مان اور اس بیہودہ آرزو 'mind what I say, and chase this
 کو دل سے نکال vain desire from thy mind.'
 تُم یہاں بیٹھو 'you sit here.'

‘mention to this slave anything you
 جو کچھ دُرکار ہو اِس خانہ زاد کو
 کہیں may require.’

‘come again when you have spent
 اِس کو کھا پیکر پھر آئیو اور جو
 مانگیگا لیجیو this, and take whatever you want.’

‘when she asks thy story, thou shalt
 جب تیرا احوال پوچھے تُو کہیو
 میں عجم کا رہنے والا ہوں say: I am an inhabitant of Persia.’

‘and if not, do (i.e. you shall do)
 نہیں تو جو جی چاہیگا سو مجھے
 کیجیگا unto me whatever you please.’

Rem. The English Imperative being used to express a *request* as well as an *order*, it is not at all necessary to employ such phrases as “please to do,” or “you will be pleased to do,” etc., in rendering the Precative forms; nor indeed do these phrases at all represent the idea in a native’s mind when he uses a Precative. We have repeatedly observed, that when a native scholar well acquainted with English is asked to render in Urdū such an expression as “please do this,” he invariably uses the phrase *az rāhē mihrbānā isko karo* or *kājiye*. It is evident too that in not a few cases the phrases “please to,” etc., cannot be applied: as for example in the following sentence, in which the speaker is soliloquizing: اگر پیٹکری اور گندھک کو چراغ میں بٹی کے آس پاس: for if you sprinkle alum and sulphur in a lamp, round about the wick, no matter how strong a wind blow, the lamp will not be extinguished.’

461. The Precative ending in *o* is also employed in benedictions and imprecations: *e.g.*

‘may you be happy!’
 خوش رہیو
 ‘may the curse of God be upon
 خدایکے لعنت کافروں اور مُشرکوں
 پر ہو جیو infidels and believers in a plurality
 of gods!’

462. The negatives نہ and نہیں in connection with the Imperative usually express a *strict negation*, but the former is occasionally prohibitive (especially in connection with the Precative ending in *iyō*); the negative مت is used in a prohibitive sense, and hence occurs with the Imperative or Precative alone: *e.g.*

تُو ڈر نہیں 'be not afraid.'

آخِرَت کے سامان کرنے میں غفلت نہ کر the world to come.'

آج گھر مت جاؤ 'don't go home to-day.'

اُن کی آشنائی کا اِعتِماد نہ کریے 'rely not on their friendship.'

اِس درخت کے پاس نہ جائیو 'you are not to approach this tree' (or 'thou shalt not go near this tree').

بھولیو مت 'you will not forget' ('take care that you don't forget').

Rem. As the negative نہیں does not occur in the *Bāg o bahār* in connection with the Imperative, therefore, we suppose, the European grammarians say, that it "is not used with the Imperative." That it is so used will be seen from the first of the above examples, and we may add that (though not so common as نہ) it is by no means uncommon in such cases.

463. The Aorist, which is connected with the Imperative both in form and signification, is used instead of it in the first and third persons, but usually with less authority than the Imperative: *e.g.*

وہ کیا بات تھی؟ ذرا مِیں بھی سُنوں 'what was it that he said? let me also just hear.'

کیا 'let us see what is recorded in her destiny.'
 لکھا ہے

نہ 'you will be careful: let her not move so that the stitches give way.'
 کرے جو ٹانگے ٹوٹ جائیں

'let no one come near me' (not, "no one *must* come near me:" see *Rem. d*, § 439).
 کوئی میری پاس نہ آوی

'but let the princess promise this, to wit, that she will not withdraw from what she has said' (not, "the princess *must* promise, etc."').
 لیکن ملکہ اس کا قول قرار کریں کہ
 اپنے کہنے سے نہ پھریں

'let no one plead advanced age as an excuse for not acquiring (not trying to attain to) perfection.'
 کمال نہ حاصل کرنے کے لیے عمر
 کی زیادتی کا عذر نہ کری

464. Reversely, the Imperative is occasionally used for the second person singular of the Aorist, usually in the first of two correlative clauses which follow a particle implying a condition or the relative pronoun, when the second clause contains an Imperative: *e.g.*

'do whatever you think proper.'
 جو مناسب جانے (= جانے) سو کر

Rem. The use of the Imperative for the Aorist is not so common as the grammarians suppose; it occurs, we believe, only in sentences of the description mentioned above. In the following examples the last verb is not "an Aorist in the Imperative form," but a simple Imperative: 'do so (or act in this wise): kill the prince by stratagem' (not, "act in such a manner as to kill, etc.," for کہ here is simply *explicative*, and does not denote the

purpose or object of the verb in the first clause); *ح تئیں تُو پار چلئے* 'in the mean time you make some arrangement to cross over' (not, "*whilst thou formest some plan, etc.*").

465. The Imperative, singular and plural, of the verb *لینا* 'to take,' is often used as an interjection, signifying *there or there now ! enough ! peace ! etc. : e.g.*

لے اپنا کام کر 'enough! go on with thy work.'

لے میں نے اپنی حقیقت سب سنائی 'there now! I have told you my whole history.'

لو مجھے دیکھا خاطر جمع ہوئی 'there! you have seen me; is your mind relieved?'

میں نے کہا لو اب بہت مگر چکر کیا 'I said: Now have done! you have tried subterfuges enough.'

d. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND ITS TENSES.

I. THE AORIST.

466. The Aorist is used in the Subjunctive Mood, as a Present or Future, in correlative conditional clauses that depend upon *اگر*, or any particle having the sense of *اگر*. The conditional clause commonly precedes the principal clause (but it may follow it), and is separated from it by the *جواب شرط*, or *correlative* particle, *تو*, which is generally not translated. The Aorist is used in one or both clauses, according to the following rules :

1) a. If both the conditional and the principal clause imply *uncertainty, doubt, possibility, or indefiniteness*, the Aorist is used in both : *e.g.*

اگر وہ آجاي تو کیا کروں 'if he should come, what am I to do?'
 اگر اجازت ہو تو اُنکا حال تمہاري
 رُو برو بياں کروں 'if permission be granted, I will state
 their case in your presence.'
 حنظل سے شہد تپکے جو لگے نشتر
 رنبورِ عسل 'honey would drop from the colo-
 cynth-gourd if the sting of the
 honey-bee were to touch it.'

b. The Present Potential occasionally occurs in place of the Aorist in the principal clause : *e.g.*

اگر ملکہ کی سلطنت پر نگاہ
 کیجیے تو اُسکی آمد فقط
 بارِ چرخانے کے خرچ کو بھري
 کفایت نہ کرتی ہوگی 'if one look at the princess's do-
 minion, its revenue probably does
 not suffice (may not be sufficing) for
 the expenditure of the cuisine
 alone.'

c. And an Imperative may take the place of the Aorist in the conditional clause : as

تھوڑا پانی گرم کر دي تو نہاؤں 'warm a little water and I'll bathe.'
 ایک بیٹا جیتا جاگتا مجھے دي
 تو میرا نام اور اس سلطنت کا
 نشان قائم رہے 'bestow on me a living son, then
 will my name and the trace of this
 empire endure.'

Rem. The Aorist of the conditional clause may often be rendered in English by the Past Imperfect, as in the third of the above examples.

2). If the condition be regarded as *uncertain*, or only *possible*, etc., while the conditioned is regarded as *certain* and *positive*, the Aorist is employed in the conditional, and the Present or Future Indicative in the principal clause : as

اگر چلو تو اچھا ہی 'if you come, it is well.'
 اگر بن آوي تو بڑی بات ہی 'if it succeed, it is a great matter.'

جو کوئی دَعْوٰی کری اِسکا بڑا نادان 'any one who pretends to this is a
 ھی great fool.'

شرافت اُسی کو حاصل ہوگی کہ 'honour will be obtained by him
 جس پر بادشاہ نظر عنایت کی alone on whom the monarch shall
 فرماوی look with favour.'

Rem. a. The Relative Pronoun, implying as it often does a virtual hypothesis, is commonly followed by the Subjunctive, as in the last of the above examples. (*cf.* § 388, *Rem.*)

Rem. b. The Future is often used in the conditional clause also, and occasionally where the idea of certainty is, to say the least, not very prominent (see § 442, *Rem.*); but wherever this idea is prominent, the Indicative is used in both clauses: *e.g.* اگر جلد آوگے تو مجھے جیتا 'if you come soon (as I expect, or am sure, you will), you will find me alive.'

467. The Aorist is also employed in subordinate clauses with one or other of the conjunctions جو 'that,' کہ (= Lat. *ut*), تاکہ 'in order that' (= Lat. *quo*), بشرطیکہ 'on condition, or provided, that,' شاید کہ 'it may be that, perchance,' etc., to express an *object or purpose, effect or consequence, resolution, hope, desire, disinclination, order, advice, necessity, duty* (as signified by the phrases لازم ہے, چاہیئے, etc. see § 439 and *Rem. b.*), *effort, permission, fear*, etc.:¹ *e.g.*

قصد کیا کہ اُس راہ سے چلوں 'I determined to go (that I would go) by that road.'

آدمیوں کے واسطے یہ بہتر معلوم ہوتا ہے کہ گوشہ نشین ہو 'it appears better for men that they become recluses.'

جائیں

¹ This construction, which is found in the Persian also, would appear to be derived from the Arabic.

پادشاہ کو چاہیئے کہ اُمرا اور
 ارکانِ دولت سے ایسا برتاؤ کری کہ
 اُنکو پادشاہ کی موافقت اور
 نیک خواہی کا یقین ہو جائے

‘the king should so treat his lords
 and nobles that they may be
 assured of His Majesty’s sympathy
 and good-will.’

چاہیئے کہ قاصد فاضل ہو
 ‘a messenger (or emissary) should be
 one possessed of learning.’

اگر تجھے آرزو کمال ہی کے یہ
 ماہیت دریافت کری
 ‘if you have great desire to know
 this matter.’

میں ڈرتا ہوں کہ شاید دُعاے بد
 نہ کری
 ‘I am afraid that he may not perhaps
 curse me (or, according to an
 idiom of the language, ‘that he
 may curse me’).

سقراط نے ایک زبان دراز عورت سے
 شادی کی تاکہ اپنی قوتِ غصی
 کو مغلوب کری
 ‘Socrates (or, according to Johnson’s
 Dictionary, Hippocrates) married
 a shrew in order to subdue his
 passion of anger.’

بشرطیکہ جھوٹہ اس میں کوڑی پھر
 نہ ہو
 ‘provided there be not as much as a
 — *kauri* of untruth in it.’

شاید (کے) اُس کا ہاتھ راس آوی
 ‘perhaps his hand (treatment) may
 prove successful.’

Rem. a. In sentences signifying *purpose, resolution, wish, etc.*, the Aorist may generally be rendered in English by the gerund with *to*, since this corresponds to the genitive (subjective) or the dative of the Urdū gerund, and this may in most cases be substituted for the construction with the Aorist: *e.g.* the first of the above examples may also be constructed thus: *میں نے اُس راہ سے چلنے کا قصد کیا*; and the fifth thus: *اگر تجھے اس ماہیت کے دریافت کرنے کو آرزو کمال ہی*.

Rem. b. The *direct oration* often occurs in such subordinate clauses as express *purpose* or *resolution*: اور قصد کیا کہ بہن کے پاس چلیے ‘and determined to go to my sister’ (*lit.* ‘that I will go’); آنکھیں دروازی کی طرف لگ رہی تھیں کہ دیکھیے کیا ظاہر ہوتا ہے ‘my eyes were kept fixed in the direction of the door to see what was going to appear’ (*lit.* ‘saying to myself, Let me see what is going to appear’).

Rem. c. The phrases چاہیئے, لازم ہے, etc., may also be constructed with the infinitive (§ 439, and *Rem. b.* and *c.*). In reference to past time these phrases take the forms چاہیئے تھا, لازم تھا, and are followed by کہ with the Past Perfect Subjunctive (the Past Conditional): *e.g.* چاہیئے تھا کہ مہاراج اپنے غضب پر غالب رہتے ‘Your Majesty ought to have subdued your wrath.’

468. The Aorist is used to express a wish which, generally speaking, is regarded as attainable: as

عمر تیری بڑھے دولت دو چند ہو وی ‘may your life be prolonged! your wealth be multiplied!’

جب تلک یہ زمین و آسمان برپا ہے تمہاری تاج و تخت قائم رہی ‘may your crown and throne (your sovereignty) endure as long as this earth and heaven last!’

469. The Aorist is used in questions indicating doubt or perplexity: as

اَلٰہی اب کیا کروں ‘O God! what am I to do now?’

کیا کہوں اور کسکا شکوہ کروں ‘what should I say? and of whom should I complain?’

اِندر کا اکھاڑا کہر یا پیروں کا اُتارا ‘should I call it Indra’s court, or a descent of fairies?’

470. The second person, singular and plural, of the Aorist is used as a disjunctive conjunction : *e.g.*

میں نہیں کہتا رہو چاہو جاؤ ‘I say nothing: remain or go (as you please).’

II. THE PRESENT POTENTIAL.

471. The Present Potential, as its name implies, occurs chiefly in potential propositions, with a definite or indefinite subject, and indicates that a thing *may, might, or must be happening*: it corresponds therefore to the English Present Imperfect Subjunctive. It stands to the Aorist in the same relation as the Present Imperfect Indicative to the Present Indefinite; and hence the Aorist is often used in its place. Of the two forms in which it occurs, that in which the *future* of the verb ہونا is used may occasionally be rendered in English by the Future Imperfect Indicative; but those who speak the language recognize no distinction between the two forms. The following are examples of its use:

وہ اپنے جی میں کیا کہتا ہوگا ‘what must he be thinking?’ (*lit.* ‘saying in his mind’).

شاید تو جانتا ہوگا کہ مجھ کو یہ سب فراغت اور دولت بے مشقت حاصل ہوئی ‘perhaps you think (*lit.* may be thinking) that I have become possessed of all this comfort and wealth without trouble.’

آیسے غریب ہزاروں تمہاری مملکتوں میں آتے جاتے ہونگے ‘thousands of such poor people must be constantly passing through (*lit.* may be coming and going in) your dominions.’

وہ حاکم ایسا ہونا چاہیئے کہ 'that ruler ought to be well acquainted with (*lit.* such as may be knowing well) the laws of government.'

سیاست کے قاعدی خوب جانتا ہو

اور جو بادشاہ بیدار ہو سلطنت 'and if the king look (*lit.* be looking) watchfully after the affairs of his kingdom, no disturbance by any means enters the realm.'

کے کارو بار پر توجہ کرتا ہو تو کسی طرح سلطنت میں خلل نہیں آتا

اُسکے کلام میں کوئی فقرہ ایسا 'there is no such sentence in his discourse whereby malevolence towards any one may be proved.'

نہیں ہے جس سے کسی کی بد خواہی ثابت ہوتی ہو

III. THE PAST POTENTIAL.

472. The Past Potential is employed when it is indicated that a thing *may, might, or must have happened*. It has two forms, corresponding to those of the Present Potential, but no distinction is generally made between them: *e.g.*

آپ نے یہ بےیت سنی ہوگی 'Your Majesty may (or must) have heard this couplet.'

خدا جانے اُنکی کیا حالت ہوئی 'God knows what their state may have been.'

ہوگی

جس وقت تیارِی اس کی 'what a very charming residence must have been made when it was first constructed' (*lit.* 'when its preparation may have taken place').

(ہوئی *sc.*) ہوگی کیا ہے مکان دِل چسپ بنا ہوگا

اپنے اور اپنے بزرگوں کے احسان
 جو دوسری شخص یا اُسکے
 بزرگوں کی نسبت ہوئے ہوں
 بیان کرتا ہے

‘he mentions the kindnesses which he
 or his forefathers may have done
 to another or to his forefathers.’

تیری گروہ نے جو ظلم آدمیوں کے
 ہاتھ سے اُٹھایا ہو تو بھی کہہ

‘do you also mention whatever
 oppression your tribe may have
 suffered at the hands of men.’

Rem. The third of the above examples is thus rendered in Prof. Monier Williams’ *Hindūstānī Grammar* (p. 136, § 510): “When it shall be repaired, what a charming place it will be made.” But although this tense may sometimes be rendered in English by the *Future Perfect*, it is never used in the sense of, and can certainly never be rendered by, the *Future Indefinite*.

IV. THE PAST CONDITIONAL.

473. The Past Conditional corresponds to the English Past Perfect Subjunctive. It has two forms, the one (which is that most commonly used) consisting simply of the imperfect participle of a verb; the other of the perfect participle in combination with the imperfect participle of the verb ہونا.

474. The Past Conditional is used in correlative conditional clauses that depend upon اگر, or any particle having the sense of اگر. In the leading clause it may generally be rendered in English by the Future Perfect Subjunctive: *e.g.*

اگر تو وہ دیکھتا جو میں نے دیکھا
 ہی ہرگز اُنکے پاس نہ آتا

‘had you seen what I have seen, you
 would never have come near them.’

جو مجھے مَرید کرنے کی خواہش نہ ہوتی تو میں چور کی چرب زبانی سے فریب نہ کھاتا 'if the desire to make a disciple had not possessed me, I should not have been deceived by a thief's oiliness of speech.'

اُندھا بیٹا تمہاری کس کام آتا؟ جو کچھ بیٹا کرتا میں بھی کر سکتا ہوں 'of what use would a blind son have been to you? I too can do whatever a son would have done.' (The condition اگر ہوتا is here understood in both sentences.)

تا کہ اُسکے فساد سے جو ضرر پیدا ہوتے نہ ہونے پائیں 'so that the evils which would result (*lit.* would have resulted) from his mischief (were he permitted to practise it) be not allowed to happen.'

اگر کسی اور نے یہ حرکت بے معنی کی ہوتی اُسکی بوتیاں کٹوا چیلوں کو بانٹتی 'had any one else committed such senseless impropriety of conduct, I would have had him cut into mince-meat, and portioned it out to the kites.'

تو ناحق مارا گیا ہوتا پرچہ گیا 'you would have been unjustly (or needlessly) killed, (had you been killed), but you (have) escaped.'

Rem. a. The condition, as we have shown in some of the above examples, is sometimes omitted. It is occasionally implied in a negative clause preceding the principal clause: *e.g.* میں نے اُس میں کچھ 'I perceived nothing grand in him to make me test (*lit.* that I should have tested) his strength.' This sentence is taken from the *Khīrad Afroz* (p. 62), and the following note upon it by the editor of the work serves to show how completely

the Past Conditional Tense is misunderstood by European grammarians: "The aorist instead of the present here, and a neuter verb instead of an active, might well be expected. As it is, the sentence is quite ungrammatical."

Rem. b. As it is sometimes necessary to render the Past Perfect Indicative of the Urdū by the English Past Imperfect, so the Past Conditional has occasionally to be rendered in English by the Past Imperfect Subjunctive. Such is the case in the fourth of the above examples. (*cf.* § 457.)

475. Instead of the Past Conditional, the Past Perfect Indicative is occasionally used in the principal clause, for the sake of greater vividness; but it may be rendered in English by the Past Indefinite; as

اگر یہہ دانا دُشمن نہ ہوتا	'had it not been for this wise enemy,
تو کام میرا ہاتھ سے جاچکا تھا	my work was well nigh gone from
اور جان میری اس خیال میں	my hands, and my life brought to
تمام ہوئی تھی	a close in (pursuit of) this idea.'

476. The Past Conditional is also used to express a wish for a thing that is regarded as unattainable, and is then commonly preceded by the conjunction کاشکے or کاشکے 'O that!' 'would that!' *e.g.*

کاشکے اُنکو وہاں نہ چھوڑ آتے 'would that I (*lit.* we) had not left them behind there!'

کاشکے تمہاری خدمت میں	'would that I had not cherished a
بندگی پیدا نہ کی ہوتی اور یہہ	devoted attachment to you, and
شفقت جو صاحب میری حق	that you (<i>lit.</i> the master) had not
میں کرتے ہیں نہ کرتے	shown for me the tenderness which
you have shown and still show	(<i>lit.</i> which you are showing)!'

Rem. The use of *کاشکے* however is not always necessary; a wish may be implied even in a conditional sentence: *e.g.* اگر زید ہوتا تو کیا *خوب ہوتا* 'If Zaid were (or, had been) here, how nice it would be (or, would have been)' = 'I wish Zaid were (or had been) here.'

e. THE PASSIVE VOICE.

477. When the agent of an act is to be named, the Active Voice must be employed (except in such tenses as are composed of a perfect participle of directly transitive verbs, which are undoubtedly passive in construction, though regarded as active by those who speak Urdū). But the subject of a sentence is frequently not specified, either because it is not known, or it is not desired to mention it. The speaker, however, has the option of expressing himself personally by such forms as *لوگ کہتے ہیں* or *کہتے ہیں* 'people say' (Fr. *on dit*), *کہنے والا کہتا ہے* 'one calls' (or 'it is called'), or *کہتا ہے* 'one says, or one who is in a position to say, says;' or by means of the Passive Voice used impersonally, in the third person singular masculine; as *دیکھا جائیگا* 'it will be seen to;' or personally as explained in the next paragraph.

478. The personal passive is commonly used in Urdū; the direct object or accusative of the active voice becoming the subject of the passive: *e.g.*

جب ایک گز عمیق گڑھا کھودا گیا 'when a hole a yard deep was dug.'
 حُکْمَت کی کتابوں میں یہ بات 'it (the following fact) has been
 ثابت کی گئی ہے proved in philosophical works.'

جب جھوٹی بات کسی کی
نسبت عیب نکالنے کے واسطے
بیان کی جائے

‘when a lie is told regarding any one
to make it appear that he has
faults.’

‘you had been unjustly killed, but
you escaped.’

Rem. If the accusative in the active voice be constructed with کو, the same form may be retained in the passive; but the passive then becomes impersonal: e.g. یادگار کے لحاظ سے اگر اُسکو بھی دیکھا جاوی lit. ‘if it too be viewed as a memorial;’ lit. ‘if it be looked at in reference to it also as a memorial.’

479. If the verb in the active voice governs two accusatives, that which has the nominative form, or which is next to the verb, becomes the nominative to the passive: as

اگر دونوں کو مُقابلہ کیا جاوی
‘if the two be compared;’ lit. ‘if
comparison in reference to the
two be made.’

مُناسب ہی کے اُس شخص کو
بنائے کار کہا جاوی
‘it is right that that person be called
the architect of the work;’ lit. ‘it
is right that architect of the work be called or said in reference to
‘that person.’

Rem. a. As the perfect participle is often used as an abstract (verbal) substantive, and the verb جانا is also employed in other constructions than that of the passive voice, many expressions which are not passive are mistaken for such by European grammarians: e.g. مجھ سے دیکھا I cannot bear to see (it),’ lit. ‘seeing, or seeing it, by me is impossible’ (not, “it is not seen by me:” cf. § 426).

Rem. b. Whether the passive be personal or impersonal, it is termed by Urdū grammarians مَا لَمْ يَسْمَعْ فَأَعْلَهُ mā lam yusamma fā‘iluhu, ‘a

verb of which the agent is not named.' In the case of a personal passive, the subject is called قائم مقامِ فاعِل 'that which stands in the place of the agent.'

Rem. c. Impersonal actives, like our *it rains, it snows*, etc., are as a rule expressed personally in Urdū: *e.g.* پانی پڑتا ہے, or میسرہ برستا ہے 'it rains,' *lit.* 'rain, or water, falls, or rains;' but the expression برستا ہے, alone, is also used.

f. CAUSAL VERBS.

480. The construction of causal verbs has been explained at length in § 199, *et seq.* If the primitive verb is intransitive, the causal is simply a transitive verb, and is constructed like other simple transitive verbs that take a single objective complement in the accusative; as میز کو ہلایا 'he shook the table;' or اُس نے میز کو ہلایا 'he shook the table;' But if the primitive verb is transitive, the causal takes two objective complements in the accusative, which are constructed according to the rules laid down in § 348 and *Rem.*: اُس نے وہ تھیلی مجھے پانی پلاؤ 'give me water to drink;' اُس کو دکھلائی 'I showed him that bag.' Both the objective complements, however, are not always expressed; as سب فقیروں کو کھلایا 'he fed all the beggars.'

g. COMPOUND VERBS.

481. Compound Verbs are of seven¹ kinds; namely, Intensives, Potentials, Completives, Continuatives formed with an imperfect participle, Frequentatives or Con-

¹ By an oversight the Continuatives formed with imperfect participles, and Transitives formed with conjunctive participles, have been omitted in the enumeration of the compound verbs in § 218. The oversight has been noticed in the errata, and the reader is requested to make the corrections there pointed out.

tinuatives formed with a perfect participle, Desideratives, and Transitives formed with a conjunctive participle. To the remarks already made concerning these (see § 208, *et seq.*) we may here add the following :

1) *Intensives*.—The intensifying verb may be transitive or intransitive; if the former, the *passive* construction, as in the case of simple transitive verbs (§ 306, *et seq.*), is employed in all the tenses composed of the perfect participle: *e.g.* اُس نے بچھو کو مار ڈالا ‘he killed the scorpion;’ but if the intensifying verb is intransitive, this construction becomes impossible, since a *passive* participle is needed for it, and such a participle cannot be formed from the intransitive final member of the compound. This however does not convert the compound verb into a “neuter,” as is generally supposed; for in Urdū, as in English, a verb is transitive if it takes an objective complement in the accusative (not the *cognate* accusative); hence, although a native grammarian must say اُس نے روٹی کو کھا گیا instead of وہ روٹی کو کھا گیا ‘he ate up the bread,’ he still parses کھا گیا as a *fēlē muta‘addī ba yak maf‘ul*, ‘a transitive verb with a single objective complement.’

Rem. In some intensive compounds, the verb which indicates the act is placed last and conjugated, the intensifying member preceding it and remaining unchanged: *e.g.* مار دیا = دی مارا ‘I (or he) laid on to (him);’ پٹک دیا = دی پٹکا ‘I (or he) threw or dashed (him or it) down.’

2), 3) *Potentials* and *Compleatives* must always be constructed *actively* in the tenses composed of the perfect participle, as in the other tenses, since the verbs سَکنا and چُکنا are intransitive: *e.g.* ہم (ہم نے) سُن چُکے ‘we have already heard.’

Rem. For the idiomatic use of the Past Indefinite Tense of verbs compounded with چُکنا, see § 210.

4) *Continuatives*, formed with an *inflected* imperfect participle, and one of the verbs جانا or رہنا, cannot but take the *active* construction

in all the tenses, as جانا or رہنا are intransitive verbs (*cf.* § 481. 1): *e.g.* وہ اسی طرح بگتے رہتی (or جاتی) ہے. 'she keeps on (or is always) prating in this same way.'

Rem. The participle in these compounds must always be inflected (see § 212, as also the *Rem.* on § 213). In the following examples, which are given under the head of Continuatives by European grammarians, there is nothing of the nature of a *continuous* or *repeated* act implied in the verb; the participle has the force of a finite verb, and very properly agrees with the subject of the sentence: تمہاری ہاتھ سے مال جاتا رہا 'your wealth has gone for good from your hands' (here رہا جاتا رہا = گیا اور رہا); اُس کے جاتی رہیگی (جائے گی اور رہے گی = جائے گی اور رہے گی). In examples like the following, again, the *continuity* of the action is implied in the verb itself (which must always be *rahnā*), the participle being used as a *hāl*, and agreeing in gender with the subject: آدمی کو چاہئے کہ اپنے عیبوں کی جستجو میں بہت سعی کرتا رہے 'it behoves a man to be ever diligent in finding out his defects.'

5), 6) *Frequentatives* or *Continuatives*, and *Desideratives*, are always *actively* constructed in the tenses composed of the perfect participle, since the participle which forms the first member of these compounds is used as an *abstract* (verbal) *substantive in the accusative* (§ 214), to which the act signified by the following verb (چاہنا or کرنا) is regarded as adhering. These compounds may take an objective complement in the accusative when the participle which forms the first member is derived from a transitive verb, but not otherwise; for the objective complement is properly that of the participle or verbal noun: *e.g.* میں سب کپڑے دیکھا کیئے 'all kept looking on, standing the while;' I wandered about in that jungle the whole day long; وہ چپکے بُت کی طرح بیٹھے سنا کی 'she, seated silent like a statue, continued to listen;' ایک مدت تک اُس غم میں رویا کیئے 'we continued to mourn for a long while under that affliction;'

‘میں تمام دن اور تمام رات پانی میں ہاتھ پاؤں مارا کیا I kept striking (out) my hands and legs in the water the whole day and the whole night.’—*Continuatives* are also formed by prefixing an *inflected* perfect participle to the verb جانا (see § 214, b): e.g. جو ہم کہیں سو ‘go on doing what I say without demur.’

Rem. We must here repeat that whenever a verbal substantive in any form is compounded with a transitive verb, the compound verb is *actively* constructed in *all* the tenses of the active voice: e.g. آدمی کی ‘a man’s voice was heard’ (*lit.* ‘gave a hearing,’ *i.e.* ‘made itself heard’); دو آدمی دکھائی دیئے ‘two men showed themselves, or appeared.’

7) *Transitives formed with a Conjunctive Participle* cannot in any case be *passively* constructed, for the reason given in § 481, 1: e.g. اُن ‘I have brought the book with me;’ اُن ‘who took away (went with) those things?’ لڑکے کو یہاں چھوڑ گیا ‘he left the boy behind here.’

Rem. Although the participle which most commonly occurs in these compounds is that of the verb لینا ‘to take,’ there is nothing in the nature of the construction to restrict it to this participle: چھوڑ جانا ‘to leave behind,’ دی جانا ‘to leave, or give on (one’s) way,’ etc., are compounds just as much as آنا and its contraction لانا ‘to come with, to bring’ are; and in the mouth of a native the former no more signify “having left, to go,” and “having given, to go,” than the latter signifies *having taken, to come*.

482. *Nominals, Staticals, Inceptives, Permissives, etc.,* are not compound verbs (see §§ 205, 213, 216). Of the *Nominals* we shall have more to say further on. The construction of the participles in statical forms has been fully explained in § 421, *et seq.* The *Inceptives, etc.,* call for little notice beyond a few examples of their use:

1) *Inceptives*.—A gerund in the locative case, with the governing postposition suppressed, is used in connection with the verb لگنا, which usually (though not invariably) follows the gerund, and in this construction takes the signification of *to begin*: as اُسکے ہاتھ پکڑ کر کہنے لگا 'he took hold of his hand, and began to say;' اُپنی بدنصیبی پر 'he began lamenting his ill-luck;' اور لگا اُس کا 'افسوس کرنے لگا' and مُنہ دیکھ دیکھ بے قرار ہو روئے 'he became agitated and began weeping.'

2) *Permissives*.—An infinitive in the dative form of the accusative, with the postposition کو suppressed, is constructed with the verb دینا, which in this construction has the sense of *to allow* or *permit*: as حویلی اگر پاک صاف پاتے ہیں 'let (him) remain in the house;' تو اُندر جانے دیتے ہیں 'if they find (them) unpolluted, they permit (them) to enter.'

3) *Acquisitives*.—The same construction is employed as in Permissives, the verb پانا, in the sense of *to get* or *obtain permission*, or a *chance* or *opportunity*, *to be allowed*, taking the place of دینا: as آسمان کی طرف نگاہ نہ کرنے پاوی 'let him not be allowed to look towards the sky;' نہ مجھے کوئی دیکھنے پاتا تھا 'nor was any one permitted to see me.'

4) *Desideratives*.—In these an infinitive constructed as in the Permissives, etc., is used in connection with the verbs چاہنا and مانگنا, 'to wish, or want;' as آپ کا گھوڑا دیکھنے چاہتا ہوں 'I wish to see your horse;' وہ گھر جانے مانگتا ہے 'he wants to go home.' With the verb چاہنا however, the infinitive more generally takes the *nominative form* of the accusative: as جب کوئی مٹھی دوسری چپتے کی آنا 'when a bee of another hive wishes to come;' چاہتی ہے 'they will unjustly desire to seize and apply to (their own) use the earnings of others.'

483. *Nominal Verbs*.—The so-called Nominals are commonly, though incorrectly, regarded as Compound Verbs. They consist simply of a verb and a predicative substantive or adjective, which is in the nominative case if the verb is a neuter one denoting existence (either simple or modified), and in the accusative (the nom. form) if the verb is transitive. In the first of these cases the verb agrees with its proper subject (unless the predicative substantive is defined by a genitive or adjective, § 293); and a predicative adjective, if it be declinable, also agrees in gender and number with the subject: as

اگر یہ میری روبرو تربیت نہ ہوگا ‘if he shall not be reared in my presence.’

یہ ساتوں لڑکیاں کھڑی تھیں ‘all these seven girls were standing.’
 کہ انکے اخلاق درست ہو جائیں۔ ‘that their morals become correct.’
 اور اعانت ایک دوسری کی جب ‘and one’s helping another is possible
 ہی ہوسکتی ہی کہ اکٹھے رہیں only when they dwell together.’

Rem. a. The predicative noun most commonly comes immediately before the verb, as in the above examples; but it may also follow the verb, as is frequently the case in poetry: *e.g.* ایسے مہمان کی تو لازم ‘the heart of such a guest ought indeed to be (esteemed) precious.’

Rem. b. Even what are clearly *phrases* are erroneously classed by European grammarians among what they term “Nominal Compounds.” Now in phrases the substantive and verb stand to each other in relations distinct from those specified above, the substantive being either in the nominative as the *subject* of the verb, or in an oblique case: *e.g.* اُن کو یاد آیا ‘they remembered’ (properly, ‘recollection came to them’); مجھ کو اُچھ پر افسوس آتا ہے ‘I feel (am possessed with) pity for

you' (for the use of *آنا* with the Dative of the possessor see § 340);
 پیت میں آگ لگی 'the fire (of hunger) kindled in (my) stomach';
 مجھے بھی وزیر کا کہنا یاد (میں سے) آیا 'I also called to mind what the
wazir had said' (properly, 'to me also the *wazir*'s saying or remark
 came into recollection');
 کہ وقت پر کام (میں سے) آتا ہے 'so that on
 occasion it comes of use' (properly, 'into use').

484. In the case where a predicative noun in the accusative is added to a transitive verb, the verb may be one which requires a single objective complement alone, or it may be a *factitive* verb (see § 349). In the first of these cases the predicative substantive necessarily becomes the *subject* of the verb in those tenses which are passively constructed with the Agent case: *e.g.* اُس نے ڈبکی ماری 'he dived (a dive was taken, *lit.* struck, by him).' In the second, the construction of the verb in the same tenses depends upon the accusative of the *object*: if this be in the *nominative* form, the verb (as also a predicative adjective, if it be declinable) agrees with it; but if it be in the *dative* form, the verb (as also the adjective) is impersonally constructed (see §§ 348—350): *e.g.*

ہرچند اُس فُقل کی کُنْجی تلاش کی نہ ملی 'much as they searched for the key of that lock, it was not found' (properly, 'much as the key of that lock was made search for by them,' etc.).

دیو کو رُخصت کیا 'he dismissed the demon' (properly, 'there was performed by him the act of dismissing in reference to the demon').

گاڑی کھڑی کی 'he made the cart stationary' ('the cart was made stationary by him').

گاتری کو کھڑا کی 'he made the cart stationary' (properly, 'it was made stationary by him in respect to the cart').

Rem. a. The only instances in which a factitive verb (in the passively constructed tenses) can agree with the complementary accusative are those in which by a change of construction this becomes really or virtually the only accusative in the sentence: *e.g.* 1) when a sentence following the verb takes the place of the object; as اُس نے 'he made representation, saying;' (here however some writers would put the verb in the masc. sing. عَرَضَ كَيْمَا يَكُ to agree with the objective clause (see § 307); 2) when the place of the object is supplied by a substantive which is governed in the genitive by the predicative substantive; as بادشاہ نے اُسکی تعریف کی 'the king praised it' ('the act of praising was performed by the king in respect of it'); 3) when the factitive verb is connected by اور 'and,' with another verb that stands nearest to the common object of the two verbs, this object being in the dative form of the accusative; as پِیادوں کو ڈانٹا اور تنبیہ کی 'he reprov'd and admonish'd the magistrate's pcons.'

Rem. b. If the predicative substantive is determined by a genitive, it may be separated from the verb by one or more words; as اِس قُوت کا 'it (a child) manifests this faculty by screaming and crying.'

سب اپنے اپنے کام میں مصروف ہیں 'he looked, and lo! they were all engaged in their respective tasks.'

487. The adverb کہاں 'where?' is idiomatically joined to two different subjects to indicate a *very great difference*, *marked contrast*, or *incompatibility*, between them or their circumstances : as

اور تو کہاں اور تو کہاں 'otherwise what possibility was there of our meeting?' (*lit.* 'where I and where thou? our paths lay so wide apart that we could never have met, but for this accident').

تو کہاں اور یہ بات کہاں 'this speech is quite unsuitable to thy position.'

کہاں راجا بھوج کہاں گنگا تیلی 'there is no comparison between King Bhoj and Gangā the oilman.'

Rem. Compare with this use of کہاں—کہاں that of क्वा—क्वा *kva—kva* in Sanskrit.

488. The adverb *ہی* (or *ی*) may be added for emphasis to any part of speech, and may generally be rendered in English by *very*, *the very same*, *but*, *alone*, etc., though sometimes simple stress upon the word to which it is joined (shown in writing by the use of italics) is sufficient : *e.g.*

دل ہی جانتا ہے (my) heart alone knows.'

ایک ہی حملے میں 'in one single (or in but one) assault.'

وہی جوان آیا 'the very same young man came.'

لیکن اُس کے دم میں آہی گئی 'but (after all) she *did* yield to her cajoling.'

II. PREPOSITIONS AND POSTPOSITIONS.

489. Prepositions and Postpositions serve to show the relation of one substantive to another, or to some other word in the sentence.

490. Some postpositions govern a noun in the Formative only, some in the genitive case only, some take the governed noun in the Formative or the genitive. Lists of the prepositions and postpositions together with the case they govern are given in §§ 236-240. The following are a few that have special significations or uses in addition to those specified in the lists :

1) آگے 'before,' is used of *comparison*: *e.g.*

عکس گلشن یہ زمین پر ہی کے 'such is the reflection of the flower-
جسکے آگے - کارِ نقاشی مانی garden on the ground that, com-
ہی دُوم وہ اول pared therewith, the painting of
Mānī (Manes) stands second, it first.'

Rem. The postposition سامنے 'in front,' may be used in the same sense.

2) ساتھ, which as a postposition signifies 'with,' 'along with,' as a *preposition*, with a demonstrative pronoun following, usually signifies *in addition to*, *notwithstanding* or *although* (= the Persian باوجود or باوصف): *e.g.*

موہن زید کے ساتھ الہ آباد چلا گیا 'Mohan went away to Ilāhābād
(Allahabad) along with Zaid.'

ساتھ اُس کے عمرِ محنت کے ساتھ 'in addition to that life will pass
کٹیگی with trouble (or difficulty).'

‘notwithstanding that (or although) ساتھ اُسکے کہ وہ آپ چھوٹا اور
 ناتواں ہو اور دشمن اُسکا قوی he himself be small and feeble
 تب بھی فتح کی اُمید ہے and his foe powerful, there is still
 hope of victory.’

3) ‘towards,’ ‘to,’ is used both of *local* direction and of *feeling* or *conduct*, generally preceding, in this sense, an Arabic verbal noun : *e.g.*

‘he is gone towards (or to) the بازار کی طرف گیا ہے market;’ (the corresponding Hindī postpositions in this construction are *تک* and *کو*).

‘tender compliments from me’ (lit. میری طرف سے سلام کہہ دینا ‘from my side’ = Fr. *de ma part*).

‘he becomes inclined to (fond of) very بُری بُری باتوں کی طرف میلان
 ہوتا ہے evil things;’ (the corresponding Hindī postposition in this sense is *پر*).

‘to become suspicious of (lit. to- کسی شخص کی طرف سے بدگُمیاں
 ہو جانا wards) a person.’

‘he needs the labours of several کئی شخصوں کے کاموں کی طرف
 احتیاج ہے persons.’

Rem. In both the above senses the postposition *طرف* is the Urdū rendering of the Arabic preposition *إلى*; and the idiom in sentences like the last three of the above is borrowed from the Arabic. The postposition *جانب* ‘side, direction,’ is rarely used of *feeling* or *conduct*.

4) ‘near,’ as a postposition, is often used in the sense of *in one’s opinion* (like the Lat. *apud*, and the Fr. *chez*), a sense in which *قریب* and *پاس* do not occur : *e.g.*
 ‘in the opinion of the wise.’ عِزِّمَنْدوں کے نزدیک

491. A feminine *postposition* requires the noun it governs in the genitive to be constructed with *کي* in agreement with itself; but if the postposition be used as a *preposition*, i.e. *precede* the noun it governs (which can only occur when it is a Persian or Arabic word), the genitive of the governed noun will be constructed with *کے* (see § 243): *e.g.*

تاري کي مائند, but مائند تاري کے, 'like a star.'

اُس کي بابت, but بابت اُس کے, 'concerning him or it.'

وٹل طيب و نجومی کے ہيں, 'they are like physicians and astrologers.'

بمدد عقل کے, 'by the aid of the understanding.'

تُمہاري مُوجب فرمانے کے, 'in accordance with (or according to) your ordering (= order).'

In the first of these cases the construction is that of the Hindī, in the second that of the Persian (whence the occurrence of none but Persian or Arabic prepositions in the construction).¹ The use of the genitive affix *کے* is due to the influence of a Persian preposition (most commonly *به*), which governs the postposition in the genitive. This preposition, though not expressed in the case of *بابت*, *مائند*, etc., is implied in the construction, and, being originally a masculine noun, requires the use of the affix *کے* with the genitive of the governed noun. The same

¹ This construction is not only employed with "some of the feminine prepositions," as European grammarians say, but with all such as are Persian or Arabic words. Nor is it "arbitrary": no Urdū scholar would, we are assured, say or write مائند پروانے کي mānind parwāne kī, 'like a moth;' but as no distinction is usually made in writing between *majhūl* and *ma'rūf* ye, it is quite possible for an Englishman to mistake مائند کي for kī, when the writer intends it for ke (کے).

construction occurs with the preposition **بے**, 'without:'
e.g. **بے** مَرْضِي حُضُور کے, *without her highness' pleasure*; **بے**
 صلاح و مشورت کے, *without advice and counsel*. It is true
 that we also meet with such constructions as اُسْکِي بے مَرْضِي
 (sc. سے), *with his or her displeasure*; but in such cases **بے**
 is a *prefix*, not a separate preposition, and the words
بے مَرْضِي, etc., are treated as simple Hindī postpositions.

Rem. If the preposition **بہ** is expressed, even a *preceding* genitive is
 constructed with the affix **کے**: as **قَادِرِ مُطْلَقِ خُدا کے** بِنَسَبِ آدَمِي کے, *how very insignificant is man compared to the*
Almighty! And not only does **بہ**, expressed or implied, require the
 genitive to be constructed with **کے**, but, according to the native gram-
 marians, **کے** is in some instances used as the equivalent of **بہ** (see
 § 318, *Rem.*).

III. CONJUNCTIONS.

492. The combination of coordinate and subordinate propositions is effected by means of conjunctions.

Rem. Lists of some of the principal conjunctions are given in § 247.

493. *Coordinate Combination*.—The conjunctions used in coordinate combination are the Connective (Copulative, Disjunctive, Alternative, Negative), Adversative, Exceptive, and Conclusive.

494. The Connective conjunctions do not affect the structure of a sentence. **اور** (or **و**), 'and,' is the one most used simply to connect words and sentences. But the omission of it (*Asyndeton*) is of frequent occurrence (see §§ 217, 275, 362).

495. *اور* is also used idiomatically to denote:

1) The almost simultaneous occurrence of the acts indicated by the verbs in two propositions which it connects; as *تُم اُٹھے اور خرابی آئی* (= *بقَور تُمہاری اُٹھنے کے*), *you rose and evil came* ('no sooner did you rise than evil ensued').

2) Inseparable connection of two subjects; as *میں ہوں اور تُم* (*تُمہارا ساتھ نہ چھوڑوں گا*) = *I am and you are* (i.e. 'where you are I will be,' or 'I will stick to you wherever you are').

3) Defiance or threat; as *میں تُم کو* (= *پھر میں ہوں اور تُم ہو*) (*خوب سمجھو*), *then I am and you are* (i.e. 'now I will settle accounts with you'); *اب تُو جان اور بڑا بُت جانے*, *now you know and the great idol will know* ('the great idol will settle accounts with you').

496. The negative *نہ*, repeated, has the signification of our *neither—nor*; but the conjunction *اور* is often prefixed to the second *نہ*: e.g. *نہ ایک کو دوسری سے تکلیف نہ اُس کو اِس سے* (*رُج*), *neither does one suffer inconvenience from another, nor that annoyance from this*; *نہ تیسری وہ کلام ہی کہ اُس میں*, *the third is that speech wherein there is neither harm nor benefit*.

497. The disjunctive conjunction *یا* 'or' (as an alternative *یا—یا* 'either—or'), is used in the sense of both the Latin *vel* and *aut*: e.g. *کوئی مہاجن یا بیہاری اُنکے برابر نہ تھا*, *no merchant or trader came up to him*; *جو کوئی مسافر فقیر یا*, *any traveller, (whether) a devotee or a man of the world, who enters this city*.

Rem. یا—یا is sometimes used to indicate a remarkable contrast arising from a sudden change; as یا وہ رونق تھی یا سُن سان ہو گیا, *but now there was that (such) display, and the next moment all became desolate.*

498. The conjunction کہ, which more commonly occurs in subordinate clauses, is also used as a disjunctive, signifying 'or:' e.g. وہاں تُم جاوگے کہ میں, *will you go there or shall I?* تُم نے کُچھ عِلْمِ مَنْطِق کا بیہی سیکھا ہی کہ نہیں, *have you learned anything of the science of logic also or not?*

499. The compound conjunctions تو and ورنہ, 'otherwise,' 'or else,' are used in stating an alternative; as تب میرا کلیجا ٹھنڈا ہو نہیں تو اس شُعے کی آگت میں پھٹ رہی ہوں, *then (perhaps) my heart (lit. liver) will be quieted, otherwise I am burning (shall continue to burn) with the fire of this wrath;* وہ حاکم ایسا ہونا چاہیئے کہ سیاست کے قاعدی, *that ruler should be such a one as is well acquainted with the laws of government, or else decline will overtake the state.*

Rem. The following are examples of some of the remaining disjunctive conjunctions: تُمکو جانے نہ دُونگا بُرا مانو خواہ بھلا, *I will not let you go, (whether you) take it ill or well;* میں نہیں کہتا چاہو رہو, *I say nothing; either go or remain, as you please.* For examples of کیا—کیا see § 397.

500. The Adversative conjunctions مگر, لیکن, پر (which however is more commonly *exceptive*), بلکہ, etc., signifying *but, yet, still, but rather, on the contrary.* They are used in stating a proposition which alters, limits, or sets aside what has preceded, and do not affect the struc-

ture of a sentence. The first three of those mentioned above are often used correlatively with the Concessive conjunctions اَوْ سَب نام, 'although,' 'even if:' e.g. اَوْ سَب نام, چاہتے ہیں پر ویسا کام نہیں کرتے (Generous), *but do not perform such acts*; غرض کے وقت سب, کچھ کہتا لیکن یاد نہیں رکھتا *he says anything and everything when he has an object (to gain), but does not keep (his promise) in mind*; اِس میں ہرگز خلل نہیں بلکہ افزوں ہی, *there is no defect at all in this, but rather there is excess*; اِگرچہ, *although* تیرا باپ بادشاہ ہے لیکن تیری قسمت میں یہ بھی بدا تبا *your father is a king, yet this also was decreed in your destiny*.

501. The Exceptive conjunctions are اَلَّا, مگر, and sometimes لیکن, signifying *only, but, but not, except*. They are used to exclude the case in which the assertion does not hold good: e.g. سب برادری کے آدمی آئے مگر (لیکن) موہن نہیں آیا *all the brotherhood came, but Mohan did not come* ('all came except Mohan'). The thing excepted may be totally different in kind from the general term; as سب شہزادی آئے, تھے اَلَّا سپاہی, *all the princes came (lit. had come), but not their troops*.

Rem. مگر is sometimes used, as in Persian, in the sense of شاید, 'perhaps:' اِس بے درد شوہر نے میری مگر اُسکو گھر کے دروازی پر, *this feelingless husband of mine perhaps saw him at the door of the house*.

502. The Conclusive or Illative conjunctions are اِس, لہذا, چنانچہ, پس, سو, پھر, ایسے, etc., which may be translated *therefore, wherefore, accordingly, consequently, etc.* The

following are examples of their use : زباں سے بہت سی خرابیاں پیدا ہوتی ہیں اور اُن سے بچنا دشوار ہے۔ اِس لیئے مصلحت یہ ہے کہ آدمی خاموشی اختیار کرے، *many evils spring from the tongue, and to avoid them is difficult, it is therefore advisable that a man observe silence* ; راجہ نے حکم دیا کہ خزانوں کے دروازی کھول دیں چنانچہ ایسا ہی ہوا، *the king ordered that they should open the doors of the treasuries, and such was accordingly done* ; کئی باتیں خیال میں گذریں لہذا فدوی، *several things passed through his mind, and consequently your devoted slave smiled.*

503. *Subordinate Combination.*—The conjunctions employed in subordinate combination are the Hypothetical, Temporal, Concessive, Comparative, Causal, and Final.

504. The Hypothetical conjunctions are 'if,' 'جو,' 'اگر,' 'when,' etc. These are construed with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, as shown in § 466, 1) *a*, and 2), *Rem. b*. The regular correlative of the first two is 'تو'; that of the third 'تب'. But the correlatives are not always expressed; and even the hypothetical particle is occasionally omitted, as in the following sentence : اُس کی خوشی یوں ہی، *when, or if, her pleasure took this course alone, what could I do?*

505. The correlatives 'تو' and 'تب' being synonymous, the one is sometimes used for the other; as اور اگر یہ سب سامان، *and even if all these pliances be obtained, then even it is evident, etc.* ; جب آدمی کو ایسا، *when a man acquires such knowledge, wisdom may thereby be attained.*

Rem. جو is now commonly used instead of تب as the correlative of جب.

506. The conjunction جو is sometimes used in the sense of جب ; as جو اُسکو کپولکر دیکھا تو وہ جوان اور اُسکی رتدی سرکتے ; جب when he opened it and looked, lo ! that young man and his paramour were (lit. are) lying beheaded.

507. اب جو (1) is occasionally used in the sense of 'now that,' and (2) of تب, in which case the conditional clause, if expressed, may follow, being introduced by the conjunction کہ in the sense of جب ; as جب معلوم ہوا کہ تم انہوں کے احوال سے مطلع ہو شکر بجا لاکر یہی کہتا ہوں now that I know that you are acquainted with their history, I give thanks and say this, etc. ; سخت محنت کرنی پڑتی ہے جب کچھ آتا ہے one has to work hard, then something is acquired ; اعانت ایک دوسری کی جب ہے ہو سکتی ہے کہ انتہے رہیں then alone is mutual help (lit. the helping of one another) possible, when they dwell together.

508. تک in combination with the postpositions (or تلک) and لگ (which however rarely occurs in modern Urdū), forms temporal conjunctions, signifying whilst, until, as long as ; and the same postpositions are repeated after the correlative تب when this is expressed. These conjunctions are construed with the Indicative or the Subjunctive (the Aorist, which is however rendered in English by the Present Indicative), according as simple fact or contingency (design, etc.) is indicated. They are often followed by the negative نہ (or نہیں), and may then be generally translated 'as long as,' 'so long as:' e.g. جب تک

آؤنگا دل یہیں لگا رہیگا, *until I come (back) here alone will my heart be fixed*; جب تلک اُسکا دم نہیں نکلتا دم نہیں لینے, *as long as his breath (life) does not depart, they give him no peace (lit. 'do not let him take breath')*; جب لگت کہ اُسکا نقصان نہ ہوگا تب لگت میری قدر نہ جانیگا, *so long as he suffers no harm, he will not know my value*; جب تک جوان نہ ہو باہر نہ نکلے, *let him not come out (of the harem) as long as he is not a man (shall not have attained to manhood)*; یہاں رہو جب تک تمہاری آرزو بر آوی, *remain here till your desire is fulfilled*.

509. The Concessive conjunctions are اگرچہ, گو, or گوکہ, etc., 'although,' 'even if.' The latter is usually construed with the Subjunctive (the Aorist); the former with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact is expressed or not: *e.g.* اگرچہ طاقت بولنے کی نہ تھی آہستے سے, *although she had not the strength to speak, she said faintly, Thank God!* میں بھی اُنکی داد کو پہنچتا ہوں, *although they be unbelievers*; اور گو سب عادتیں اچھی نہ ہوں جس قدر, *even I dispense justice to them, although they be unbelievers*; اور گو سب عادتیں اچھی نہ ہوں جس قدر, *and even though all (his) habits may not become good, let him labour earnestly to correct them to the extent that it is possible for them to be good*.

510. The Comparative conjunctions are those which express a resemblance. They are جیسا, 'as,' 'as if:' *e.g.* جیسا رائے دابِشْلیم کا مُلک آسودہ اور رعیت فارغِ بال تھی, *as Rā'e Dābīshlīm's kingdom was tranquil, and his subjects contented*; ہرگز ہوا اُسکو نہیں لگتی گویا فانوس اُسکی آسمان ہی,

the wind never touches it; (it is) as if the sky is its shade.

511. The Causal conjunctions are those which are used in stating a reason. They are جو, کہ, and others which are compounds formed with کہ, as اس واسطے کہ, کیونکہ, چوںکہ, etc. They may mostly be translated *for, because, since, seeing that, inasmuch as*, etc. The following are examples of their use: اُسکے دل میں تو محبت اب تلک باقی ہے جو اس : *in her heart indeed affection still lingers, seeing that she remembers him in this death-agony*; میری پکڑنے کی خاطر جو قبول کیا ہے, پورا کرو کہ ساری ٹیل میں زباں حلال ہے *fulfil what you agreed to for my capture, for in the whole body the tongue is (the only) free (and therefore responsible member)*; اُسکی بات کا اعتبار نہ کری اس واسطے کہ چُغل خور اکثر اعتبار کے قابل نہیں ہوتا *let him put no faith in his statement, for a tale-bearer, generally speaking, is not deserving of credit*; زر و جواہر پر فریقت ہونا دانشمندیوں کا کام نہیں کیونکہ وہ کسی کے پاس نہیں رہتے *it is not the work of the wise to be infatuated with gold and jewels, since those (things) abide with no one.*

512. Final conjunctions are used to denote the purpose or consequence of an action. They are constructed with the Subjunctive, as shown in § 467. To the examples there given may be added the following: شاہ بندر کے خوف سے کہ مبادا چہین لے کنیزکوں کو صندوقوں میں بند کیا *through fear of the harbour-superintendent, they locked up their slave-girls in (their) chests, lest he should take them by force.*

Rem. The particle **کے** has other significations and uses besides those noticed above (§§ 498, 507, 511, 512). It is sometimes used (as in Persian) in the sense of **از** 'than;' but this can only occur in Persian construction: as **ایک آدمی مری بہتر کے تمام شہر**, *better one man perish than the whole city*. It is of frequent occurrence as a simple explicatory particle: 1) at the head of an adjective (qualificative, descriptive), or conjunctive clause, as exemplified in § 390; 2) at the head of a saying or speech (**مَقُول**), which stands as the object of a preceding verb, or, generally, at the beginning of an objective clause: as **اس نے پوچھا کہ یہ کیا کر رہے ہیں**, *he asked, What are these doing?* In such cases it may sometimes be rendered by 'that,' 'saying,' 'namely,' etc., but it is often untranslatable.

CHAPTER XII.

ON THE DIRECT ORATION.

513. The indirect oration is rarely employed in Urdū. The words and thoughts of a person are usually expressed in the direct oration, introduced by the particle *کہ*, which however is frequently omitted (*cf.* also § 445): *e.g.*

اھلِ جہاز سے معلوم ہوا کہ اُس
جزیرے میں دجال رہتا ہے ship that the Antichrist dwelt in
that island' (*lit.* 'I learned from
the people of the ship "Antichrist
lives, etc."').

اگر یہ قصد ہے کہ شہر میں
جاؤں the city' (*lit.* 'if this is thy in-
tention: "I will enter, etc."').

اُس نے مجھ سے کہا تیری بہن
بیمار ہے 'he told me my sister was sick' (*lit.*
'he said to me, "Thy sister is sick"').

فکر میں گیا کہ کس صورت سے اُن
لعلوں کو لے جاؤں 'he pondered how he should carry
away those rubies' (*lit.* 'how shall
I carry away, etc.').

میں نے اُن سے کہا تمہاری سانبھ
میں بھی چلوںگا 'I told them that I also would
accompany them' (*lit.* 'I said to
them, "I also will accompany
you"').

APPENDIX.

ON THE CALENDAR.

The following remarks on the Musalmān and Hindū Calendars are mostly taken from Forbes's Hindūstānī Grammar.

THE MOHAMMADAN CALENDAR.

"The Musalmāns reckon by lunar time, their era called the *Hijra* commencing from the day on which Moḥammad retreated from Mekka to Medina; which, according to the best accounts, took place on Friday, the 16th of July (18th new style), A. D. 622. Their year consists of 12 lunations, amounting to 354 days and 9 hours, very nearly; and hence their New Year's Day will happen every year about eleven days earlier than in the preceding year."

"To find the Christian year corresponding to that of the *Hijra*, apply the following rule:—From the given number of Musalmān years deduct *three per cent.*, and to the remainder add the number 621·54; the sum is the period of the Christian era at which the given current Musalmān year ends. This rule is founded on the fact that 100 lunar years are very nearly equal to 97 solar years, the difference being about eighteen days only."

"When great accuracy is required, and when the year, month, and day of the Moḥammadan era are given, the precise period of the Christian era may be found very nearly, as follows:—Express the Musalmān date in years and decimals of a year; multiply by ·97; to the product add 621·54: and the sum will be the period of the Christian era."

“The Moḥammadan or lunar months are made to consist of thirty and twenty-nine days alternately, but in a period of thirty years it is found necessary to intercalate the last month eleven times, so as to be reckoned thirty days instead of twenty-nine. The months retain their Arabic names in all Moḥammadan countries, as follows : ”

LUNAR MONTHS.

	DAYS.		DAYS.
مُحَرَّم <i>mōḥarram</i> . . .	30	رَجَب <i>rajab</i> . . .	30
صَفَر <i>ṣafar</i> . . .	29	شَعْبَان <i>sha'bān</i> . . .	29
رَبِيعُ الْأَوَّل <i>rabī'u 'l-awwal</i>	30	رَمَضَان <i>ramazān</i> . . .	30
رَبِيعُ الثَّانِي <i>rabī'u 's-sānī</i> }	29	شَوَّال <i>shawwāl</i> . . .	29
رَبِيعُ الْآخِر <i>rabī'u 'l-ākhir</i> }		ذِي الْقَعْدَةِ <i>zī 'l-ka'da</i> }	30
جُمَادَى الْأَوَّل <i>jumāda 'l-awwal</i>	30	ذِي الْقَعْدَةِ <i>zī ka'da</i> }	
جُمَادَى الثَّانِي <i>jumāda 's-sānī</i> }	29	ذِي الْحِجَّةِ <i>zī 'l-hijja</i> }	29
جُمَادَى الْآخِر <i>jumāda 'l-ākhir</i> }		ذِي الْحِجَّةِ <i>zī hijja</i> }	

The following are the days of the week in Urdū, Hindī, and Persian:

	URDU.	HINDI.	PERSIAN.
Sun.	اِتْوَار <i>itwār</i>	رَبِيعَار <i>rabī-bār</i>	يَكْشَمَبَه <i>yak-shamba</i>
Mon.	پير (or سَوَّار) <i>pīr</i>	سَوَّار <i>som-bār</i>	دُو شَمَبَه <i>du-shamba</i>
Tues.	مَنْگَل <i>mangal</i>	مَنْگَلَار <i>mangal-bār</i>	سِه شَمَبَه <i>sih-shamba</i>
Wed.	بُدَه <i>budh</i>	بُدَهَار <i>budh-bār</i>	چَهَار شَمَبَه <i>chahār-shamba</i>
Thurs.	جُمُعَه رَات <i>jum'a rāt</i>	بَرِهَسْپَتَار <i>brihaspati-3ūr</i>	پَنْجْشَمَبَه <i>panj-shamba</i>
Fri.	جُمُعَه <i>jum'a</i>	سُكْرَار <i>sukra-bār</i>	آدِينَه <i>ādīna</i>
Sat.	سَبْتَار <i>sanīchar</i>	سَنِيبَار <i>sanībār</i>	شَمَبَه OR هَفْتَه <i>shamba</i> or <i>hafta</i>

The Hindūs regard the day as commencing at midnight, as we do; but the Moḥammadans regard it as commencing at the preceding evening, so that 'the night of a certain day,' in the mouth of a Musalmān, signifies 'the night of the previous day.' For example *جُمُعے کی رات* 'Friday night,' is really 'Thursday night' according to our way of reckoning

THE HINDU CALENDAR.

The Hindū year is divided into twelve equal portions which nearly correspond to our solar months. The month again is divided into two parts, each called *pakh*, 'lunar fortnight.' The first *pakh* extends from new to full moon, and is called *sudī*, 'the light fortnight;' the second extends from full to new moon, and is called *badī*, 'the dark fortnight.' "All festivals and dates are reckoned, not by the solar months, but by the duration of the moon which terminates in each. Hence although the month *Baisākh* begins *de jure* about the 11th of April, it may have commenced *de facto* from one day to twenty-eight days sooner. When two new moons occur during one solar month, which happens once in three years, there is an intercalary month, and the month so intercalated receives the name of the one which preceded it, that is of the solar month within which the two new moons may happen."

The era however which is commonly used by the Hindūs of the northern half of India is that called *sambat* (Sanskrit *samvat*, 'year'), which dates from the month *Kātik* of the year 57 B.C. when king Vikramāditya is supposed to have ascended the throne of Ujjain.

Another common era, especially in Southern India, is that of Śālivāhana. It is called *āka*, and dates from the month *Chait* of the year 78 A.D.

The following are the names of the Hindū solar months :

بیساکھ <i>baisākḥ</i> , April—May.	کاتیک <i>kātik</i> ,	} Oct.—Nov.
جیتھ <i>jeṭḥ</i> , May—June.	کارتیک <i>kārtik</i> ,	
اساڑہ <i>asūṛḥ</i> , June—July.	اگین <i>aghan</i> , Nov.—Dec.	
ساون <i>sāwan</i> ,	پوس <i>pūs</i> , Dec.—Jan.	
} July—Aug.	ماگھ <i>māgh</i> , Jan.—Feb.	
سراون <i>srāwan</i> ,	پہاگن <i>phāgun</i> , Feb.—March.	
بہادون <i>bhādon</i> , Aug.—Sept.	چیت <i>chait</i> , March—April.	
کوار or آسین <i>kū'ār</i> or <i>āsin</i> , Sept.—Oct.		

These are in common use among both Hindūs and Musalmāns. But the names of the English months are also often used at the present time especially in official correspondence.

34142

PK
1986
P5
1909

34142

Platts, John T.
Grammar of the Hindus-
tani or Urdu language

DATE	ISSUED TO

Platts ...
Grammar....

LIBRARY
SOUTHERN CALIFORNIA SCHOOL
OF THEOLOGY
CLAREMONT, CALIF.



PRINTED IN U.S.A.

